



**SEKHUKHUNE**  
**District Municipality**

**DRAFT 2024/2025**  
**IDP/BUDGET REVIEW**

## VISION

Sekhukhune District Municipality – **An innovative** leader in integrated economic development and sustainable service delivery.

## MISSION STATEMENTS

To improve the quality of life for all communities through:

- provision of a democratic and accountable government;
- promotion of inclusive and egalitarian economic transformation;
  - promotion of a safe and healthy environment;
- fostering of community involvement and stakeholder engagement; and
  - Strengthening institutional capacity.
  - Promotion of social cohesion

# **DRAFT IDP/BUDGET REVIEW FOR 2024/2025**

**WAS NOTED BY COUNCIL ON THE 27 MARCH 2024**  
**COUNCIL RESOLUTION NO. SC03/03/24**

# Table of Contents

<b>CHAPTER 1:</b> .....	7
<b>INTRODUCTION AND CONTEXT</b> .....	7
1.1. INTRODUCTION .....	8
1.2. POLICIES AND LEGAL PARAMETERS .....	8
1.2.1. GLOBAL IMPERATIVES .....	8
1.2.2. NATIONAL POLICIES AND IMPERATIVES .....	13
1.2.3. PROVINCIAL IMPERATIVES .....	23
1.2.4. LOCAL IMPERATIVES.....	25
1.2.4.1. Sekhukhune District Development Model (One Plan) – 2023/2024-2025/2026 .....	25
1.2.4.2. Powers And Functions.....	27
1.2.4.3. Basis Of IDP Review Process.....	28
1.2.4.4. <b>MEC IDP ASSESSMENT REPORT 2021/2022 – 2022/2023</b> .....	34
<b>CHAPTER 2:</b> .....	35
<b>ANALYSIS PHASE</b> .....	35
<b>2.1. OVERVIEW OF MUNICIPALITIES WITHIN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT</b> .....	36
2.1.1. Sekhukhune District Municipality .....	36
2.1.2. Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality .....	36
2.1.3. Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality.....	37
2.1.4. Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality.....	37
2.1.5. Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality .....	37
2.1.6. Traditional Authorities .....	38
<b>2.2. DEMOGRAPHICS IN SDM</b> .....	40
<b>2.3. SPATIAL RATIONALE</b> .....	52
<b>2.4. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b> .....	69
2.4.1. Unemployment .....	69
2.4.2. Mining.....	79
2.4.1. Fetakgomo Tubatse Special Economic Zone:.....	83
2.4.2. Agriculture .....	86
2.4.3. Land Reform.....	90
2.4.4. Agri-Park .....	91
2.4.5. Tourism .....	93
2.4.6. Smmes Development .....	112
2.4.7. Sekhukhune Development Agency (SDA) .....	115

<b>2.5. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY, INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT AND SOCIAL SERVICES</b> .....	116
<b>2.5.1. Access To Water</b> .....	116
2.5.2. Sanitation .....	129
2.5.3. Municipal Health Services And Environmental Management .....	132
2.5.4. District Disaster Management And District Emergency Management Services .....	156
2.5.5. Refuse Removal .....	160
2.5.6. Electricity .....	163
2.5.7. Cemeteries .....	167
2.5.8. Housing .....	169
2.5.9. Telecommunication .....	174
2.5.10. Roads And Stormwater .....	175
2.5.11. Transportation .....	179
2.5.12. Sport, Arts And Culture .....	185
2.5.13. Health .....	191
2.5.14. Education .....	198
2.5.15. Social Development (Welfare) .....	206
2.5.16. Safety And Security .....	217
<b>2.6. INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND ORGANISATIONAL TRANSFORMATION</b> .....	221
2.6.1. Institutional Capacity Analysis .....	221
2.6.2. Organizational Development (OD) .....	223
2.6.3. Human Resources Administration (HRA) .....	226
2.6.4. Human Resources Development (HRD) .....	227
2.6.5. Employee Assistance Programme (EAP) .....	229
2.6.6. Information And Communication Technology (ICT) .....	233
2.6.7. Auxiliary Services (AS) .....	236
2.6.8. Legal Services .....	239
2.6.9. Labour Relations .....	239
<b>2.7. FINANCIAL VIABILITY</b> .....	241
2.7.1. Introduction .....	241
2.7.2. Asset Management .....	246
2.7.3. Budget And Reporting .....	249
2.7.4. Revenue Management .....	250
2.7.5. Supply Chain Management .....	251
2.7.6. Expenditure Management Unit .....	253

	4
<b>2.8. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b> .....	255
2.8.1. Introduction.....	255
2.8.2. Internal Audit .....	259
2.8.3. Risk Management.....	262
2.8.4. Public Participation, Council Secretariat And Councillor Support .....	264
2.8.5. Communications, Executive Support, Customer Care And Special Programmes .....	267
2.8.6. Performance Management System (PMS).....	272
<b>CHAPTER 3:</b> .....	273
<b>STRATEGIES PHASE</b> .....	273
3.1. Vision .....	274
3.2. Mission Statements .....	274
3.3. Core Values of the Municipality .....	274
3.4. Motto.....	274
3.5. Slogan .....	275
3.6. Mayoral Strategic Priorities .....	275
3.7. Swot Analysis and Strategies.....	275
<b>CHAPTER 4:</b> .....	291
<b>PROJECTS PHASE</b> .....	291
<b>4. PROJECTS: 2024/2025 – 2026/2027 IDP/BUDGET REVIEW</b> .....	292
<b>4.1. SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY PROJECTS</b> .....	292
4.1.1. Basic Service Delivery And Infrastructure Development.....	292
4.1.2. Spatial Rationale .....	310
4.1.3. Local Economic Development .....	313
4.1.4. Institutional Development And Organizational Transformation .....	319
4.1.5. Financial Viability .....	328
4.1.6. Good Governance And Public Participation .....	331
<b>CHAPTER 5</b> .....	342
<b>INTEGRATION PHASE</b> .....	342
<b>5. SECTOR PLANS</b> .....	343
5.1. Spatial Rationale.....	345
5.2. Institutional Development and Organisational Transformation .....	346
5.3. Basic Service Delivery .....	351
5.4. Local Economic Development.....	358
5.5. Financial Viability .....	359
5.6. Good Governance and Public Participation.....	363

**LIST OF ACRONYMS**

AS	Auxiliary Services
CoGHSTA	Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements & Traditional Affairs
DoE	Department of Energy
DoA	Department of Agriculture
DWAE	Department of Water Affairs and Environment
ECD	Early Childhood Development
EAP	Employee Assistance Programme
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
FBE	Free Basic Electricity
FBS	Free Basic Services
FBW	Free Basic Water
FIVIMS	Food Insecurity and Vulnerability Information Management System
GGP	Gross Geographic Product
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
HOD	Head of Department
HRD	Human Resource Development
HRM	Human Resource Management
ICT	Information Communication Technology
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IEMP	Integrated Environmental Management Plan
IGR	Intergovernmental Relations
ISDF	Integrated Spatial Development Framework
ISRDP	Integrated and Sustainable Rural Development
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
IWMP	Integrated Waste Management Plan
LDOs	Land Development Objectives
LDV	Light Delivery Vehicle
LED	Local Economic Development
LEDET	Limpopo Department of Economic Development Environmental Affairs and Tourism
LEGDP	Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan
LGDS	Limpopo Growth and Development Strategy
LIBSA	Limpopo Business Support Agency
LIM476	Fetakgomo/Greater Tubatse Municipality
LIMDEV	Limpopo Economic Development Enterprise
LM	Local Municipality
LSM	Living Standard Measures
LTP	Limpopo Tourism Parks Board
LUMS	Land Use Management System
MDG	Millennium Development Goal
MEC	Member of Executive Committee
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant

MLL	Minimum Living Level
MM	Municipal Manager
MPCC	Multi-Purpose Community Centres
MRM	Moral Regeneration Movement
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation
NLTTA	National Land Transport Transition Act
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
OD	Organisational Development
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety
PGMs	Platinum Group Metals
PHC	Primary Health Care
PMS	Performance Management System
PSET	Post-school Education and Training
RAL	Roads Agency Limpopo
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
SANAC	South African National AIDS Council
SAPS	South African Police Services
SARS	South African Revenue Services
SASSA	South African Social Security Agency
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDM	Sekhukhune District Municipality
SMME	Small, Medium and Micro Enterprise
SOPs	Standing Operating Procedures
STATSSA	Statistics South Africa
TDM	Travel Demand Management
URP	Urban Renewal Programme
WWTW	Wastewater Treatment Works
WSA	Water Services Authority
WSDP	Water Services Development Plan
WSP	Water Service Provider

# **CHAPTER 1:**

# **INTRODUCTION**

# **AND CONTEXT**



## **1.1. INTRODUCTION**

Integrated Development Planning (IDP) is a strategic development tool to assist the municipality to achieve its developmental imperatives. The review of the 2023-2024 IDP document for Sekhukhune District Municipality has followed an extensive internal and external consultation of stakeholders and communities within the parameters of the district's sphere of operation. This document is a legislative mandate and a strategic planning instrument that guide and inform planning and development as well as decisions with regard to planning, management and development throughout the district. The Municipal Systems Act (2000) provides the legal framework for municipal development planning to assist Local Government to discharge its mandates.

## **1.2. POLICIES AND LEGAL PARAMETERS**

In formulating the IDP cognizance ought to be given to Global, National, Provincial and Local policy and legislative imperatives.

### **1.2.1. GLOBAL IMPERATIVES**

#### **SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS (SDGs)**

During 2015, South Africa presented its final Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) report on the state of the progress that the country has made in rolling back poverty in all its forms, as agreed upon globally and initiated in 2000. This 15-year process covered the tracking of eradication of poverty in a number of dimensions, measured across 8 basic areas or goals. Since then, the global community has adopted a further set of development issues to continue and expand the work of the MDGs. This set of aspirations is termed the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and will come to fruition in 2030. The SDGs are both an extension and an expansion of the work done under the MDGs; in particular, the number of goals increased from 8 to 17, the number of targets increased from 20 to 169 and the indicator suite increased from 60 to 230.

#### **GOAL 1: END POVERTY IN ALL ITS FORMS EVERYWHERE**

Recent data shows that the war on poverty is far from over and that efforts to combat it must be expanded and accelerated as the country experienced increased levels of poverty between 2011 and 2015. Women, children, black Africans, those living in rural areas, and people with little or no education remain the biggest victims of poverty in South Africa and these groups require special focus and targeted interventions if poverty levels are to drop to the SDG target of 20,0% by 2030 (from 40,0% in 2015) based on the LBPL.

#### **GOAL 2: END HUNGER, ACHIEVE FOOD SECURITY AND IMPROVED NUTRITION AND PROMOTE SUSTAINABLE AGRICULTURE**

Food security is more than just the availability of food; it also encapsulates issues of affordability, nutrition/food utilisation and stability of food supply into the future. The NDP indicates that food

security exists when everyone has access to sufficient, nutritious, and safe food at all times. This implies that food must be available and that people must have the means to access it.

### **GOAL 3: ENSURE HEALTHY LIVES AND PROMOTE WELL-BEING FOR ALL AT ALL AGES**

The NDP envisages South Africa having a health system that works for everyone and produces positive health outcomes by 2030. Provision of universal health coverage through implementation of national health insurance, addressing the social determinants of health and promoting healthy behaviours and lifestyles are identified as key prerequisites for achieving this vision. The national health system needs to be strengthened by improving governance and eliminating infrastructure backlogs.

### **GOAL 5: ACHIEVE GENDER EQUALITY AND EMPOWER ALL WOMEN AND GIRLS**

This Goal can be viewed as a vehicle which will move South Africa further along the trajectory towards the achievement of the gender equality imperatives outlined in both the Constitution of the Republic, as well as the NDP.

Therefore, significant efforts must be made towards mainstreaming a gender perspective in the implementation of the SDGs; closing or narrowing persisting gender gaps; and strengthening support to our institutional mechanisms for women's empowerment and gender equality in the country.

### **GOAL 6: ENSURE AVAILABILITY AND SUSTAINABLE MANAGEMENT OF WATER AND SANITATION FOR ALL**

Water is identified as a strategic resource critical for social and economic development in South Africa. The NDP states that "by 2030 all South Africans will have affordable access to sufficient safe water and hygiene sanitation to live healthy and dignified lives". The National Water Policy, the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998) and the Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997) provide the legal framework for government to fulfil its responsibility of ensuring that all South Africans have access to adequate water supply services and sanitation services.

Since South Africa is a water-scarce country (30th driest country globally), greater attention will have to be paid to management and use of water. There is a growing concern over the potential impact of water-related risks of which some are predicted to increase in future as a result of impacts of climate change on the water resource. It is important that South Africa, together with riparian states, manages impacts of hydrological extremes through transboundary agreements. This will require strengthening of existing water monitoring networks across the entire shared basins and timely exchange of data and information between and among riparian states. The exchange of data and information among riparian states will not only assist in monitoring the riparian countries' achievement of SDG targets but will also assist the countries to expedite the achievement of the set targets.

### **GOAL 7: ENSURE ACCESS TO AFFORDABLE, RELIABLE, SUSTAINABLE AND MODERN ENERGY FOR ALL**

South Africa ratified the Paris Agreement which is based on three main objectives. These objectives aim to limit the increase in global average temperature to well below two degrees Celsius from now until 2100, to increase the ability to adapt to the adverse impacts of climate change and to make finance flows consistent with a pathway towards low greenhouse gas emissions and climate-resilient development. These objectives resonate with our own objectives for the growth and development of Africa and indeed South Africa.

### **GOAL 8: PROMOTE SUSTAINED, INCLUSIVE AND SUSTAINABLE ECONOMIC GROWTH, FULL AND PRODUCTIVE EMPLOYMENT AND DECENT WORK FOR ALL**

South Africa will continue to promote inclusive and sustainable economic growth as a prerequisite for global prosperity. Goal 8 aims to provide opportunities for full and productive employment and decent work for all while eradicating forced labour, human trafficking and child labour. According to the NDP, South Africa must find ways to urgently reduce the alarming levels of youth unemployment and to provide young people with broader opportunities.

### **GOAL 9: BUILD RESILIENT INFRASTRUCTURE, PROMOTE SUSTAINABLE INDUSTRIALISATION AND FOSTER INNOVATION**

Goal 9 encompasses three important aspects of sustainable development: infrastructure, industrialisation and innovation. Infrastructure provides the basic physical systems and structures essential to the operation of a society or enterprise. Industrialisation drives economic growth, creates job opportunities and thereby reduces income poverty. Innovation advances the technological capabilities of industrial sectors and prompts the development of new skills.

### **GOAL 10: REDUCE INEQUALITY WITHIN AND AMONG COUNTRIES**

Inequality manifests itself in many forms, but the most pressing area of inequality that needs to be addressed is the inequitable distribution of resources and income. Both the NDP and SDG agendas make this a central priority. By reducing income inequality, we ensure that households have the ability and capacity for shaping their own futures. Interestingly, while the NDP has set a much more aggressive approach on poverty and its targets for 2030 compared to the SDGs, its inequality objectives and targets are slightly more modest and are on par with the SDG ambitions.

### **GOAL 11: MAKE CITIES AND HUMAN SETTLEMENTS INCLUSIVE, SAFE, RESILIENT AND SUSTAINABLE**

Sixty-three percent of South Africans already live-in urban areas. Over 55% of the population are found in the 25 largest municipalities, with over 200 municipalities having less than 45% of the population. The contribution of these 25 largest municipalities to the GDP is over 70%, and they also have a very high proportion of job opportunities. The result of this is that on average, the population of these major urban centres grew by over 20% between 2001 and 2011.

In the South African context, informal settlements present a particular challenge. Most job-seeking migrants moving to cities first live in informal settlements, which are an affordable entry to the city. Many migrants cannot break into the urban labour market and find it difficult to move out of shacks into more formal accommodation. The average residence period within urban informal settlements has increased from about two to four years in the early 1990s to 10 years currently. Despite this challenge, cities have begun to take the lead in developing partnerships that contribute to the sustainable delivery of services.

## **GOAL 12: ENSURE SUSTAINABLE CONSUMPTION AND PRODUCTION PATTERNS**

As defined by the Oslo Symposium in 1994, sustainable consumption and production (SCP) is about:

"The use of services and related products, which respond to basic needs and bring a better quality of life while minimizing the use of natural resources and toxic materials as well as the emissions of waste and pollutants over the life cycle of the service or product so as not to jeopardize the needs of further generations".

South Africa is the 27<sup>th</sup> largest economy in the world, but the 12<sup>th</sup> largest carbon dioxide emitter. This is mainly because the energy-intensive economy is largely dependent on carbon-based fuels. As the world takes steps to cost the negative effects of carbon, South Africa is likely to face challenges (and opportunities) in reducing emissions. South Africa is also a dry country with limited freshwater resources. It will have to find ways of using water more sensibly and improving both the water and energy efficiency of industry.

## **GOAL 13: TAKE URGENT ACTION TO COMBAT CLIMATE CHANGE AND ITS IMPACTS**

It is anticipated that the competition for land, water and energy will intensify as the effects of climate change become apparent, potentially increasing the scarcity and pollution of water, and accelerating soil erosion and degradation. However, the NDP states that whilst climate change is a major threat, developments in science and technology will enable countries to mitigate the effects, without undermining growth and that by 2030, South Africa's transition to an environmentally sustainable, climate-change resilient, low-carbon economy and just society will be well under way.

To meet the stated objectives and the need for improved disaster-risk reduction, South Africa's National Climate Change Response White Paper highlights a suite of sectors that need to consider climate change impacts in their planning, namely water, agriculture and commercial forestry, health, biodiversity and ecosystems, and human settlements (urban, coastal and rural). Amongst others, the NDP proposes the inclusion of climate-change risks in the national disaster management plan and in the communication strategies.

SDG target - to strengthen resilience and adaptive capacity to climate-related hazards and natural disasters in all countries.

## **GOAL 14: CONSERVE AND SUSTAINABLY USE THE OCEANS, SEAS AND MARINE RESOURCES FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT**

The NDP states that “Market and policy failures have resulted in the global economy entering a period of ‘ecological deficit’, as natural capital (ground water, marine life, terrestrial biodiversity, crop land and grazing) is being degraded, destroyed, or depleted faster than it can be replenished”. Given the vast marine resources South Africa has and a long coastline that forms the basis of the livelihoods of many coastal communities, it becomes imperative that this resource be used in a manner that addresses South Africa’s developmental challenges and at the same time is protected and used in a manner that is consistent with the principles of sustainable development.

## **GOAL 15: PROTECT, RESTORE AND PROMOTE SUSTAINABLE USE OF TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS, SUSTAINABLY MANAGE FORESTS, COMBAT DESERTIFICATION, AND HALT AND REVERSE LAND DEGRADATION AND HALT BIODIVERSITY LOSS**

Long-term planning to promote biodiversity and the conservation and rehabilitation of natural assets is critical and should be complemented by a strategy for assessing the environmental impact of new developments as an important component of overall development and spatial planning.

The NDP highlights the need for programmes to conserve and rehabilitate ecosystems and biodiversity assets. South Africa should implement the protected areas expansion strategy and promote the biodiversity stewardship programme to build conservation partnerships around privately-owned land and introduce incentives to protect and rehabilitate ecosystems, such as rebates and tax reductions.

## **GOAL 16: PROMOTE PEACEFUL AND INCLUSIVE SOCIETIES FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT, PROVIDE ACCESS TO JUSTICE FOR ALL AND BUILD EFFECTIVE, ACCOUNTABLE AND INCLUSIVE INSTITUTIONS AT ALL LEVELS**

Crime in South Africa affects everyone and addressing the challenge of crime and corruption is one of the government’s priorities. The fight against crime and corruption is part of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) cluster’s integrated approach to accomplish the goal of a better life for all and ensure that all people in South Africa are and feel safe.

The NDP states that the high crime levels have slowed South Africa’s social and economic development. It further states that an integrated approach to safety and security will require coordinated activity across a variety of departments, the private sector and community bodies.

It further alludes to the fact that all should enjoy equal protection without fear of crime. The NDP draws attention to the link between, on the one hand, crime and on the other hand, high levels of unemployment and poor quality of education. Addressing these inequities requires higher levels of inclusive economic growth and sustained employment creation.

Economic growth and higher levels of employment partly depend on the enhancement and better utilisation of South Africa's export earnings. It further refers to the negative effect that corruption has on good governance and proposes that the country needs an anti-corruption system that enhances public servants' accountability, protects whistle-blowers, and closely monitors procurement. It further believes that a strong and independent judiciary is required to ensure the rule of law and good governance.

## **GOAL 17: STRENGTHEN THE MEANS OF IMPLEMENTATION AND REVITALIZE THE GLOBAL PARTNERSHIP FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT**

In a society with deep societal and economic divisions, neither social nor economic transformation is possible without institutions and infrastructure that enable the economy and society to operate; and its ability to carry out these functions, has a profound impact on the lives of all South Africans.

An efficient and progressive tax system is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy, supporting the values of social solidarity as reflected in the Constitution. The below par revenues for 2016/17 mirrors a deteriorating GDP growth over the past year, and this is expected to continue over the medium term. Tax revenue shortfalls directly lead to either higher government borrowing or reductions in government expenditure. It is critical that government is able to raise additional tax revenues when required to ensure the sustainability of social programmes and public investment.

It is envisioned that by 2030, ICT will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected South African information society and a vibrant knowledge economy that is more inclusive and prosperous. In view of that, Cabinet approved the National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper (2016) which provides a framework to guide interventions towards bridging the digital divide. Cabinet further approved a broadband policy aimed at ensuring universal access to broadband infrastructure and services by 2020. The vision for broadband is that by 2020, 100% of South Africans will have access to broadband services.

*(Source: STATSSA 2017- Indicator Baseline Report 2017: South Africa)*

### **1.2.2. NATIONAL POLICIES AND IMPERATIVES**

#### **1.2.2.1. Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)**

Section 151 of the Constitution states that developmental local government should make provision for a democratic and accountable government for local communities. Local government must promote a safe and healthy environment and encourage community involvement in matters of local government such as municipal health services, municipal transport, municipal roads, municipal parks and recreation.

Section 152 states that local government should ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner and encourages the involvement of communities and community organizations in matters of local government.

Section 153 states that each municipality should structure and manage its administration, budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community.

#### **1.2.2.2. White Paper on Local Government (1998)**

It views the IDP as a way of achieving developmental local government. It establishes a basis for developmental local government in which “local government is committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives”. It also encourages public consultation in policy formulation and in monitoring and evaluation of decision-making and implementation.

#### **1.2.2.3. Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)**

Municipal Structures, Act 117 of 1998 provides for the establishment of municipalities, their internal structures and the division of powers between local and district municipalities. It gives district municipalities the responsibilities for IDP for the entire district area, including a framework for all local municipalities. District municipalities, have a responsibility for inter-local co-ordination, and for links with provincial and national departments. Local municipalities should produce plans that are aligned to the district plan. Sekhukhune District Municipality is responsible to the planning activities of its local municipalities.

#### **1.2.2.4. Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000)**

It regulates the IDP. It requires the municipality to undertake developmental oriented planning to ensure that it strives to achieve the objectives of local government set out in Section 152 and 153 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. Section 25 (1) requires the Municipal Council, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, to adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality. Section 26 of the Act further outlines the core components of the IDP of a municipality.

#### **1.2.2.5. Municipal Finance Management Act (Act 56 of 2003)**

The Municipal Finance Management Act 9 MFMA) was promulgated to sustain the finances of both the municipalities and other spheres of government. The Act also gives mandatory obligations on the performance management system. Section 2 of the Act’s objectives is to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of the local government institutions to which this Act applies by establishing norms and standards.

Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) budget process endeavors to comply to the provision of the MFMA. It is pertinent that the development of the IDP and the budget process are integrated and aligned as per legislation.

#### **1.2.2.6. Inter-Governmental Relations Framework Act (Act 13 of 2005)**

This Act responds to the limited successes of alignment amongst the three spheres of government. The Act creates a framework to support intergovernmental cooperation and

coordination as required by the Constitution in its definition of “cooperative governance”. It compels all the three spheres of government to participate in the planning processes of the municipalities and in turn allow their own planning processes to be influenced by the municipal IDPs.

Municipal IDPs are therefore the centres of planning for both provincial and national programmes in a specific local area. Municipalities participate in District-planning for a Municipal Manager’s FORA and Mayor’s FORA as well as in the Premier’s Intergovernmental FORA to ensure proper alignment and coordination of Local, District, Provincial and National plans. The Act establishes structures and processes that enhance intergovernmental planning and monitoring processes that enhance intergovernmental planning and monitoring processes for Local, Provincial and National spheres of government.

#### 1.2.2.7. Development Facilitation Act (DFA) (Act 65 of 1995)

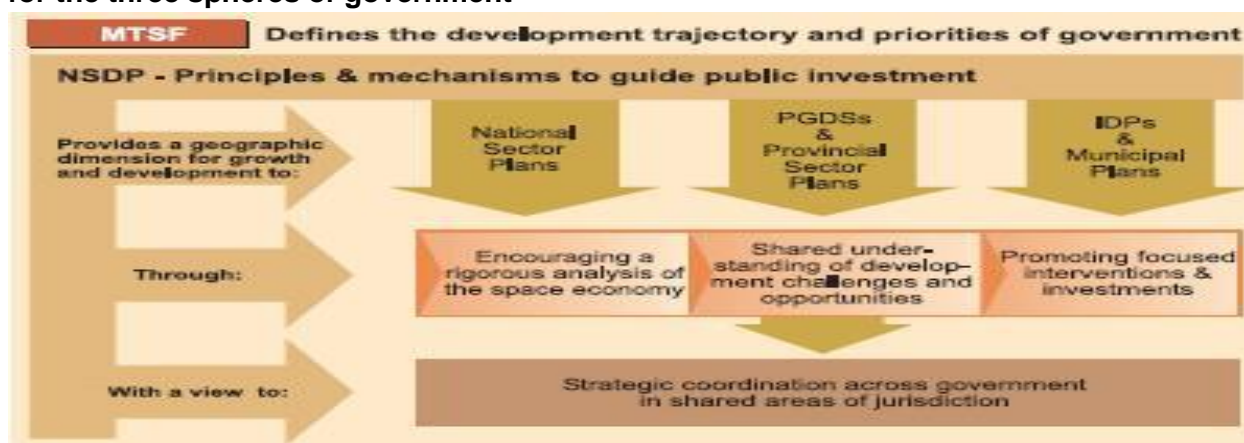
The DFA has formalized the restructuring of urban settlements and planning in South Africa. Its aim has been to expedite land development projects and to promote efficient and integrated land development. It states that municipalities should prepare the land Development Objectives (LDOs) on an annual basis.

#### 1.2.2.8. The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP)

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) (Presidency, 2006) is the primary spatial lens through which policymakers view socio-economic development in the country as a whole. It presents a wide variety of socio-economic trends emerging in South Africa, and then draws inferences about how that emerging space economy should affect public investment (expenditure) in the immediate future.

The diagram below illustrates

**Figure 1 - The NSDP principles and perspective informing the basis for robust analysis for the three spheres of government**



Source: National Spatial Development Perspective. The Presidency (2006)



The NSDP indicates that each sphere of government has its own distinct development tasks and related planning frameworks corresponding to the scale of operations and the area of jurisdiction. For these frameworks to be coordinated and strategically aligned, each sphere will have to adopt the NSDP methodology and approach.

#### **1.2.2.9. The Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) - 2019-2024**

The MTSF 2019-2024 is a combination of a Five-Year Implementation Plan and an Integrated Monitoring Framework. The Plan will focus on the seven priorities of the Sixth Administration of Government and related interventions, resourcing, social compacts with social partners, coordination and integration at all levels of government and delivery, through the District Model One Plan.

The purpose of the MTSF is to outline the Government strategic intent in implementing the electoral mandate and NDP Vision 2030 as our lodestar. The MTSF is also informed by the recommendations of the 25 Year Review and its specific recommendations for the next five years. It provides the strategic shift that marks transitions from the Fifth Administration to the Sixth Administration and the shift in strategic direction from the first 25 years to the second 25 years since the adoption of NDP 2030, its implementation through the MTSF 2014-2019, this MTSF 2019-2024 is informed by the lessons of the past years and 25 years of our democracy and the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP).

##### **A. Priorities for 2019-2024**

###### **i. The Three NDP Pillars**

The MTSF 2019-2024 aims to address the challenges of unemployment, inequality and poverty through three pillars of the NDP:

- Achieving More Capable State;
- Driving Strong and Inclusive Economy; and
- Building and strengthening the capabilities of South Africans

###### **ii. The Priorities**

The MTSF 2019-2024 is the translation of the Government Priorities outlined by the President at the 2019 State of the Nation Address (SONA) that are derived from the electoral mandate for the next five-year period. The seven priorities of this strategic framework are embedded into the three pillars.

The priorities, which will be achieved through more focused implementation, coordination and integration by the various levels of government including state owned enterprises, the private sector and civil society, are as follows:

Priority 1: A capable, ethical and developmental state

Priority 2: Economic transformation and job creation

Priority 3: Education, Skills and Health

Priority 4: Consolidating the social wage through reliable and quality basic services

Priority 5: Spatial integration, human settlements and local government

Priority 6: Social cohesion and safe communities

Priority 7: A better Africa and world

#### 1.2.2.10. GOVERNMENT'S PROGRAMME OF ACTION: THE OUTCOMES APPROACH

The outcomes approach is designed to ensure that government focuses on achieving the real improvements in the life of all South Africans.

The Outcomes approach emphasizes improved coordination of government activities across the spheres for common objectives, thereby discouraging working in compartments as experienced in the past. In creating a single window of coordination, the outcomes-based approach advances a common approach to service delivery challenges. This approach seeks to improve accountability of different role players in the service delivery chain through the efficient and effective use of human and financial resources.

1. **Basic Education:** Improve the quality of basic education
2. **Health:** Improve health and life expectancy
3. **Safety and Security:** All people in South Africa protected and feel safe
4. **Employment:** Decent employment through inclusive economic growth
5. **Skills:** A skilled and capable workforce to support inclusive growth
6. **Infrastructure:** An efficient, competitive, and responsive economic infrastructure network
7. **Rural Development:** Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security
8. **Human Settlement:** Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life
9. **Local Government:** A response and, accountable, effective, and efficient local government system
10. **Environment:** Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources
11. **International Relations:** A better South Africa, a better and safer Africa and World
12. **Public Service:** A development-oriented public service and inclusive citizenship

#### 1.2.2.11. Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The principal objective of this programme is to launch and expand labour intensive projects that will provide opportunities for skills development to create an enabling environment for employment and self-employment. It will also assist in building capacity for the maintenance of infrastructure; provide community service and the development of a programme for Early Childhood Development (ECD). SDM, like other districts in Limpopo, is gearing towards the effective implementation of EPWP programme and even expanding it to other sectors of the economy.

### **1.2.2.12. Development of Small and Micro-Enterprises**

The enabling environment should be created through legislation to harness the entrepreneurial capabilities available in local communities. These capabilities would encourage self-employment and the employment of other job seekers. Sekhukhune District Municipality has come up with interventionist measures through LED Strategy to deal with the problem of unemployment.

### **1.2.2.13. Alignment with National Development Plan**

The National Development Plan has strategies outlined according to following areas, which should be considered by municipalities for alignment.

## **WATER AND SANITATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGIES PROPOSED:**

- **Establish a national water-resources infrastructure agency**

The Department of Water Affairs has identified the actions necessary to reconcile the water demands of major urban and industrial centres with potential supplies up to 5 2030. These plans need to be translated into well timed investment programmes to avoid supply constraints. Large investments in regional systems could be undertaken by a national water-resources infrastructure agency, perhaps modelled on the South African National Roads Agency Limited.

This agency would build on the foundation provided by the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority, which is already supporting implementation of several large projects, and help to resolve the organisational challenges faced by the department's Water Trading Entity. However, the national government, through the Department of Water Affairs, should continue to lead the planning process, reviewing these programmes every five years to ensure coordination with other long-term economic and infrastructure plans.

- **Reduce demand**

Reducing growth in water demand is just as important as increasing its supply. Current planning assumes it will be possible to achieve an average reduction in water demand of 15 percent below baseline levels in urban areas by 2030. Detailed targets have been set for different areas. Achieving demand reductions on this scale will require programmes to reduce water leakage in distribution networks and improve efficient domestic and commercial water use.

The Commission proposes running a national programme to support local and sectoral initiatives to reduce water demand and improve water-use efficiency. Demand-management projects with merit should be given priority and regarded as being on par with water-supply expansion projects in terms of importance.

- **Manage agricultural use better**

Agriculture uses the largest volume of water (even though agricultural water supplies are less reliable than those supplied to urban and industrial users). The farming sector will have to

increase its water efficiency to improve production and allow for water to be transferred to new users in water scarce areas, to compensate for the expansion of irrigated agriculture, which has high job-creation potential. The Commission proposes a dedicated national programme to provide support to local and sectoral efforts to reduce water demand and improve water-use efficiency. Water-saving and demand-management projects should be considered as part of the overall range of water supply investment programmes. These can be compared with supply expansion projects, and should be prioritised accordingly, based on their merits.

- **Investigate water reuse and desalination**

There is already extensive indirect reuse of water in inland areas, where municipal and industrial wastewater is reintroduced into rivers after treatment. However, there is considerable scope for further water reuse. Many municipalities lack the technical capacity to build and manage their wastewater treatment systems. As a result, a regional approach to wastewater management may be required in certain areas. Water infrastructure investment should include projects to treat and reuse water, selected on their merits. Research into water reuse and desalination and the skills to operate such technology should be developed, perhaps under the auspices of a national water-resource infrastructure agency (discussed below) or the Water Research Commission.

#### **AGRICULTURE AND AGRO-PROCESSING STRATEGY PROPOSALS:**

- Substantial investment in irrigation infrastructure, including water storage, distribution and reticulation throughout the country where the natural resource base allows, as well as in water-saving technology. A 50 percent increase in land under irrigation would cost R40 billion in off-farm infrastructure over a 10-year period.
- Greater investment in providing innovative market linkages for small-scale farmers in communal and land-reform areas.
- As part of comprehensive support packages for farmers, preferential procurement mechanisms to ensure that new agricultural entrants can also access these markets.
- Tenure security. Farmers will only invest in these areas if they believe that their income streams from agriculture are secure. Tenure security will secure incomes for existing farmers at all scales, for new entrants into agriculture, and for the investment required to grow incomes.
- Technology development. Growth in agricultural production has always been fuelled by technology, and the returns to investment in agricultural research and development are high.
- Policy measures to increase intake of fruits and vegetables, and reduce intake of saturated fats, sugar, and salt, as recommended in the South African food dietary guidelines, to accompany strategies to increase vegetable and fruit production.
- Exploration of innovative measures, such as procurement from small-scale farmers to create local buffer stocks and community-owned emergency services.

## **MINERALS CLUSTER STRATEGY PROPOSALS:**

- Address the major constraints impeding accelerated growth and development of the mining sector in South Africa. The main interventions include ensuring certainty in respect of property rights; passing amendments to the Minerals and Petroleum Resource Development Act (2002) to ensure a predictable, competitive, and stable mining regulatory framework; secure reliable electricity supply and/or enable firms to supply their own plant with an estimated potential of 2 500MW by 2015; and secure, reliable rail services, potentially enabling private participation.
- Develop, deepen, and enhance linkages with other sections of the economy. This includes linkages with both manufacturers of inputs (capital goods and consumables) and suppliers of mining-related services; and downstream producers, especially for platinum-group metals and chrome ore. In this regard, an export tax could be considered.
- Provide focused research and development support to enable improved extraction methods that lengthen mine life; better energy efficiency and less water intensity; and alternative uses of South Africa's extracted minerals, especially platinum-group metals, titanium and others that have potential for application in new energy systems and machinery.
- Identify opportunities to increase regional involvement and benefit in the whole minerals cluster. This could include encouraging the establishment and development of alternative providers of partially processed intermediate inputs in other countries in the region.
- Ensure active engagement on, and resolution to, issues raised through the Mining Industry Growth and Development Task Team process.
- Improve alignment of mining charter requirements to ensure effectiveness in local communities.

## **Construction/Infrastructure**

- Address government's ability to spend its infrastructure budget, particularly about project-management capacity, long-term planning, and monitoring and evaluation of both expenditure patterns and construction work.
- Support the civil construction and the supplier industries in their export efforts – with the establishment of a Financial Centre for Africa, and more support in commercial diplomatic relations.
- Intensify support to supplier industries such as building supplies, steel, glass and cement.
- Create conditions for a less cyclically volatile industry by emphasising numerous, smaller scale, regionally dispersed projects to address backlogs, which are more accessible to smaller firms and new entrants.
- Expand public funding for alternative types of low-income housing that would generate more demand directly and in supplier industries.
- Promote a simultaneous focus on more energy-efficient buildings and building techniques to reduce demands on electricity supply in the longer term. Home

insulation and the installation of solar water heaters are labour-intensive activities that have strong backward linkages to supplier industries.

## **Tourism and Culture**

Emphasis will be placed on increasing the total number of tourists entering the country, and the average amount of money spent by each tourist.

Ease of doing business, as well as availability of appropriate levels of tourism infrastructure (particularly transport, tourism offerings/ products and accommodation), will play an important role in attracting different types of tourists.

Foreign business tourists arriving by air generate the most significant multipliers. South Africa will be positioned as the business and shopping centre for the region.

South Africa can do more to develop the region as an international tourist destination by emphasising the broader biodiversity, cultural diversity, scenic beauty, and range of tourism products, and making it easier for tourists to travel between countries in the region. A Schengen-type visa for the region will be considered.

## **Overarching Principles for Spatial Development**

“All spatial development should conform to the following normative principles and should explicitly indicate how they would meet the requirements of these principles (National Planning Commission; The Presidency, RSA, 2012: 277):

**Spatial justice:** The historic policy of confining particular groups to limited space, as in ghettoization and segregation, and the unfair allocation of public resources between areas, must be reversed to ensure that the needs of the poor are addressed first rather than last.

**Spatial sustainability:** Sustainable patterns of consumption and production should be supported, and ways of living promoted that do not damage the natural environment.

**Spatial resilience:** Vulnerability to environmental degradation, resource scarcity and climatic shocks must be reduced. Ecological systems should be protected and replenished.

**Spatial quality:** The aesthetic and functional features of housing and the built environment need to be improved to create liveable, vibrant, and valued places that allow for access and inclusion of people with disabilities.

**Spatial efficiency:** Productive activity and jobs should be supported, and burdens on business minimised. Efficient commuting patterns and circulation of goods and services should be encouraged, with regulatory procedures that do not impose unnecessary costs on development.

### **1.2.2.14. ALIGNMENT WITH NATIONAL INFRASTRUCTURE PLAN**

## **Purpose of National Infrastructure Plan**

The South African Government adopted a National Infrastructure Plan in 2012 whose purpose is to transform economic landscape while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs, and to strengthen the delivery of basic services. The plan also supports the integration of African economies.

The National Infrastructure Plan contains 18 strategic Infrastructure Plans, out of which those with relevance to local government are summarised below:

### **SIP 18: Water and sanitation infrastructure**

A 10-year plan to address the estimated backlog of adequate water to supply 1.4 m households and 2.1 m households to basic sanitation. The project will involve provision of sustainable supply of water to meet social needs and support economic growth.

Projects will provide for new infrastructure, rehabilitation and upgrading of existing infrastructure, as well as improve management of water infrastructure.

### **SIP 11: Agri-logistics and rural infrastructure**

Improve investment in agricultural and rural infrastructure that supports expansion of production and employment, small-scale farming, and rural development, including:

- facilities for storage (silos, fresh-produce facilities, packing houses)
- transport links to main networks (rural roads, branch train-line, ports)
- fencing of farms
- irrigation schemes to poor areas
- improved R&D on rural issues (including expansion of agricultural colleges)
- processing facilities (abattoirs, dairy infrastructure)
- aquaculture incubation schemes
- rural tourism infrastructure.

### **SIP 6: Integrated municipal infrastructure project**

Develop national capacity to assist the 23 least resourced districts (19 million people) to address all the maintenance backlogs and upgrades required in water, electricity, and sanitation bulk infrastructure.

The road maintenance programme will enhance service delivery capacity thereby impacting positively on the population.

### **SIP 10: Electricity transmission and distribution for all**

Expand the transmission and distribution network to address historical imbalances, provide access to electricity for all and support economic development.

Align the 10-year transmission plan, the services backlog, the national broadband roll-out and the freight rail line development to leverage off regulatory approvals, supply chain and project development capacity.

### **SIP 1: Unlocking the northern mineral belt with Waterberg as the catalyst**

- Unlock mineral resources.
- Rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure.
- Thousands of direct jobs across the areas unlocked.
- Urban development in Waterberg - first major post-apartheid new urban centre will be a “green” development project.
- Rail capacity to Mpumalanga and Richards Bay.
- Shift from road to rail in Mpumalanga.
- Logistics corridor to connect Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

<b>PRIMARY MINERAL RESERVES</b>	
<b>Coal</b>	18 bn tons
<b>Chromite</b>	5,5 tons
<b>Platinum</b>	6 323 tons
<b>Palladium</b>	3 611 tons

### **1.2.3. PROVINCIAL IMPERATIVES**

#### **1.2.3.1. LIMPOPO DEVELOPMENT PLAN (LDP): 2020 – 2025**

The Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) is a 5-year overarching Growth and Development Plan that outlines the contribution of the province to the National Development Plan (NDP) Vision 2030 imperatives and the execution of the 5-year NDP Implementation Plan and Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) priorities and targets of the current Term of Administration. The 2020-2025 Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) builds on the achievements and lessons learned from the implementation of the 2014-2019 LDP.

The LDP is designed to marshal resources from all sectors, both public and private, towards addressing economic growth and integrated development in Limpopo. It thus creates a platform for the constructive and active participation of the private sector, civil society and organised labour towards the achievement of provincial growth and development objectives to promote higher standards of living for citizens of Limpopo.

The LDP seeks to ensure that government resources, efforts and energy are channelled towards creating an enabling environment, offering opportunities to the people of the Limpopo Province to be active beneficiaries of sustainable growth and development, which can improve their quality of life.



Equally, the LDP serves as a blueprint and framework for Strategic Plans and Annual Performance Plans of provincial departments, District-Wide IDPs or One Plans and Integrated Development Plans of districts and local municipalities, as it delineates the provincial contribution towards the implementation of goals and targets spelled out in national strategies and sector plans.

The LDP is also an elaboration of the adopted international and national policy frameworks that provide a clear vision for growth and development. It espouses the need for meaningful partnership amongst all stakeholders if growth and development are to be realised in the province.

Development is defined as broad-based improvements in the standard and quality of people's living in Limpopo, to which all institutions, including government, business, organised labour and citizens contribute. Growth in the economic output, the provision of infrastructure capital assets for social and economic development, job creation, production and income access to adequate public services, and environmental management are all essential instruments to achieve sustainable development, the outcome of which will result in the reduction of unemployment, poverty and inequality.

Limpopo is bracing itself to consolidate the gains brought about by the democratic dispensation and achievements registered during the 5th Term of Administration by further enhancing economic growth focusing on industrialisation and value-adding, implementing measures that promote job creation and addressing social development through the implementation of the 2020-2025 LDP.

The 2020-2025 LDP is being finalised amid the unprecedented Corona virus (COVID-19), which has been declared a pandemic by the World Health Organization (WHO), and which has created social and economic crises throughout the world to a scale last seen during the 1930s Great Depression. The full impact of the virus is not yet known. However, experts estimate that the global economy will register negative growth. For example, the IMF in January 2020 expected the global income to grow by 3% but post COVID-19 it is forecast to fall by 3% or more.

In South Africa, the situation might be dire, as the economy was still recovering from the 2008-09 Great Recession, riddled by the State Capture chronicles, and the latest downgrading into sub-investment level on the eve of the pandemic outbreak and the subsequent national lockdown implemented to limit the rate of infection. It is thus estimated that the economy will register negative growth, the rate of unemployment might double and inequality will rise sharply due to the disproportionate impact of COVID-19 on low- and unskilled workers, small and medium enterprises, and the most vulnerable groups in society. The key findings of a predictive analysis of the impact of COVID-19 have been included in the LDP and may necessitate a review of the provincial targets.

### **Purpose of the LDP**

The purpose of the LDP 2020-2025 is to outline the contribution of the Limpopo Province to the NDP, provide a framework for the strategic plans of provincial government departments and municipalities, and to create a structure for the constructive participation of private-sector business and organised labour and citizens towards the achievement of the provincial growth and development objectives.

The people of Limpopo desire a future state that is peaceful and prosperous and contributes towards improved quality of life. This can be achieved through the implementation of social and economic programmes that result in the achievement of the development objectives as follows:

- Create decent employment through inclusive economic growth and sustainable livelihood;
- Improve the quality of life of citizens;
- Prioritise social protection and social investments;
- Promote vibrant and equitable sustainable rural communities;
- Raise the effectiveness and efficiency of a developmental public service;
- Ensure sustainable development.

The 2020-2025 LDP is an integrated socio-economic planning and delivery document for the province. It encapsulates the realities and the aspiration of the provincial citizens. The plan aims to transform the productive potential of the province while addressing the inherent socio-economic challenges with the aim of ensuring sustainable livelihoods.

## **1.2.4. LOCAL IMPERATIVES**

### **1.2.4.1. Sekhukhune District Development Model (One Plan) – 2023/2024-2025/2026**

The IGR Framework Act (IGRFA) sets out the general principles and objects of intergovernmental relations. The focus is primarily on the outcomes that the system must achieve coherent government, effective provision of services, monitoring implementation of policy and legislation as well as the realization of national priorities. The local government is the closest sphere to communities and represents all spheres of government at the local level. A functional and developmental LG is a necessary requirement for an effective Developmental State.

The District Development Model, as announced by the President seeks to encourage better coordination and cooperation in government to improve coherence in planning and implementation across all spheres of governance.

The District Development Model seeks to address silo planning at a horizontal and vertical level. It will also narrow the distance between the people and government by strengthening the coordination role and capacities at the district level as it is the penultimate sphere closer to the people after Ward and Local Spheres. It is aimed at delivering Integrated Services whilst strengthening Monitoring and Evaluation and impact at district and local levels.

The Sekhukhune District Municipality is located in the south-eastern part of Limpopo, which is South Africa's most Northern Province. The district was formed during the year 2000 and is one of the five District Municipalities in the Limpopo Province. It shares boundaries with Capricorn and Mopani Districts in the north, Mpumalanga in the south and east, and the Waterberg District in the west.

The district is largely rural in nature and is made-up of four Local Municipalities, namely; Elias Motsoaledi, Ephraim Mogale, Makhuduthamaga and Fetakgomo Tubatse. The district is made up of 117 wards with a total of 811 villages.

There are 81 traditional leaderships within the district. These are mostly concentrated in Fetakgomo Tubatse, Makhuduthamaga, the eastern extents of Ephraim Mogale and the south-western extents of Elias Motsoaledi municipality (the former Moutse area in KwaNdebele).

Sekhukhune District Municipality accounts for a total population of 1.2 million, or 20.4% of the total population in the Limpopo Province, with the Vhembe District being the most populous region in the Limpopo Province for 2018. Sekhukhune increased in importance from ranking fourth in 2008 to third in 2018. In terms of its share the Sekhukhune District Municipality was slightly larger in 2018 (20.4%) compared to what it was in 2008 (19.6%). When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Sekhukhune ranked highest (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 1.4% between 2008 and 2018.

According to IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750, in 2018, the population group with the highest percentage of people living in poverty was the African population group with a total of 82.6% people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition. The proportion of the African population group, living in poverty, decreased by 7.66 percentage points, as can be seen by the change from 82.60% in 2008 to 74.93% in 2018. There has been a rise in unemployment between 2008 and 2018. In 2018, there were a total number of 93 900 people unemployed in Sekhukhune, which is an increase of 6 360 from 87 600 in 2008. The total number of unemployed people within Sekhukhune constitutes 28.17% of the total number of unemployed people in Limpopo Province.

There are approximately 187 161 people of 20 years or older in the district who have no schooling. Only 4 % of the population have higher education. This will likely constrain the ability of the district to improve its socio-economic conditions significantly in the short to medium term.

This plan has utilised statistics received mainly from the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET), which they obtained from different sources, i.e. Stats SA, Global Insight /IHS Markit Regional Explorer, Geoscience Councils, IEC, Universities, Internal (Record of Decision), etc. It analyses a combination of stats obtained mainly from Stats SA and Global Insight/IHS Markit Regional Explorer which brings together the deepest and timely intelligence at district level. LEDET officially subscribes to Global Insight /IHS Markit Regional Explorer.

The main sectors of Sekhukhune District that contribute to the growth of economy in the district are Agriculture, Mining and Community Services. Mining is the biggest contributor in the

economy of the district and it is forecasted to grow fastest at an average of 5.64% annually from R 12.4 billion in Sekhukhune District Municipality to R16.3 billion in 2023. The mining sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Sekhukhune District Municipality in 2023, with a total share of 53.0% of the total GVA (as measured in current prices), growing at an average annual rate of 5.6%. The sector that is estimated to grow the slowest is the construction sector with an average annual growth rate of 0.21%.

The District Municipality remains focused and committed to the vision “Sekhukhune District Municipality - a leader in integrated economic development and sustainable service delivery”. The institutional projects included in the Development Plan will be aligned to the institutional budget. The Development Plan will include the plans/programmes which should be implemented by different spheres of government (including Municipalities) and Private Sector to ensure that people within Sekhukhune District experience integrated and inclusive development. Different Stakeholders were consulted on the Socio-economic Profile after its approval by Council in February 2020. The District Development Model was officially inaugurated by the deputy minister in the Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME) on the 20<sup>th</sup> November 2020 and subsequently launched by the Premier of Limpopo on the 23<sup>rd</sup> of April 2021.

#### **1.2.4.2. Powers and Functions**

The establishment of the district municipality is fulfilled in line with the local government transformation process as articulated by the White Paper on Local Government, 1998. The White Paper envisaged the form and nature of new local government structures in the country. The Sekhukhune District Municipality is as such classified under category C municipality and these municipalities are predominantly rural municipalities that serve sparsely populated areas, remote villages, and agricultural regions. These municipalities often have the least resources and administrative capacity among the three categories, as they primarily focus on providing essential services. Below is Sekhukhune District Municipality’s powers and functions conferred upon it by the Constitution of South Africa in terms of section 156(1) and the division of powers and functions:

- Water
- Sanitation
- Fire fighting
- Disaster Management
- Local Tourism
- Municipal Airport except for Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi
- Municipal Planning
- Municipal Health Services
- Municipal Public Transport
- Markets
- Municipal Abattoirs

The powers and functions are reviewed annually after capacity assessments by the Municipal Demarcation Board, which informs MEC Adjustment Report.

Municipal Demarcation Board is currently reviewing the whole Capacity Assessment Model, considering the following limitations:

**Clarity on underlying processes and drivers of the model:** a primary concern relating to the approach is that the detail underlying the model is not fully explained. The reader or user of the model (which could include the MEC or other provincial representatives) is not provided with the relevant information to fully understand which variables inform the determination of whether a municipality has capacity or not. Furthermore, it is not clear what processes were followed in reaching the determination of capacity levels.

**Limitations related to the conceptualisation of capacity:** the concern with this approach is that the model lacks a robust and comprehensive basis upon which to inform a) the assessment and understanding of capacity levels within and across municipalities and b) make recommendations for the adjustment of powers and functions.

**Measurement and interpretation issues:** it fails to assess the ability to spend, which is one indicator of a municipality's capacity to deliver services and perform functions, insufficient understanding of the extent of capacity shortcomings, there is a need to assess actual capacity levels in addition to asking about perceived access to resources.

**Assessing performance:** lack of benchmarks against which to assess, lack of differentiation, insufficient scope for understanding the 'why'

**Limitations of quantitative assessments:** The quality of the data is highly dependent on the measurements used and the extent to which the indicators link to a clearly defined conceptual framework.

The explanatory power of quantitative data is limited to the variables being tested in the survey. Because surveys focus on narrow, highly specified areas of inquiry and rely on structured responses mainly, they are highly limited in terms of the detail they provide and by their very design are not meant to provide depth and breadth.

It is therefore prudent that powers be approached cautiously as a guide than being instructive.

#### **1.2.4.3. BASIS OF IDP REVIEW PROCESS**

The development process address recommendations from different stakeholders and role players together with comments from the MEC' assessment of the district. It also takes into cognizance the assessment of the district's performance against the organizational objectives, the recommendations during public participation, IDP engagement processes and also any new information or any change in circumstances that might have arisen subsequent to the adoption of 2023-2024 IDP.

The development process is undertaken through implementation of Process Plans which all local municipalities must prepare as per legislation. The Process Plans must comply with the District IDP Framework to ensure proper implementation, alignment and coordination between the district and local municipalities as outlined in Section 27 of the Municipal System Act (MSA) of 2000. Proper alignment between the district and its local municipalities was done when IDP Framework at the District level and subsequently process plans for all Local Municipalities were compiled and adopted between July and August 2022 respectively. The process and schedule followed during the development process as stipulated in the District IDP Framework is outlined in the tables below.



**Specific dates on the IDP process are listed as follows:**

The table below reflects key deadlines which are followed according to the normal IDP/Budget

Table 1: Important Dates on IDP Process

Action	Responsibility	Legislative background	Deadline
<b>Preparatory Phase</b>			
Publishing of approved Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP), as well as Performance Agreements (PAs) of Senior Managers	Office of the Municipal Manager	MFMA s 53	31 July 2023
Preparations and submission of Annual Financial Statements (AFS)	Budget and Treasury	MFMA s 122 Generally Recognised Accounting Practice (GRAP)	31 August 2023
Council adopts IDP Framework/Process Plan and budget timetable for 2022/2023 IDP/Budget review	Planning and Economic Development Department/Budget and Treasury	-Section 27(1) Act 32 of 2000 -Section 21(1) Act 56 of 2003	31 August 2023
Table a time schedule of key budget & IDP deadlines	Executive Mayor	MFMA s 21	31 August 2023
Public notice in the Local newspaper regarding the adoption of Framework/Process Plan	Planning and Economic Development Department	Section 21(1) (a) (b) and (c) Act 32 of 2000 Section 28 (3), Act 32 of 2000	20 September 2023
Sitting of the Budget Steering Committee: - to monitor implementation of budget and - assess Analysis Phase information in preparation for IDP Representative Forum	Budget and Treasury	Section 4(1) Municipal Budgets and Reporting Regulations, 2008	31 October 2023
<b>Analysis Phase</b>			
IDP Representative Forum meeting (to discuss Analysis Phase information)	Planning and Economic Development	Section 27 (d) (i) and Section 17 of Act 32 of 2000	30 December 2023
Situational analysis to assess the existing level of development (analysis phase chapter) of the SDM	Planning and Economic Development Department	Section 26 (b) of Act 32 of 2000	30 December 2023
Determination of revenue projections, proposed rates and service charges and draft budget allocations	Budget and Treasury	MFMA s 18	30 December 2023
Submit mid- year performance assessment to council	Budget and Treasury	MFMA s 72	25 January 2024
Submit mid- year performance assessment to AG, NT, PT and provincial department responsible for local government and Executive Mayor	Office of the Municipal Manager	MFMA s 72	25 January 2024
<b>Strategy Phase:</b>			
Strategic Planning session	Planning and Economic Development	MSA s 25	28 February 2024



Action	Responsibility	Legislative background	Deadline
The objectives and strategies that will be used to tackle challenges of development are specified.	All internal departments of SDM, including the relevant departments from local municipalities	Section 26 (c and d) of Act 32 of 2000	28 February 2024
Table adjustment budget if necessary	Executive Mayor	MFMA s 28	28 February 2024
<b>Project phase and Integration phase:</b>			
Projects to implement the identified objectives and strategies are formulated, as well as finalization of Integration Phase	All internal departments of SDM, including the relevant departments from local municipalities	Section 26 of Act 32 of 2000	31 March 2024
Sitting of the Budget Steering Committee (to discuss Draft IDP/Budget for 2022-2023, prepare for public consultations and the IDP Rep Forum)	Budget and Treasury Office	Section 4(1) Municipal Budgets and Reporting Regulations, 2008	31 March 2024
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Draft IDP/Budget for 2022-2023 tabled before Council for noting (at least 90 days before start of financial year)</li> <li>- Draft Budget related policies and Risk Policies tabled before council for noting</li> </ul>	Planning and Economic Development/Budget and Treasury	MFMA Section 16(1) and (2), Section 14 (1) of Municipal Budgets and Reporting Regulations	31 March 2024
IDP Representative Forum meeting (to present Draft IDP for 2023-2024)	Planning and Economic Development	Section 27 (d) (i) and Section 17 of Act 32 of 2000	30 April 2024
Make budget available to Public, National Treasury, Provincial Treasury and other government departments	Budget and Treasury	MFMA s 22 (a) and (b)	11 April 2024
Public consultations final round (presenting Draft IDP/Budget)	Planning and Economic Development / Budget and Treasury / Office of the Speaker/Mayor	Section 16(1) (a), Section 28 (2) of Act 32 of 2000 and MFMA s 22 (a) and (b)	30 April 2024
<b>Approval Phase</b>			
Council approves the IDP and Budget (and budget related policies and Risk Policies) for 2023-2024	Planning and Economic Development/ Budget and Treasury	Section 16 and 17 of Municipal Budgets and Reporting Regulations, 2008	31 May 2024
Submission of approved IDP/Budget to MEC for Local Government, National and Provincial treasury and to local municipalities	Planning and Economic Development/Budget and Treasury Office/Municipal Manager	Section 32 of Act 32 of 2000	10 June 2024
Notice and summary of approved IDP/budget in local newspaper	Planning and Economic Development/Budget and Treasury	Section 25 (4); 21(1) (a) (b) and (c) Act 32 of 2000 Section 18(1) Municipal Budgets and reporting regulations, 2008	14 June 2024
Submit draft SDBIP within 14 days after approval of the budget to Executive Mayor	The Municipal Manager	MFMA s 53	14 June 2024
Approval of SDBIP and Performance agreements of senior managers- within 28 days after budget approval	The Executive Mayor	MFMA s 53	28 June 2024

## Stakeholder Engagements and Community Participation

Community participation is a legislated requirement for development and review of a municipal IDP. Section 16 of the Municipal Systems Act, No. 32 of 2000, requires municipalities to develop a culture of municipal governance that complements formal representative government with system of participatory government, and must for this purpose encourage and create conditions for local community to participate in preparation, implementation, and review of its Integrated Development Plan. It also requires municipalities to encourage and create conditions for the local community to participate in the affairs of the municipality.

The organizational structures as outlined above will form part of the methods of community participation in the IDP processes. In addition to these, community consultative meetings are also held across the area of the District Municipality.

Public consultations are sometimes held in each half of the financial year – during analysis phase and after adoption of the draft IDP:

- ✓ First round documenting priority needs of communities. These are commonly done by the LM's visiting their own wards to record priority development needs raised by their local community, and the
- ✓ Second round focuses on presenting the Draft IDP/Budget to communities (required by legislation for all municipalities).

## SUMMARY OF COMMUNITY NEEDS CAPTURED DURING APRIL 2023

Table 3: Summary of community needs captured during April 2023

ITEM	ISSUES Raised
1	Water
2	Sanitation
3	Roads/Stormwater Drainage
4	Employment opportunities
5	Housing
6	Health
7	Electricity
8	Education
9	Community Halls
10	Cemeteries
11	Land issues (Relocation of Sekhukhune Offices to Jane Furse)
12	Environmental issues
13	Tourism
14	Special programs
15	Safety and security
16	Sports and recreation
17	Refuse removal
18	Staff/Human Resources
19	Finance
20	Agriculture

## Synopsis of community contribution towards IDP/budget of 2023/2024 – 2025/2026

Being a Water Services Authority (WSA) and Water Services Provider (WSP) on behalf of its local municipalities, SDM is more under pressure to deliver water to the households within its area of jurisdiction. Water being the highest basic need of the local communities, may imply that SDM has not been making notable impact in reducing the water backlog in its area.

The high needs for water supply vary from total lack of municipal water supply; to intermittent water supply; boreholes that have dried up; broken pumping machines; pump operators who are unskilled or insufficient in numbers; and water tankers who visit deprived villages inconsistently. Given the length of period through which SDM held the powers of being a WSP, it suggests that the municipality may be struggling to fulfil its mandate of delivering water to communities. The main implication for its future planning is that SDM should invest most of its resources into the effort of delivering water to its households - which includes human resources and budget. Forward planning in terms of water delivery should also be improved.

#### 1.2.4.4. MEC IDP ASSESSMENT REPORT 2021/2022 – 2022/2023

Table 4: 2021/2022-2022/2023 MEC IDP Assessment Reports

<b>MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>2022/2023 RATING</b>	<b>2023/2024 RATING</b>
<b>Sekhukhune District</b>	<b>High</b>	<b>High</b>
Fetakgomo Tubatse	High	High
Makhuduthamaga	High	High
Ephraim Mogale	High	High
Elias Motsoaledi	High	High

Source: CoGHSTA – MEC Assessment Reports 2022/2023 – 2023/2024

# **CHAPTER 2:**

# **ANALYSIS**

# **PHASE**

## 2.1. OVERVIEW OF MUNICIPALITIES WITHIN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT

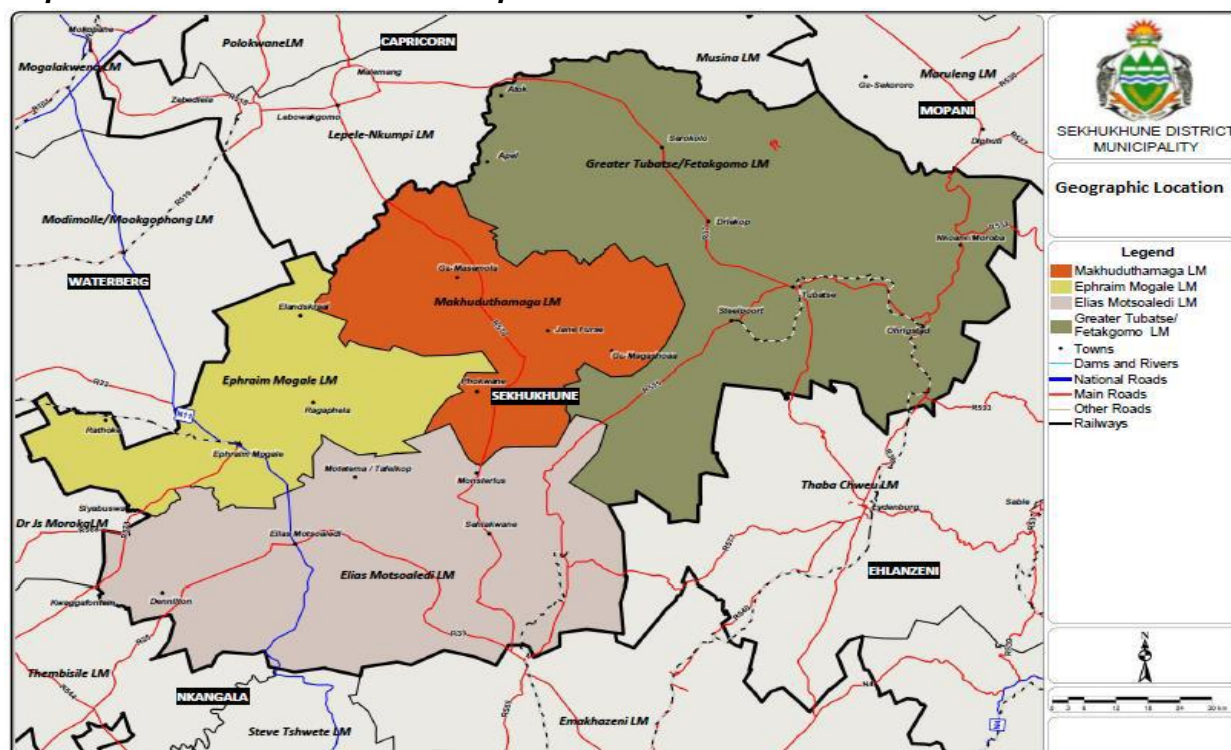
### 2.1.1. Sekhukhune District Municipality

Sekhukhune District Municipality is a Category C municipality and is situated in the Limpopo Province. It is the smallest district in terms of geographic location in the province and it is comprised of four Local Municipalities: Ephraim Mogale, Fetakgomo Tubatse, Elias Motsoaledi and Makhuduthamaga. It is a mainly rural district with approximately 811 villages. Sekhukhune is an area with a long and proud history, a place of majestic beauty with legal mountains, lush valleys and meandering rivers. Under its soil, lie vast deposits of precious metals – so vast that they today contain the largest reserves of platinum group metals in the world.

The Sekhukhune District covers approximately 1,358 million hectares of land and has a total of 1 336 805 people in 340 753 households. This district has a median age of 24, which is a 90 percent of the figure in South Africa which is 28. This means that programmes that are geared towards youth population should be maximised to ensure that challenges affecting this age group are addressed. These programmes include job creation projects, specialised education, safety related measures to combat crime etc.

The dominant home language in Sekhukhune District is Sepedi with 83%, followed by IsiNdebele with 4.4%. The SDM Sepedi speaking inhabitants contribute 1.5 times the total percentage of Bapedi people in Limpopo which is 54.71%. With these different languages and cultures, there should be deliberate efforts to promote diversified cultural activities that will enhance tourism attraction within the district.

**Map 1: The Sekhukhune District Map**



Source: SDM 2021/2022

Sekhukhune District Municipality is both a Water Services Authority and a Water Services Provider, therefore its primary function in terms of service delivery is the provision of water. According to Stats SA (CS 2022), 66% of households in the district have access to safe drinking water (e.g. 25% inside dwellings, 22.2% inside the yard and 18.9% in communal stands). When it comes to access to piped water inside the dwelling, only 25% of the households are reported as having access.

### 2.1.2. Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality

The Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality is located North of N4 highway, Middleburg, Belfast and Mbombela; and East of the N1 highway; Groblersdal and Polokwane. The municipality is largely dominated by rural landscape with only 06 (six) proclaimed townships. The Fetakgomo Tubatse LM is situated on fertile soils alongside the Lepelle, Leppellane and Spekboom Rivers, offering great

agricultural potential. Furthermore, the Municipality is surrounded by beautiful mountains, and boasts a rich cultural history. It generally features a dispersed settlement structure, with a few secondary/gravel roads serving these. Atok and Apel represent the most prominent settlement areas in the western extents of the municipality and Driekop, Burgersfort, Steelpoort and Orichstad in the eastern parts. Due to the concentration of mining activities along the R37 and R555 (Dilokong Corridor), the Municipality functions as a strong economic centre within the SDM. As such, mining is not only the major source of employment and economic growth within the municipality, but also the district.

Minerals found within the Municipality include platinum, chrome, vanadium, andalusite, silica and magnetite. The current and planned expansion of mining activities within the LM is placing extreme pressure on the environment and is resulting in land use conflicts with other uses such as agriculture. Retail, trade, services, and agriculture also contribute to the municipal economy. Agricultural products cultivated in this area include citrus, vegetables, corn, and maize. Livestock farming includes cattle, goats, and game. The Municipality generally features a dispersed settlement structure, with a greater concentration of settlements within the western extents. Although featuring several major roads (R37, R36 and R555), the LM's numerous settlements are only accessible via secondary gravel roads.

### 2.1.3. Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality

The Municipality borders Makhuduthamaga local municipality in the south, Ephraim Mogale local municipality in the east, Fetakgomo Tubatse local Municipality and Mpumalanga's Dr JS Moroka, Thembisile Hani, Steve Tshwete, Emakhazeni and Thaba Chweu local municipalities. Its main town Groblersdal is the centre of a progressive commercial farming community because of the town's fortunate location in the Olifants River irrigation area below Loskop Dam. Intensive agricultural activities (under 5 irrigation schemes) cover a total land surface area of 28 800 ha. The agricultural produce includes grapes, wheat, tobacco, maize, soya beans, citrus fruits, cotton, and vegetables.

Apart from Groblersdal, which is located within the central extents of the LM, most of the LM's residential areas are concentrated within the eastern and western extents of the LM, around the prominent settlements' areas of Monsterlus and Dennilton/Elandsdoorn, respectively. Generally, settlements located within Elias Motsoaledi LM are better served by road infrastructure than other settlements located within the DM. Prominent roads include the N11, R25, R33 and R579. The municipality contributes about 29% to the Sekhukhune District Municipality economy, which makes it the second highest contributor below the Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality.

### 2.1.4. Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality

The Municipality generally features a dispersed settlement structure, with a greater concentration of settlements towards the eastern and western extents. Marble Hall and Moganyaka represent the two most prominent settlement areas within the LM. Although the N11 serves to connect the town of Marble Hall with Mookgopong to the north and Groblersdal to the south, the numerous settlements within the eastern and western extents of the LM are only accessible via secondary gravel roads. And its economy remains the lowest contributor to the Sekhukhune District Municipality economy.

### 2.1.5. Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality

The Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality is bordered by the Capricorn District in the north, Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality in the south, Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality in the east, and Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality in the west. It accounts for 16% of the district geographical area and comprises of the central extents of the SDM. It boasts agriculture, tourism and mining as its key growth sectors. Currently, several new mining exploration initiatives are taking place within the Municipality, which could provide for much needed employment opportunities and the growth of the economy in general.

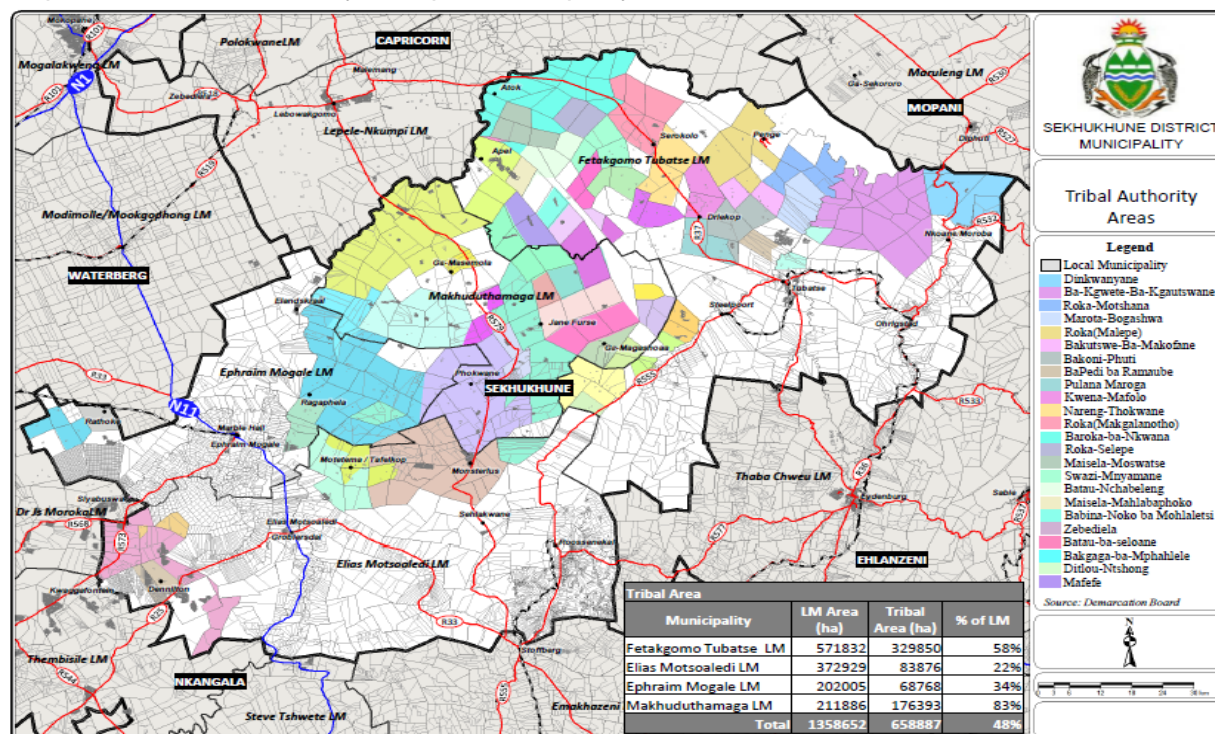
The agricultural and tourism potential has also not yet been fully exploited. Only limited forms of agricultural and tourism activities are present. It features a dispersed settlement structure, with a greater concentration of settlements within the central and eastern extents of the LM, along the R579 which connects the two most prominent settlement areas, namely Jane Furse and Monsterlus. Apart from the R579, the numerous settlements located throughout the LM are only accessible via

secondary gravel roads. The decision to locate the main District Municipal Offices in Jane Furse will provide substantial growth impetus, perhaps at the cost of Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality.

2.1.6. Traditional Authorities

There are 81 traditional leaderships within the district. These are mostly concentrated in Fetakgomo Tubatse, Makhuduthamaga, the Eastern extents of Ephraim Mogale and the South-Western extents of Elias Motsoaledi municipality (the former Moutse area in KwaNdebele). With this number of Traditional leaderships, it is required that healthy relationships relating to land development be established between government and traditional authorities. The implementation of SPLUMA particularly in the rural parts of the district should be well articulated to the traditional leaders and communities in order to have a common understanding of the development.

Map 2: Traditional authority land per Municipality



Source: Sekhukhune IDP, 2021/2022

The extent of traditional authority land per Municipality is also shown on the map above as summarised below: In Fetakgomo Tubatse it covers about 329 850 ha of land which represents 58% of the municipal area. In Makhuduthamaga the land under traditional leadership totals 176 393 ha which accounts for 83% of all land in the municipality.

The land under traditional leadership in Elias Motsoaledi amounts to 83 876 ha which is 22% of all land in the municipality. In Ephraim Mogale about 68 768 ha of land (34% of total land) is under traditional authority. In total, an estimated 658 887 ha of land in Sekhukhune District is under tribal authority. This represents about 48% of the total district area.

**SDM TRADITIONAL AUTHORITIES: STATUS OF BASIC SERVICES**

**Ephraim Mogale**

NAME OF TRADITIONAL AUTHORITY	WATER	SANITATION	ELECTRICITY	STATUS OF ROAD TO MOSHATE
	Tab/Tanker/Borehole	VIP/ Flushing/ Pit	Available/ Not Available	Gravel /Tarred
Matlala Traditional Authority	Tanker	VIP/Pit	Available	Tarred
Rahlagane Traditional Authority	Tanker	VIP/Pit	Available	Tarred
Matlala Mashung Traditional Authority	Tanker	VIP/Pit	Available	Gravel

(Source EPHMLM 2022/2023)

**Elias Motsoaledi**

NAME OF TRADITIONAL AUTHORITY	WATER	SANITATION	ELECTRICITY	STATUS OF ROAD TO MOSHATE
	Tab/Tanker / Borehole	VIP/ Flushing / Pit	Available/ Not Available	Gravel /Tarred
Bakwena Traditional authority Chief B.R. Matsepe Kopa	Borehole	VIP	Available	Tarred
Bantwane Traditional authority Chief M.P. Mathebe	Borehole	VIP	Available	Paving
Ndebele Traditional authority Inkosi P.J. Mahlangu Maphepha 2 <sup>nd</sup>	Borehole	VIP	Available	Tarred
Bakgaga ba Kopa Traditional authority Chief B.H. Rammupudu	Borehole	VIP	Available	Tarred
Matlala Lehwelere Tribal authority Chief S.F. Matlala	Borehole	VIP	Available	Tarred

(Source: EMLM 2022/2023)

**Makhuduthamaga**

Name of Traditional Authority	Water	Sanitation	Electricity	Status of road to Moshate
	Tab/ Tanker/ Borehole	VIP/ Flushing/Pit	Available/ Not Available	Gravel /Tarred
Marota Madibong	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Maila Mapitsane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Maila Segolo	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Tlokwe Magolego	Tab	VIP	Available	Gravel
Marota Makgane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred /Paved
Kone Maloma	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Tau Tswaledi	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Kone Legare	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Mogashoa Ditlhakaneng	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Mogashoa Manamane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Tswako Lekentle	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Tau Nkadimeng	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Bangwenyama ya Maswazi	Tanker	VIP	Available	Gravel
Marota Mathibeng	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Ratau Makgane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred /Paved
Kone Seopela	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Marota Tjatane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Marota Marulaneng	Borehole	VIP	Available	Tarred
Marota Mamone	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Kwena Madihlaba	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Phokoane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Tisane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Batau ba Marishane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Batau ba Phaahla	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Batau ba Masemola	Tanker	VIP	Available	Tarred
Mampane	Tanker	VIP	Available	Gravel

(Source MKM 2022/2023)

**Fetakgomo Tubatse**

NAME OF TRADITIONAL AUTHORITY	WATER	SANITATION	ELECTRICITY	STATUS OF ROAD TO MOSHATE
	Tab/Tanker/ Borehole	VIP/Flushing /Pit	Available/ Not Available	Gravel /Tarred
Bahlakwana Ba Rantho	Borehole	Pit toilets	Available	Gravel
Roka Motshana	Tab	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Roka Malepe	Tab	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Phasha Makgalanoto Tribal	Borehole	Pit toiles	Available	Gravel
Ditlou Mampa Tribal Council	Tab	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Maesela Mahlaba Phooko	Borehole	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Tau Mankotsane	Jojo Tankers	Pit toilets	Available	Gravel
Kgoshi Kgolo Thulare Tribal Office	Borehole	Pit toilets	Available	Tarred Road
Tau Nchabeleng Tribal	Borehole	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel



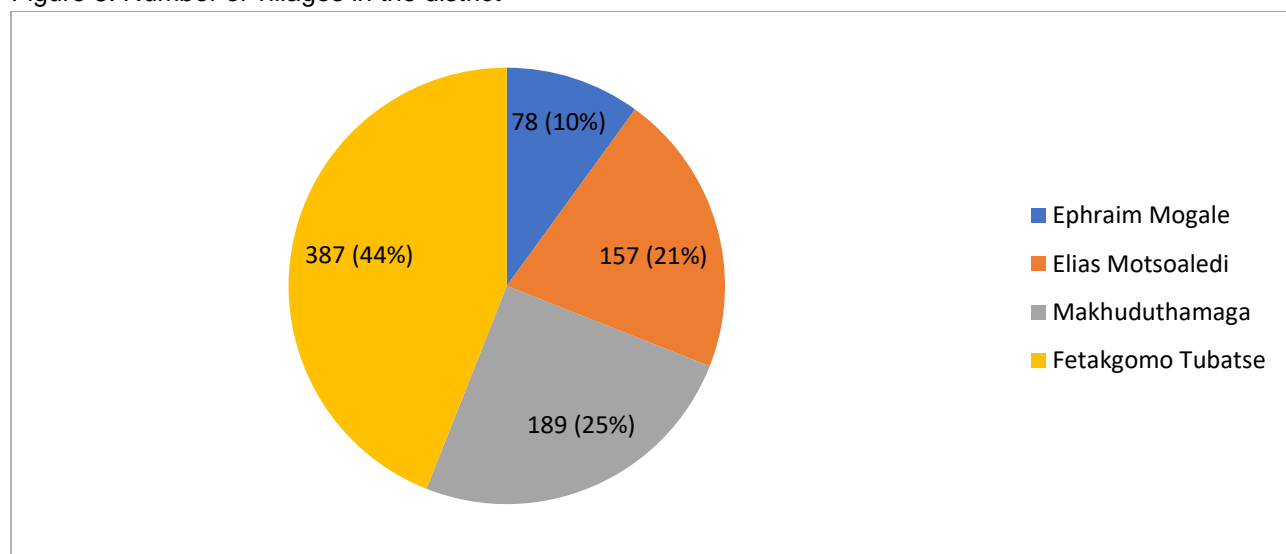
NAME OF TRADITIONAL AUTHORITY	WATER	SANITATION	ELECTRICITY	STATUS OF ROAD TO MOSHATE
	Tab/Tanker/Borehole	VIP/Flushing/Pit	Available/ Not Available	Gravel /Tarred
Kgoshigadi Selepe Traditional Council	Borehole	Pit toilets	Available	Tarred road
Bahlakwane Ba Ramaube Traditional	Tab	Pit Toilets	Available	Tarred road
Marota Bogwasha Traditional council	Borehole	Pit toilets Flushing toilets	Available	Gravel road
Roka Phasha Phokoane Traditional Council	Borehole	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Bahlakwane Ba Malekana	Borehole	Pit toilets	Available	Gravel
Babina Nare Ba Kgwete	Tab	Pit Toilets	Available	Gravel
Nareng Thokwane				
Bengwenyama Ya Maswati Traditional	Borehole	Pit Toilets	Available	Pavement

(Source FTM 2022/2023)

## 2.2. DEMOGRAPHICS IN SDM

### 2.2.1. Sekhukhune District villages

Figure 3: Number of villages in the district



LMs IDPs – 2022/2023

There are 811 (LMs IDPs -2022/2023) villages in Sekhukhune District Municipality. 44% (387) of the villages are found in Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality; 25% (189) in Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality; 21% (157) in Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality; and finally, 10% (78) are found in Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality. Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality has the highest number of villages and Ephraim Mogale being the lowest.

After the amalgamated municipalities of Fetakgomo and Tubatse, there are a total of 117 wards in the SDM. The wards in the district are as follows: Makhuduthamaga (31); Fetakgomo Tubatse (39); Elias Motsoaledi (31) and Ephraim Mogale (16).

The only issue which remains a concern regarding villages is names of these villages. There is a need to rationalise the naming and renaming of villages as they change every day. The District Geographic Names Council can investigate this matter.

## WARDS AND VILLAGES

### Elias Motsoaledi

WARDS	VILLAGES
Ward 1	Ramaphosa, Slovo, Moteti B, Oorlog Extension, Lusaka, Oorlog, Mabose
Ward 2	Moteti A, Moteti C, Moteti C1, Homeland, Liberty
Ward 3	Kgobokwane, Naganeng

WARDS	VILLAGES
Ward 4	Stompo, Ntswelomotse, Waalkraal, Waalkral ext
Ward 5	Magakadimeng, Mpheleng
Ward 6	Phucukani, Taereng, 5 Morgan
Ward 7	Masukustands, Moteti C2, 10 Morgan, Nonyanestands, Zenzele, Ngolovane, Zumapark
Ward 8	Marapong, Malaeneng, Sempupuru
Ward 9	Tambo Square, Walter Sizulu, Jabulani D1-3, Phooko, Walter Sizulu Extension
Ward 10	Lehleseng A, Lehleseng B, Mohlamme Section, Mashemong, Dithabaneng, Moshate, Lenkwaneng, Makitla, Bothubakoloi, Maswikaneng, Mohlamonyane, Phora, Podile, Ditshego
Ward 11	Elandsdoorn, Uitspanning A, Five Morgan, Bloempoot
Ward 12	Thabakhubedu, Thabantsho, Magagamatala, Buffelsvallei, Diepkloof
Ward 13	Groblersdal
Ward 14	Matlala Lehwelere, Rakediwane, Masakaneng, Vaalfontein, Aquaville
Ward 15	Masoing, Mathula, Holnek, Vlaklaagte, Keerom, Maraganeng
Ward 16	Mabhande, Masanteng, Doorum, Sovolo, Donkey Stop, Nomaletsi, Pelazwe, Madala 1, Madala 2, Newstands
Ward 17	Matsepe Sedibeng, Ga-Moloi section, Bapeding section, Matshelapata New stands
Ward 18	Mmotwaneng, Syferfontein, Talane, Magukubjane, Makgopeng, Mountain View, Mphepisheng Ext.,
Ward 19	Mathula, Enkosini, Dindela, Rondebosch, Perdeplaas, Thabaleboto, Mkhanjini, Matsitsi 'B' Extension
Ward 20	Monsterlus A, Monsterlus B, Monsterlus C, Stadium View, Matsitsi A
Ward 21	Jerusalema, Motsephiri, Kgapamadi
Ward 22	Mogaung, Legolaneng, Makena, Phomola, Maphepha village
Ward 23	Vlakfontein, Sephaku
Ward 24	Mandela, Luckau, Posa, Botshabelo, Chiloaneng
Ward 25	Ga Matsepe, Makaepa, Makorokorong, Dikgalaopeng, Mashemong
Ward 26	Ga Kopa, Matebeleng, Kampeng, Bapeding New Stand
Ward 27	Majakaneng, Botloponya, Nyakelang, Stadium View, Mountain View, Relokwane, Rwanda
Ward 28	Dipakapakeng, Mgababa, Stadium East (ZCC Section)
Ward 29	Ramogwerane, Sterkfontein
Ward 30	Zone 11, Zone 3, Makwane Nkakaboleng, Donteldoos, Tigershoek, Buffelskloof, Motlagatsane, Laersdrift, TshehlaTrust, Station, Roosenekal Town, RDP village
Ward 31	Motetema, Rakidiwane Farm, Ga-Lekwane
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>157</b> (Source - LM IDP 2022/2023)

#### FETAKGOMO MUNICIPALITY

Ward no.	Villages/ Town/Townships
01	Mapareng, GaMabelane, Makgalane, Newstands, Maepa, Makopung, Ohrigstad, Mokutung, Malaeneng, Manthibi
02	Longtill, Tukakgomo, Tukakgomo 2, Molawetsi, Ga-Ragopola, Mahlakwena, Legabeng, Phapong
03	Ga-Mmakopa, Tsereng (Pukubjane and Senthlane), Mapulaneng, Ga- Phasha, Ga-Tebeila, Maroteng Tsate, Selotsane, Molalaneng, Leswaneng, Matebeleng, Mogolwaneng, Shushumela, Maebe, Ga-Matjie, Makola, Lekgwarapeng, Rite, Sekateng.
04	Mpita, Matsianeng, Riba Cross
05	Pomping and Thabaneng, Polaseng Morewane, Madithongoane, Madiseng, Sethokgeng, London, Stasie, Mandela 1 and 2, Mandela Lepakeng, Mmandela Crossong, Sedibaneng.
06	Nazareth new stand, Ga-nkgetheng, ka-motseng, sethokgeng, potas, ditenseng, mokgethi, maraganeng, maribiri, magaseng, monare, Dipolateng.
07	Legononong, Gowe, Kampeng France, Boitumelo, Hollong, Mashemong, Tsidintshi, Mogoleng
08	Diphale, Seuwe, Magabaneng, Madikane, Modimole, Mantsakane
09	Sehunyane, Shaking, Thokwane, Malokela, Ga-Phala, Modubeng,

Ward no.	Villages/ Town/Townships
10	Tjate, Ga Mongatane, Maakgake, Tidintitsane, Dithabaneng, Makgopa Serafa, Madifahlane
11	Garagopola, Legabeng, Ga-Maroga /Phalatseng, Ga-Morethe, Digabane Morokadieta, Sekiti, Molongwane, Mooihoek
12	Ga Mamphahlane, Swale, Ga-MpuruMahubane Crosson, Sehlaku, Molongwane, Mashibishane, Balotsaneng Komana, Matimatjatji, Hwashi / Difagate
13	Praktiseer, Praktiseer, Ext 2-10 and 15; Tshwelopele Park; Ramaube
14	Moroke, sekhutlong, magobading, Motloulela, habeng, moshira, Ga-Mathule
15	Ditwebeleng, Kgwete, Shakung, Masete Morapaneng, Mashishi
16	Kgopaneng, Maakubu, Mokgotho, Malepe, Maretlwaneng, Mamogolo, Lefahla, Motshana, Moraba, Penge
17	Mahlokoane, Manyaka, Maapea, Mphethi, Selala
18	Burgersfort Town, Manoke Village, Aapiesdoring
19	Magologolo, france park, legabeng, motaganeng, Barcelona, mohlopi, maathipa, kampeng, France ext 2, maditameng, khulwane, Komane, mmiditsi, modupi, Riba Moshate, Sekoma
20	Bothashoek, Dooringkop, Pologong, Dithabaneng, Riverside, Phelindaba, Pakaneng, Sofaya, Naledi, Santeng, Mashemong, Khalanyoni, Legabeng
21	GaMakofane, Pidima, Sekopung, Motlolo Ga-Podile
22	Taung, Makotaseng, Matokomane, motodi
23	Kgotlopong, Mahlatsi, Mafarafara, Motlailane & Alverton
24	Makgopa, Makgwareng, Legogwaneng, Mogoleng, Matshiretsane, Phadishanong, Maakongwane, Masakeng, Ga-Molai, Ga-kgwedi, Lebalelo, Paeng, Majaditshakhudi
25	B1, Mashamothane, Zone 1-8, Mareseleng, Mashamthane zone 1&2, Mashifane park
26	Rutseng, Ga-Nkoana, Banareng, Ga-moraba A&B, Lepelle, Tswenyane & Phiring
27	Moshate, tsakane, kalkontein, mabelane, makakatela, Kutullo A&B, shushumela & matepe, kutullo C&D, dithamaga & madibeng
28	Ga-Rantho and Ga-Masha
29	Maphopha, Ntake, Makua, Ratau, Maepa, and Maseven
30	Park city, Vodaville, Mountain view, Township, Airport, Showground, Mapareng, Thabakhulwane, Lekgwareng, Morulaneng, Magabe park, Mountain square.
31	Dresden village, Makgemeng, Kopie & Mangabane, Steelport
32	Shubushubung, Rostock, seokodibeng Juven, Mahlabeng, Mooilyk, Tjibeng, Ledingwe, Phasha Makgalanoto, Phasha Selatole, Ga-Mampa and Seokodibeng
33	Mogabane-shole, Boselakgaka, Selepe Moshate, Selepe Mashemong, Manotoana Moshate, Checkers, Mosotse-Motjatjane, Phashaskraal, Swazi-Mnyamane, Manotoana Mashemong
34	Mokgotho, Monametse, Sefateng, Mohlahlaneng, Bogatlatladi, Mafeane, Mogolaneng, Mabulela, Maruping, Mogabane, Malomanye, Mphaaneng & Mashikwe
35	Ga-Maisela India, Pelangwe, Modimolle, Malogeng, Maesela-Mahlabaphoko, Makuswaneng, Nkoana Moshate, tau mankotsane, mahlakanaselong
36	Moshate Tau Nchabeleng, Mapoteng, Tebeila, Mabopo, Mashung Ga Nchabeleng, Ga Nkwana Mashung, Apel Madithame, Mooiplaas, Masha, Strydkraal A
37	Strydkraal B, Matlala, thobehlale, thabanaseshu, mashabela, matamong, seleteng, moshate, Magagamatala, sepakapakeng, malaeneng A&B, Mototlwaneng, matebana and radingwana
38	Ga-Seroka, Manoge, Mashilabele, Phageng, Masehleng, Ga-Mmela, Phahlamanoge
39	Mokhulwane, Magotwaneng, Marakwaneng, Ga-Matsimela/mesopotamia, Makgwareng/Ga-photo, Lerajane, Mmashaku, Makgaleng, Sekabeng/Tjebane, Sehlabaneng, sekateng/bofala, Ditlokwe,
<b>Total</b>	<b>387 Villages</b> (Source - LM IDP 2022/2023)

**MAKHUDUTHAMAGA MUNICIPALITY**

<b>WARDS</b>	<b>NAMES OF VILLAGES</b>
1	Ga Tshehla, Hlalanikahle, Kutupu, Ratanang Kutupu Extension
2	Phokoane, Mabintane, Mogudi,
3	Mokgapaneng, Makoshala, Phokoane
4	Rietfontein, Vierfontein,
5	Maserumole Park, Mohlwarekoma, Leeukraal, Matlakakatlé
6	Eenzaam Trust, Patantshwane, Eenzaam, Mare, Ga-Mmaboki, Ga-Diago
7	Thoto, Malaka, Ntoane, Manthlanyane, Manotong, Dikatone, Setebong
8	Mathousand / Hlahlane, Pelepele Park/ Maswiakae, Mochadi, Brooklyn, Leokana, Caprive/ Living waters,
9	Riverside, Caprivi / Photo, Morgenson, Magapung
10	Mogorwane, Moripane, Phushulang, Ngwanamatlang, Moloji, Moloji extension
11	Molepane, Mokwete, Vergelegen A,
12	Moretsele, Makgeru, Ratau, Makgane, Senamela, Maphopha
13	Mashengwaneng, Mogashoa Manamane, Mogashoa Ditlhakaneng, Phase Four, Mabonyane
14	Sekele, Moela, Kgopane, Maloma, Seopela, Legapane, Tshesane, Dingoane, Matiloaneng, Mabule, Tsopaneng, Stocking
15	Mohlakaneng/Tswele, Houpakranz, Mohlake, Magolego, Maila Mapitsane, Dlamini
16	Dihlabaneng, Mashegwana Legare, Kotsiri, Mashegwana Tswaledi
17	Manganeng, Ramphelane, Mashite, Mathibeng (Toona), Kgolane
18	Jane Furse RDP, Vergelegen B, Dicheoung, Moraba
19	Madibong, Mamone (Matsoke), Vergelegen Mashishing
20	Mamone (Centre, Magolaneng, Rantho, Manyeleti, Tisane
21	Mamone- Matsoke, Ga Mohlala, Ga Manyaka, Tanzania
22	Madibaneng, Tjatane, Matolokwaneng, Sebitse, Sebetsane, Lekgwareng
23	Mathibeng, Dinotsi, Maila Segolo, Mashupye, Maseleseleng, Sebitlole, Marulaneng, Madibong (Ga-Mokgwatjane)
24	Phaahla, Diphagane, Masehlaneng, Lobethal, Mamoshalele, Porome, Mamatjekele
25	Maololo, Mashabela, Mohwelere, Molebeledi, Machacha, Ga Selepe, Ga Marodi, Talane, Mahlakanaseleng,
26	Marishane, Bothaspruit, Makgophong, Mathapisa, Soetveld, Kgarethuthu, Mampane Thabeng
27	Mabopane, Manare, Mohloding, Masemola (Moshate), Mabopane, Morareleng, Maripana
28	Tswaing, Kgwaripe, Motwaneng, Vlakplaas, Lekurung, Wonderboom, Mahubitswane, Mahlakole, Maroge, GaMaphutha, Thabampshe
29	Mashwanyaneng, Pitsaneng, Maraganeng, Mphane, Mahlolwaneng, Malope, Apelcross, Molelema, Machasdorp, Makgwbe
30	Mogaladi, Legotong, Serageng, Masanteng, Kolokotela, Setlaboswane
31	Kome, Ntshong, Mmotwaneng, Masakeng, Mangwanyane, Vlakplaas, Eenkantaan, Motseleope, Makhutso, Semahlakole /Sehuswane
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>189 VILLAGES</b> (Source - LM IDP 2022/2023)

**EPHRAIM MOGALE MUNICIPALITY**

<b>WARDS</b>	<b>NAMES OF VILLAGES</b>
Ward 1	Malebitsa & Driefontein
Ward 2	Uitvlucht, Keerom, Spitspunt, Tshikanoshi & Klopper
Ward 3	Matlerekeng
Ward 4	Matlerekeng & Rathoke
Ward 5	Matlala Ramoshebo, Midway, Toitskraal & Madikoti

WARDS	NAMES OF VILLAGES
Ward 6	Ditholong, Ramoshebo, Mmamaneng, Mokgwaneng & Matatadibeng
Ward 7	Marble Hall
Ward 8	Leeuwfontein & RDP
Ward 9	Moganyaka & Manapyane
Ward 10	Mamphogo & Mmakgatle
Ward 11	Rakgwadi, Selebaneng, Goru, Moeding, Puleng, Puleng A&B, Ga Mmela, Mmatilo, Makhutso & Mohlalaotwane
Ward 12	Serithing, Vaalbank, Hlopha, Ngwalemong, Mabitsi, & Ga Makgatle
Ward 13	Disenyane, Garagopola, Mathukuthela, Mohlotsi, Manotolwaneng, Greenside, Moomane, Ga Masha, Matseding, Vleishgewag, Motseleope, Mogalatsane & Tompi Seleka
Ward 14	Regae & Dichweung
Ward 15	Morarela, Mbuzini & Elandskraal
Ward 16	Letebejane, Phetwane, Tsimanyane, Ditholong & Mafisheng
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>78 SETTLEMENTS</b> (Source - LM IDP 2022/2023)

Table 5: SDM Wards/Towns/Settlements/Farms/Mines

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF WARDS	NUMBER OF TOWNS	NUMBER OF SETTLEMENTS/ VILLAGES	NUMBER OF FARMS	NUMBER OF MINES
Elias Motsoaledi	31	02	157	13	1
Ephraim Mogale	16	01	78	1324	2
Makhuduthamaga	31	01	189	Data not available	0
Fetakgomo Tubatse	39	02	387	1031	19
<b>Sekhukhune District</b>	<b>117</b>	<b>06</b>	<b>811</b>	<b>2368 approximately</b>	<b>22</b>

(Source - LMs IDPs 2022/2023)

### 2.2.2. Sekhukhune District households

Table 6: Households in the district

MUNICIPALITY	HOUSEHOLDS 2022	HOUSEHOLDS 2011	AS PERCENTAGE
Fetakgomo Tubatse	147 167	106 050	43%
Makhuduthamaga	78 497	65 217	22%
Elias Motsoaledi	79 136	60 251	23%
Ephraim Mogale	35 953	32 284	12%
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>340 753</b>	<b>263 802</b>	<b>100%</b>

Source: Census (2011/2022)

Since 1996, the number of households in the district has been on an upward trend. According to Census 2022, there are 340 753 households in the district. The average household size has gone down to 3.9 in 2022 as compared to the previous census which was 4.1 in 2011 and was 5.3 in 1996. This means that the extended family set up is beginning to change daily with modern lifestyles. The provincial household average size is 3.6 which mean Sekhukhune household average size is still relatively high by comparison.

### Housing type main dwelling

In 2011, 234 095 households were living in formal dwellings. In 2022 325 101 (95%) households are living in formal dwellings, there are also 5215 (1.5%) households who still reside in traditional

dwellings such as mud houses. Informal dwellings are also found in the district which stands at 8 947 according to Census 2022. There is a need to formalise the informal dwellings (shacks) especially those found around main towns in the district.

Table 7: Main dwellings

MUNICIPALITIES	Formal dwellings			Traditional dwellings			Informal dwellings			Other
	1996	2011	2022	1996	2011	2022	1996	2011	2022	2022
Ephraim Mogale	13 355	30 102	34 858	4 899	773	446	1 108	1 232	538	111
Elias Motsoaledi	30 803	54 503	74 998	8 705	2 274	1468	1 995	3 141	2370	301
Makhuduthamaga	33 407	58 744	76081	13 354	2 819	807	2 337	3 398	1368	241
Fetakgomo Tubatse	36 066	90 747	139 165	19 166	4 241	2494	3 636	10 091	4670	838
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>113 632</b>	<b>234 095</b>	<b>325 101</b>	<b>46 124</b>	<b>10 107</b>	<b>5215</b>	<b>9 075</b>	<b>17 861</b>	<b>8947</b>	<b>1491</b>

Source: Census (2011), Census (2022)

### Household tenure status

The rental housing market is growing rapidly in Sekhukhune District Municipality. 28 827 households were recorded to be living in rented houses in the district. Not surprisingly, the majority of these households are found in Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality especially with migrants into the mining industry. Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi also recorded markedly improved numbers for rental stock.

Table 08: Household tenure status

MUNICIPALITIES	Owned and fully paid off		Owned but not yet fully paid off		Rented	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Ephraim Mogale	14 231	995	1 120	13 553	604	4 288
Elias Motsoaledi	24 627	1 440	3 153	33 324	1 658	5 828
Makhuduthamaga	30 979	2 191	1 441	44 302	2 257	3 035
Fetakgomo Tubatse	42 038	4 689	3 206	53 181	4 681	15 676
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>111 877</b>	<b>9 315</b>	<b>8 921</b>	<b>144 360</b>	<b>9 201</b>	<b>28 827</b>

Source: Census (2011)

### Household ownership, radio, television, computer, refrigerator, landline, cell phone, internet

Table 09: Household ownership, Radio, Television, Computer, Refrigerator, Landline, Cell phone, Internet

MUNICIPALITY	RADIO		TELEVISION		COMPUTER		REFRIGIRATOR		LANDLINE		CELLPHONE		INTERNET
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2011
Ephraim Mogale	16021	17187	11487	21888	463	2545	10943	21045	2153	785	5222	26742	5079
Elias Motsoaledi	33043	38849	24171	44108	660	6093	24677	43263	4178	1498	11944	53035	13308
Makhuduthamaga	34695	39523	18472	46765	308	4371	16082	44849	2043	1034	9180	54692	12024
Fetakgomo Tubatse	48 455	62 074	19 854	66 846	719	9464	22585	67343	3138	2060	12268	92970	20 243
<b>Sekhukhune District</b>	<b>132214</b>	<b>157631</b>	<b>73975</b>	<b>178607</b>	<b>2150</b>	<b>22473</b>	<b>74288</b>	<b>176499</b>	<b>11511</b>	<b>5377</b>	<b>38613</b>	<b>227439</b>	<b>50653</b>

Source: Census 2011

The number of households who have radio ownership have increased from 132 214 in 2001 to 157 631 in 2011. Television ownership have improved from 73 975 in 2001 to 178 607 in 2011 which is more than double. Refrigerator ownership have also improved from 74 288 in 2001 to 176 499 in 2011. Cell phone ownership have also shot up from 38 613 in 2001 to 227 439 in 2011. The trends tell a story that access to communication in the district has improved. The rise in average household incomes has also implied that there was disposable income to buy other products such as television, fridges and cell phones.

The implication is that there is a chance for the district to start offering better services to the residents and opportunities for cost recovery are abound. Unemployment has shifted from 61.6% in 1996 to 50.9% in 2011 and therefore there is real change in economic dynamics.

### 2.2.3. Population

The population of Sekhukhune District Municipality has been growing at an average of 1, 1% per annum from 1996 to 2016. According to Census 2022, the population of the district is now standing at 1, 336 805 persons. This compares to population growth numbers in 2011 at 1 076 840; 2001 at 967 185 as well as 1996 which stood at 914 492. On the whole, the population growth numbers in the district have been growing moderately and this can be ascribed to a number of factors as will be indicated when comparing data from the local municipalities in the district.

Table 10: Population Growth Rate in Sekhukhune

Municipality	POPULATION			YOUTH AND CHILDREN POPULATION		
	2022	2016	2011	2022	2016	2011
Fetakgomo Tubatse	575 960	490 381	429 471	378 381	223 214	160 413
Makhuduthamaga	340 328	283 956	274 358	218 332	107 577	88 663
Ephraim Mogale	132 468	127 168	123 648	84 911	51 829	42 964
Elias Motsoaledi	288 049	268 256	249 363	185 878	109 022	86 165
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>1 336 805</b>	<b>1 169 762</b>	<b>1 076 840</b>	<b>867 503</b>	<b>491 642</b>	<b>378 205</b>

Source: Census (2022/2011), Community Survey (2016)

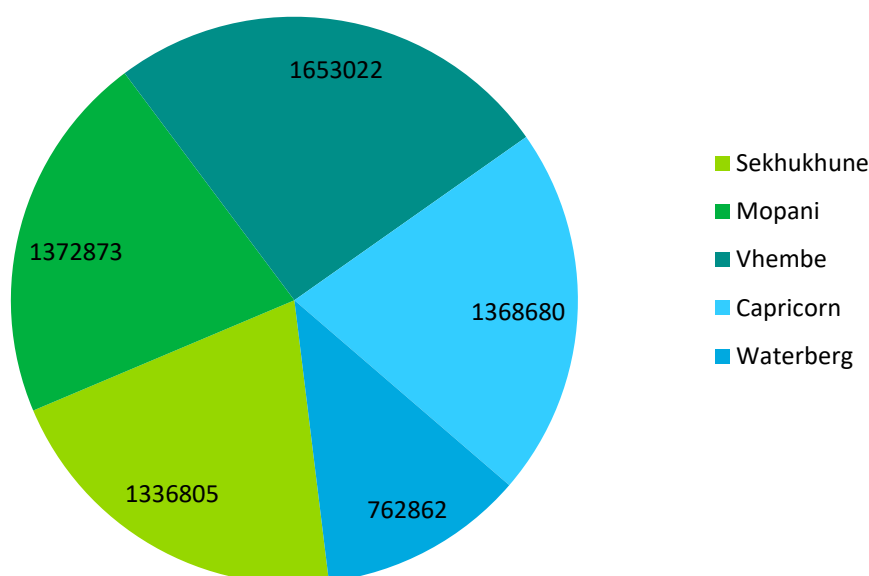
If one compares the growth rate in the district with a neighbouring District (Waterberg) there are stark realities. Waterberg have similar features in terms of drivers for economic development around mining developments. In 2001, Waterberg growth rate was at 2, 6% (604 938 persons) and 1, 2% in 2011 (679 336 persons). It will be interesting for Sekhukhune District to start comparing itself and working together with Waterberg simply because they are both in Limpopo and are exposed to almost similar economic conditions.

In 2016 the Youth population constituted 491 642 as compared to 378 205 in 2011. According to Census 2022, youth population has increased to 867 503 in Sekhukhune District. This increase in Youth Population requires that a specific focus be accelerated in terms of job creation opportunities and other youth empowerment programmes as well as education.

The following tables, however, provide population information at National, Provincial and District levels between 2008 and 2018:

#### Population of Sekhukhune at a Provincial Level

Figure 4: Total population - Sekhukhune and the rest of Limpopo, 2022



Source: 2022 Census

When compared to other regions, the Sekhukhune District Municipality accounts for a total population of 1.3 million, or 20.4% of the total population in the Limpopo Province, with the Vhembe being the most populous region in the Limpopo Province for 2022. Sekhukhune increased in importance from ranking fourth in 2008 to third in 2018 and back in the 4<sup>th</sup> spot in 2022. In terms of its share the Sekhukhune District Municipality was slightly larger in 2018 (20.4%) compared to what it was in 2008 (19.6%). When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Sekhukhune ranked highest (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 1.4% between 2008 and 2018.

The increase in the population annual growth rate is attributed to the increasing number of the mining developments (particularly in Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality) which serve as an attraction of people for job opportunities, especially the male population. This increase in the population means that more services should be planned by government/Municipalities for the expanded settlements and households. Water provision remains a critical service that the District Municipality should provide.

### Population of Local Municipalities;

Table 11: Total Population - Local Municipalities of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2008, 2013 and 2018

Municipality	2022	2016	2011	Average Annual growth (Census 2022)
Fetakgomo Tubatse	575 960	490 381	429 471	2.9%
Makhuduthamaga	340 328	283 956	274 358	2.1%
Ephraim Mogale	132 468	127 168	123 648	0.7%
Elias Motsoaledi	288 049	268 256	249 363	1.4%
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>1 336 805</b>	<b>1 169 762</b>	<b>1 076 840</b>	<b>2.1%</b>

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750 and Census 2022

The Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality increased the most, in terms of population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.9%, and this is due to the increasing mining developments within the area. The Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality had the second highest growth in terms of its population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.1%. The Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of 0.7% relative to the other within the Sekhukhune District Municipality.

The factors that have been driving growth in population numbers in the district can be summarised as follows:



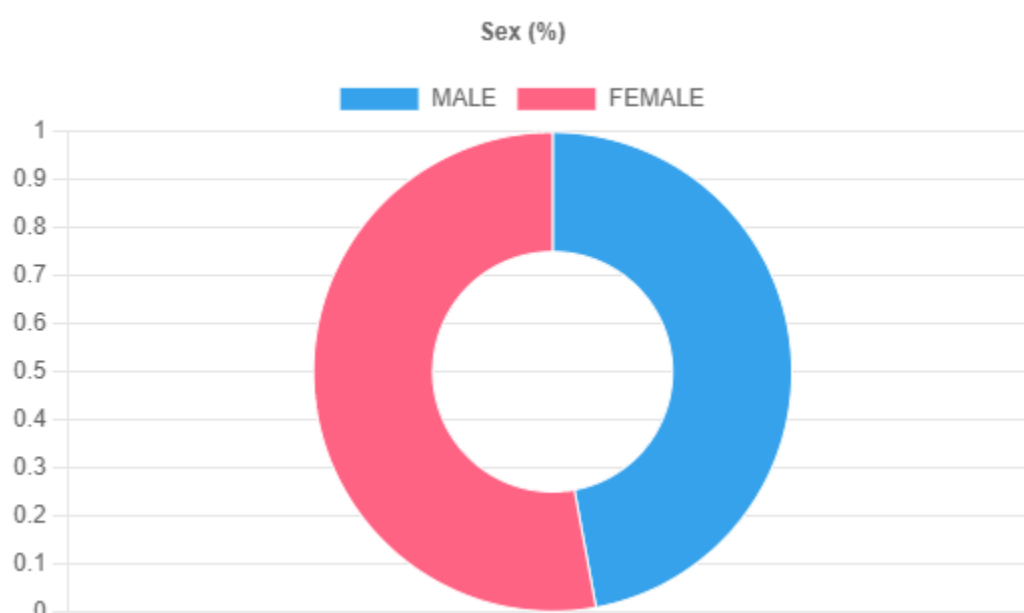
- In-migration into Tubatse local municipality for job opportunities especially in the mining sector and associated industries
- There are also migrants from other provinces who have come into the district to look for work.

### Implications of population growth trends for the district

The population growth trends suggest that there are more persons coming into Fetakgomo Tubatse and Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipalities. There is also a moderate increase in population numbers into Makhuduthamaga local municipality. Regarding allocation of resources and services, the district municipality should ensure that the three municipalities receive much attention in terms myriad of services such as water and sanitation services but also for services that are rendered by other spheres of government.

These municipalities where there are high growth numbers need to plan adequately for services provision so that there is no collapse on the current level of service in the communities. Ephraim Mogale also need to be assisted so that the growth numbers increase in the next 10 years at least to 1% per annum. There should also be deliberate efforts to accelerate job creation opportunities and other youth empowerment programmes across the district.

### Gender Profile



Census 2022: Males (47.1%) and Females (52.9%)

Table 12: Gender Profile: Males and Females

Municipality	2011		2022	
	Males	Females	Males	Females
Fetakgomo Tubatse	202 656	227 814	275 658	300 302
Makhuduthamaga	121 282	153 075	155 771	184 557
Ephraim Mogale	58 207	65 442	62 367	70 101
Elias Motsoaledi	115 503	133 860	135 762	152 287
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>497 648</b>	<b>579 191</b>	<b>629 558</b>	<b>707 247</b>
<b>Sekhukhune Total Population</b>	<b>1 076 839</b>		<b>1 336 805</b>	

Source: Census (2011), Census (2022)

Since 1996, sex ratios have not changed much. In 2011, there are 497 428 males compared to 579 191 females. The imbalance can be attributed to large numbers of males who migrate to other provinces to look for work opportunities. As a result of the rural nature of the district of Sekhukhune, there are still persons who work in other provinces such as Gauteng and only come back home monthly or bi-monthly to see their families.

This scenario also tells a picture that there might high presence of female headed households in the district. The implication for the district is that there is a need to develop programmes that target women in particular to create self-employment and educational opportunities where possible.

**Table 13: Population by Gender - Sekhukhune and the rest of Limpopo Province, 2022**

	Male	Female	Total
Sekhukhune	629 558	707 247	1 336 805
Mopani	634 524	738 349	1 372 873
Vhembe	773 840	879 182	1 653 022
Capricorn	686 501	760 602	1 447 103
Waterberg	374 965	387 897	762 862
<b>Limpopo</b>	<b>3 099 416</b>	<b>3 473 304</b>	<b>6 572 721</b>

Source: Census 2022

Sekhukhune District Municipality's male/female split in population was 90.3 males per 100 females in 2018. The Sekhukhune District Municipality has significantly more females (52.9%) than males, when compared to a typical stable population. This is most probably an area with high male out migration to look for work elsewhere. In total there were 707 247 (52.9%) females and 629 558 (47.1%) males. This is different from the Limpopo Province as a whole where the female population counted 3 473 304 million which constitutes 52.8% of the total population of 6 572 721 million.

The rural nature of the district, with less job opportunities requires that males migrate to the big cities in search for work. While the district experiences new mining developments, they are concentrated in one local municipality (Fetakgomo Tubatse), and other parts of the district still suffer poverty. The programmes with high economic impact should be planned and implemented in order to reduce the scourge of unemployment and poverty.

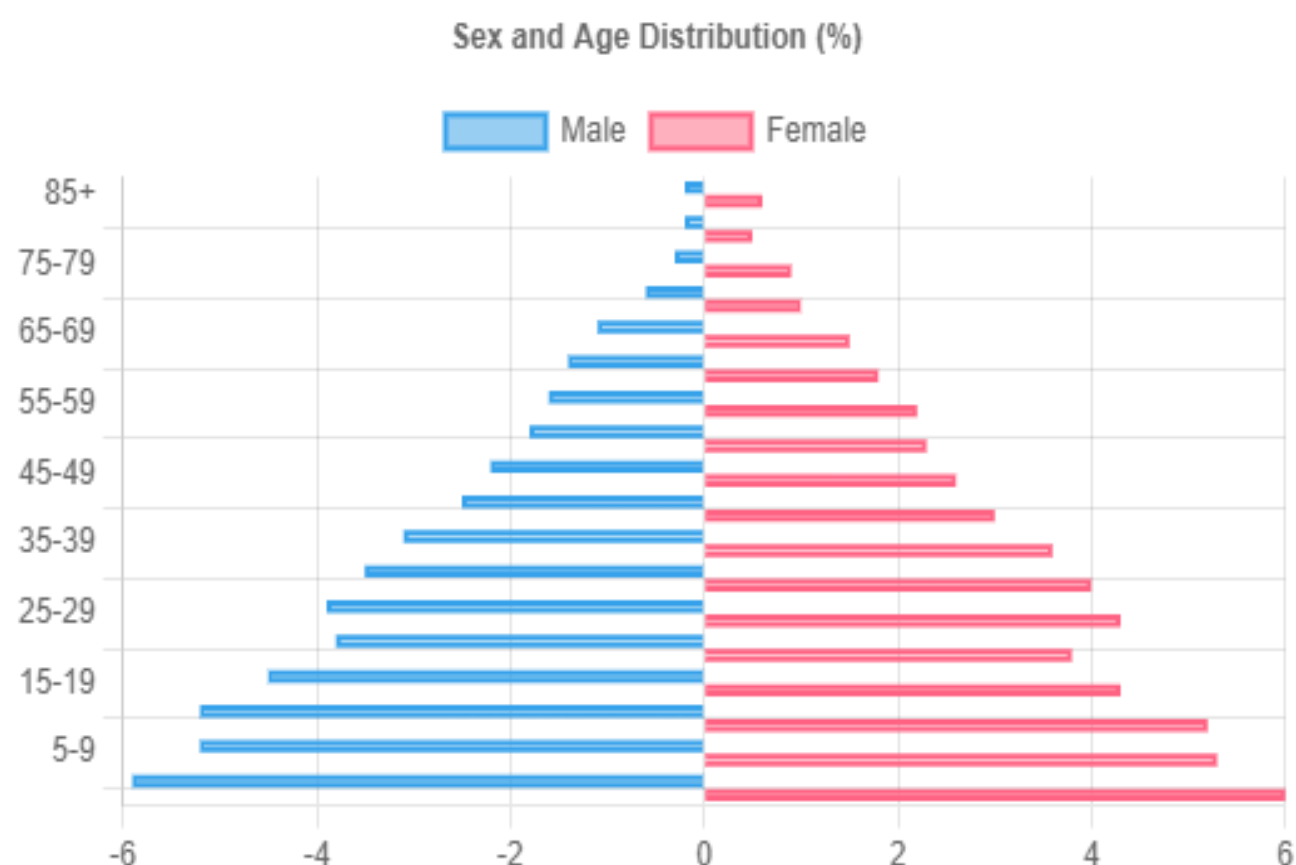
**Table 14: Population by age and gender**

Name	Male	Male (%)	Female	Female (%)	TOTAL
85+	2 050	0,2%	7 980	0,6%	10 030
80-84	3 184	0,2%	6 807	0,5%	9 991
75-79	4 307	0,3%	12 147	0,9%	16 454
70-74	8 672	0,6%	13 896	1,0%	22 558
65-69	14 347	1,1%	19 493	1,5%	33 840
60-64	19 292	1,4%	23 517	1,8%	42 809
55-59	21 882	1,6%	30 055	2,2%	51 937
50-54	24 221	1,8%	30 086	2,3%	54 307
45-49	29 296	2,2%	34 843	2,6%	64 139
40-44	33 110	2,5%	39 727	3,0%	72 837
35-39	41 667	3,1%	48 689	3,6%	90 356
30-34	46 667	3,5%	52 887	4,0%	99 554
25-29	51 767	3,9%	57 756	4,3%	109 523

Name	Male	Male (%)	Female	Female (%)	TOTAL
20-24	50 465	3,8%	50 726	3,8%	101 191
15-19	59 974	4,5%	58 091	4,3%	118 065
10-14	69 933	5,2%	69 662	5,2%	139 595
5-9	69 394	5,2%	70 901	5,3%	140 295
0-4	79 312	5,9%	79 968	6,0%	159 280
<b>TOTAL</b>					<b>1 336 805</b>

Source: Census (2022)

**Figure 5: Population Pyramid - Sekhukhune District Municipality (2022)**



Source: Census (2022)

By comparing the population pyramid of the Sekhukhune District Municipality with the national age structure, the most significant differences are:

- There is a significantly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (28.6%) in Sekhukhune, compared to the national picture (27.5%).
- Fertility in Sekhukhune is significantly higher compared to South Africa as a whole. This aspect can be attributed to high poverty and low education levels which in turn give rise to high childbearing within the district. More education on the general health issues should be provided to communities.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significantly larger (35.4%) in Sekhukhune compared to South Africa (29.0%). Demand for expenditure on schooling as percentage of total budget within Sekhukhune District Municipality will therefore be higher than that of South Africa. This requires that the district in collaboration with other stakeholders be able to provide support mechanisms towards basic education as per the norms and standards of education. This includes adequate schools to avoid overcrowding and to also provide transport in areas that fall outside the acceptable norm of 5km radius to public schools. Proper school facilities and improved equipment's to enhance sound and effective learning should also be provided e.g., Computers and Tablets. The

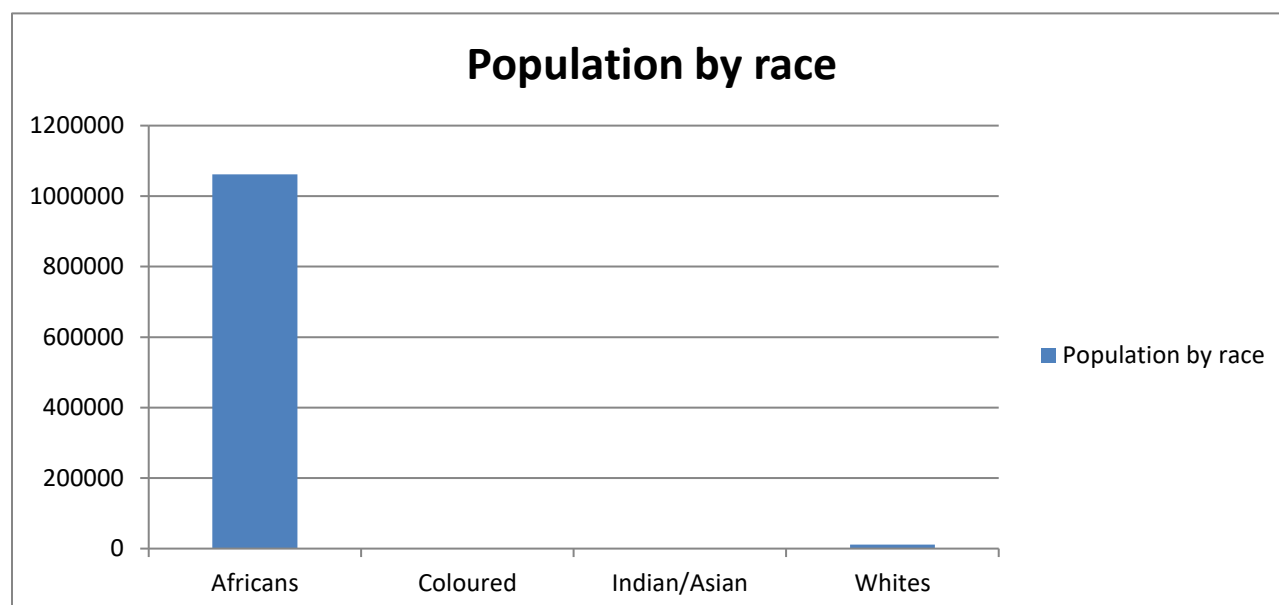
learners should have access to minimum sets of textbooks and should also have access to learner ratio 1:40 and 1:35 in Primary and secondary schools respectively.

The district does not have higher education institutions except for the former educational colleges that are mainly used for Further Education and Training (FET's). With a population of over a million people, the district must consider working with education authorities to explore possibility of establishing an arm/satellite of University of Technology or University in the district.

### Population group by race

The figure below indicates that 98.4% of the population in Sekhukhune District Municipality is made up of Africans. The remainder 1.6% comprises Whites, Indians, Coloureds and others. It is not a surprising trend because a large part of Sekhukhune District Municipality comprises villages under tribal authorities. The 1.6% of the Whites, Indians and Coloureds are confined to the main towns in the district and mining areas.

Figure 6: Population by race



Source: Census (2011)

Table 15: Population growth by race

RACE	1996	2001	2011	2022	2022 %
<b>Africans</b>	898 129	958 594	1 061 550	1 314 803	98,4%
<b>Coloured</b>	579	727	1 232	2 481	0,2%
<b>Indian/Asian</b>	377	508	1 721	4 059	0,3%
<b>Whites</b>	8 876	7 356	11 015	13 775	1,0%
<b>Other</b>	-	-	-	1 481	0,1%

Source: Census (2022)

### Home language

The dominant home language in SDM is Sepedi with 83% followed by IsiNdebele in 4.4%. According to statistics (Census 2011), the areas that are predominantly Pedi speaking are Makhuduthamaga and Fetakgomo Tubatse. In Comparing English and Afrikaans speakers, there are few English speakers in 0.22% while the Afrikaans speakers in 0.83%. Most Afrikaans speakers are in our former white only towns of Groblersdal, Marble Hall, and Burgersfort.

#### 2.2.4. Out-migration and male absenteeism in Sekhukhune

A striking characteristic of the Sekhukhune population is the high levels of male absenteeism in the district. This is the result of most males being forced to seek work outside Sekhukhune. The table

below is based on a sample survey in the area and attempts to characterize the types of migrants that leave Sekhukhune households to seek work in other parts of the country.

Table 16: Categories of migrants from Sekhukhune households

Category	Number	%
Regular migrants (return every week or month)	70,257	56,8
Seasonal migrants (for a limited period each year)	34,005	27,5
Prolonged period away (more than 6 months at a time)	19,496	15,7
<b>Total number of absentee migrants</b>	<b>123,759</b>	<b>100</b>

Economic migration clearly affects both current population figures and projected population growth in the district. As subsequent sections of this chapter will show it also fundamentally affects economic planning in Sekhukhune. Current discussions on augmenting rail transport in the area, for example, are underpinned by analyses of the number and types of migrants who travel in and out of the area. What is undisputed is that the remittances sent back to Sekhukhune households by workers elsewhere contribute significantly to livelihoods in the district. The table below, also based on a sample survey, attempts to quantify the remittances received by households in the district.

According to the NSDP, the Sekhukhune District has the 4<sup>th</sup> largest out-migration (people migrating out of the district) in the country with 6.69% of its total population opting to leave Sekhukhune (The Presidency, 2006). The volume and nature of migration is clearly a factor that development planners in the district need to consider in their medium-term planning.

## 2.3. SPATIAL RATIONALE

### 2.3.1. Policy Context

The Spatial Rationale chapter represents the Spatial Development Framework (SDF) for Sekhukhune District Municipality as contemplated in section 12 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act 16 of 2013). The General principles endorsed by the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management act is that Spatial Planning, Land Use Management and Land Development must promote and enhance the following five main development principles: Spatial Justice, Spatial Sustainability; Spatial Efficiency; Spatial Resilience and Administration. The SDF will facilitate implementation of the IDP and all government intentions to fight poverty and facilitate balanced urban and rural development throughout the district area. More specifically, it aims towards achieving the following objectives:

- Providing a spatial representation of the land development policies, strategies and objectives of the municipality in the context of local, district, provincial and national directives.
- The SDF will update all relevant socio-economic information and associated trend analysis for the municipal area to 2022 as base year (based on 2022 Census as conducted by Central Statistical Services);
- Coordinating and integrating the spatial expression of the sectoral plans of the local and/ or provincial sector departments,
- Addressing inefficient, impoverished and scattered land use patterns where the poor is generally located far away from places of socioeconomic opportunities.
- Indicate the desired and intended pattern of land use development in the urban and rural parts in the district municipality, including the delineation of areas in which development in general or development of a particular type would not be appropriate;
- Managing the conflicting demand between agriculture/ mining, urban expansion, and biodiversity conservation areas (tourism focus areas).
- Providing mechanisms for the establishment of a functional relationship between urban and rural areas – both spatially and economically;
- Identifying priority investment areas in urban and rural parts of the municipality;
- Focusing on defining the economic footprint of the district and formulating strategies on how this can be enhanced in a sustainable manner;
- Coordination and alignment of the district SDF with the municipal and provincial SDFs and any other regional plans applicable;

- Spatial targeting will serve to channel public and private investment into priority areas and align the capital investment programmes of the district municipality and different government departments into these areas in pursuit of the five SPLUMA principles;
- And link all of the above to the District Budget via the Sekhukhune Integrated Development Plan (IDP).

The Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) Spatial Development Framework was adopted by Council in 2018 and will be reviewed every 3-5 years. The SDF is aligned to the most important national, provincial and district policies and strategic plans: The National Development Plan provides for the spatial development proposals as part of the national spatial development interventions, The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for Radical Economic Transformation and Improving Service Delivery; The Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) 2018/2019 to 2020/2021 places special focus on minerals and beneficiation, agriculture and agro-processing, energy, attracting investments and growing the oceans economy.

The Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) (2009) for poverty alleviation and food insecurity by creating “vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities”; The Limpopo Development Plan (2020-2025) builds on the Limpopo Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) and the Limpopo Economic Growth and Development Plan (2009-2014) to improve the general condition of all facets of development in the province; The Limpopo Green Economy Plan, completed in 2013 for local production and consumption, efficient use of energy and water, and care of natural and man-made resources giving everyone the opportunity to participate in economic activities.

The Limpopo Spatial Development Framework (LSDF) to promotes social, economic, and environmental sustainability throughout the Province and The Sekhukhune 2025 Development Strategy for the longer-term strategic direction to be pursued by the district in order to accelerate economic growth and enhance development.

### **Spatial Development Objectives**

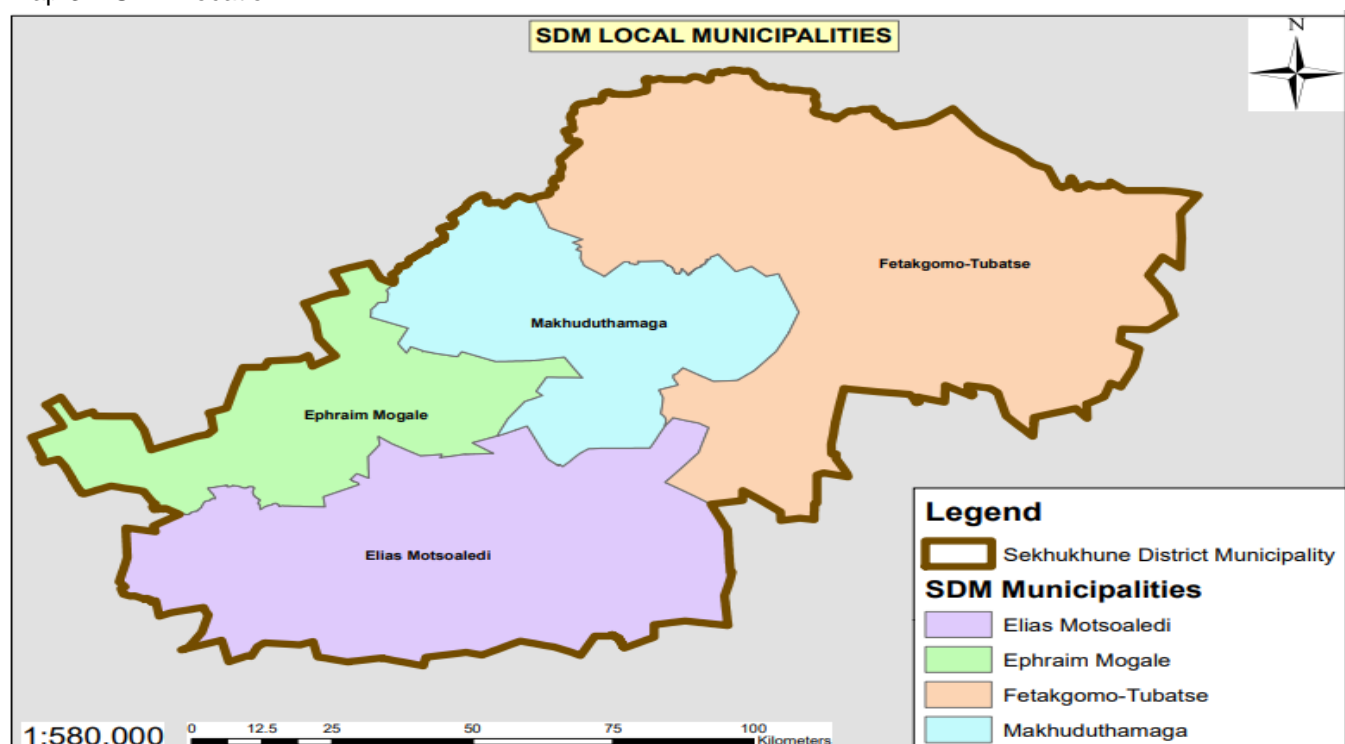
The following are the development objectives from the directives identified in national and provincial policies and sector plans and the local and regional spatial challenges and opportunities identified to be achieved as part of the Spatial Development Framework for the Sekhukhune District Municipality:

- To actively protect, manage and rehabilitate the natural environmental resources in the district in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between the competing mining, tourism and agricultural industries.
- To establish a functional system of economic and service delivery nodes in the urban and rural parts of the district.
- To optimise connectivity and access by way of a comprehensive district movement network linking all urban and rural nodes to one another, and to significant destinations in the broader region.
- To ensure equitable access to social facilities and promotion of Local Economic Development by way of targeted investment based on a spatial logic (MPCC) at all the priority nodes within the district.
- To consolidate human settlement projects in sustainable Priority Housing Development Areas at the identified urban and rural nodes.
- To direct engineering infrastructure investment aimed at social and economic development towards the priority nodes and provide at least basic services to communities experiencing excessive service backlogs (in line with Constitutional obligation).
- To utilise the natural environmental and cultural historic features in the district as anchors from which to promote ecotourism and conservation.
- To further enhance agricultural development and food production by establishing the Agri Park concept in the district.
- To facilitate up-scaling of subsistence farming to commercial farming in all the identified Rural Intervention Areas within the Sekhukhune Agri Park.
- To optimally utilise the mining potential in the district with due consideration to the continuous rehabilitation of mining land.

- To promote industrial/commercial development in the district with specific emphasis on Agri-processing at the Agri Hub (Groblersdal), and minerals beneficiation in the Special Economic Zone: SEZ (Tubatse).
- To promote formal and informal business development at all activity nodes in the district and to continuously provide opportunities for upscaling.

### 2.3.2. Geographic location of the district

Map 3 – SDM Location



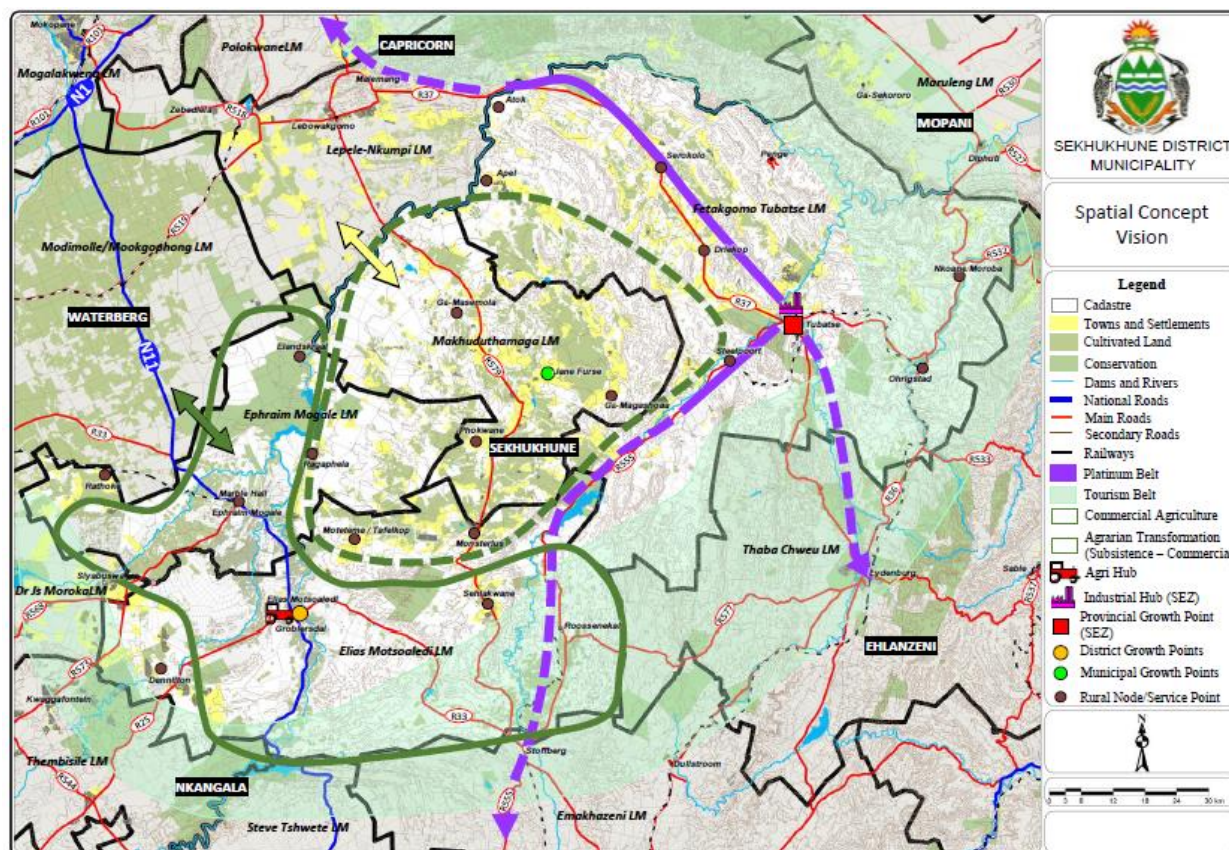
### 2.3.3. Spatial Vision

Based on the information emanating from existing legislation, policies, and plans at national, provincial and surrounding district level, the following Spatial Vision for the Sekhukhune District has been derived.

The Spatial Vision revolves around the following main principles:

- Consolidating government investment (spatial targeting) around several prioritised urban and rural nodes.
- Linking into the commercial opportunities offered by the tourism meander bordering the district to the north, east and south.
- Intensifying commercial agriculture in the southern extents of the district and focusing on agrarian transformation in the central parts.
- Promoting agrarian downstream beneficiation at the Groblersdal Agri Hub and at several local markets and processing areas at rural nodes.
- Maximising the economic benefits to be derived from the Dilokong platinum Belt and consolidate mining beneficiation industries around Burgersfort nodal point.
- Enhance inter- and intra-district transport linkages.

Figure 8: Spatial Concept Vision



### 2.3.4. Spatial Concentrations of Population

The Sekhukhune DM represents 20.2% of the Limpopo Province total Population (2016). It is evident that the total population increased by 92 922 from 1 076 840 in 2011 to 1 169 762 in 2016. According to Census 2022 the population of Sekhukhune District increased by 167 043 to 1 336 805. In term of the local municipalities, the Fetakgomo Tubatse LM has the highest population concentration (41.9% - 2022) and experienced the highest increase in population growth (147 012) from 2011 to 2022 Census and is ranked the highest in Sekhukhune District out of 4 Local Municipalities.

The SDM features approximately 811 sparsely populated and dispersed rural settlements, with Groblersdal, Marble Hall, Burgersfort, Jane Furse, Ohrigstad, Steelpoort and Driekop constituting the main/first order urban centres. The spatial location of these first order centres generally coincides with the district's two dominant economic activity areas.

Essentially, apart from having been influenced by the spatial demarcation of the former homeland areas, the spatial occurrence of settlements has been influenced by:

- The spatial location of major agricultural and mining activity areas;
- The spatial location of major rivers traversing the district; and
- The spatial location of major roads such as the R37 and R579.

### 2.3.5. Existing Land Use and Related Potential

Land use is a complex issue and is partially the result of the physical planning policies of the former apartheid government, which split the district between former homeland areas, private farms and small towns. Today, apart from issues pertaining to land ownership patterns, mining, agricultural and tourism activities bring distinctive spatial challenges of their own to the district.

Presently, land use within the SDM is dominated by commercial and subsistence farming. This is especially true in the Fetakgomo Tubatse, Makhuduthamaga, and Ephraim Mogale Local Municipal areas. The second most significant land use is the potential conservation areas, especially within the Elias Motsoaledi and Ephraim Mogale Municipal areas. These potential conservation areas may eventually encompass roughly one third of Elias Motsoaledi and Ephraim Mogale. The different land use patterns in the Sekhukhune District are captured in Table 18 below.



Table 17: Land Use Patterns in the SDM

Land use type	Area in sq km	% of total
Agricultural: Commercial	1,135	7,7
Agricultural: Subsistence	2,683	18,1
Potential conservation	3,484	23,5
Active conservation	463	3,1
Active mining	37	0,2
Other	7,030	47,4
<b>Total</b>	<b>14,832</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: Department of Land Affairs (2006). Land Cover Map cited in M Maila (2006)

Disconcertingly, land is becoming an increasingly scarce commodity within the district. This is equally true of rural, semi-rural / semi-urban areas. This is a particularly significant situation, given the growing importance of agriculture, mining and tourism (all potentially conflicting land uses) to the district's economy. Furthermore, the District's developing economic nodes appear to be attracting an increasing number of people, thereby creating higher population concentrations in certain parts of the district. This is especially true of the Jane Furse – Phokwane development node in Makhuduthamaga, and the Bothashoek-Praktiseer and Atok Area (Fetakgomo Tubatse).

### Human Settlements

Integrated Sustainable human settlement in Sekhukhune District is vital to bridge the imbalances between rural and urban settlements. The fast growing of the mining sector within the district, particularly in Fetakgomo Tubatse, requires that integrated human settlements be established to address the housing demand. Currently there are processes for integrated human settlements by both CoGHSTA and Municipalities within the district, for example, in Apel, Burgersfort and Jane Furse. In Elias Motsoaledi, the Township Establishment is currently being undertaken in Groblersdal and Roosenekaal. However, the Municipality is unable to complete these processes due to financial constraints. Provision of infrastructure and bulk services is core to the success of all the proposed developments within these Municipalities. The inability to conclude the township establishment processes in these Municipalities is due to financial constraints and lack of basic infrastructure services. The delays in concluding these township establishments have led to land invasions and poor investment attractions.

In Elias Motsoaledi, there are 3 land tenure upgrading projects that were abandoned by the then Mpumalanga Land Affairs Dept. All these projects were abandoned at general plan levels. The areas were to be upgraded into 1 350, 1 500 and 1 450 units. To date all relevant information regarding these projects have been referred to CoGHSTA for finalisation. Within the same Municipality, Masakaneng and Stadium View (Hlogotlou) informal settlements were subjected to the formalisation process through the assistance of Coghsta. These projects were not concluded due to financial setbacks, which led to the development of further informal settlements of Congo, Rangers, Morula View and Ditakaneng. All these informal settlements led to illegal water connections to the Municipal grid. The entire situation has resulted in the severe burden to the existing sewer plant and water pressure to the formal part of the township.

### Challenges for Human Settlements

- ✚ Increased number of informal settlements.
- ✚ Inadequate land for development
- ✚ Land claims processes take long
- ✚ Security of tenure
- ✚ Dispersed rural settlements making bulk infrastructure provision expensive
- ✚ Sprawled development
- ✚ Incomplete RDP houses

### Interventions for Human Settlements

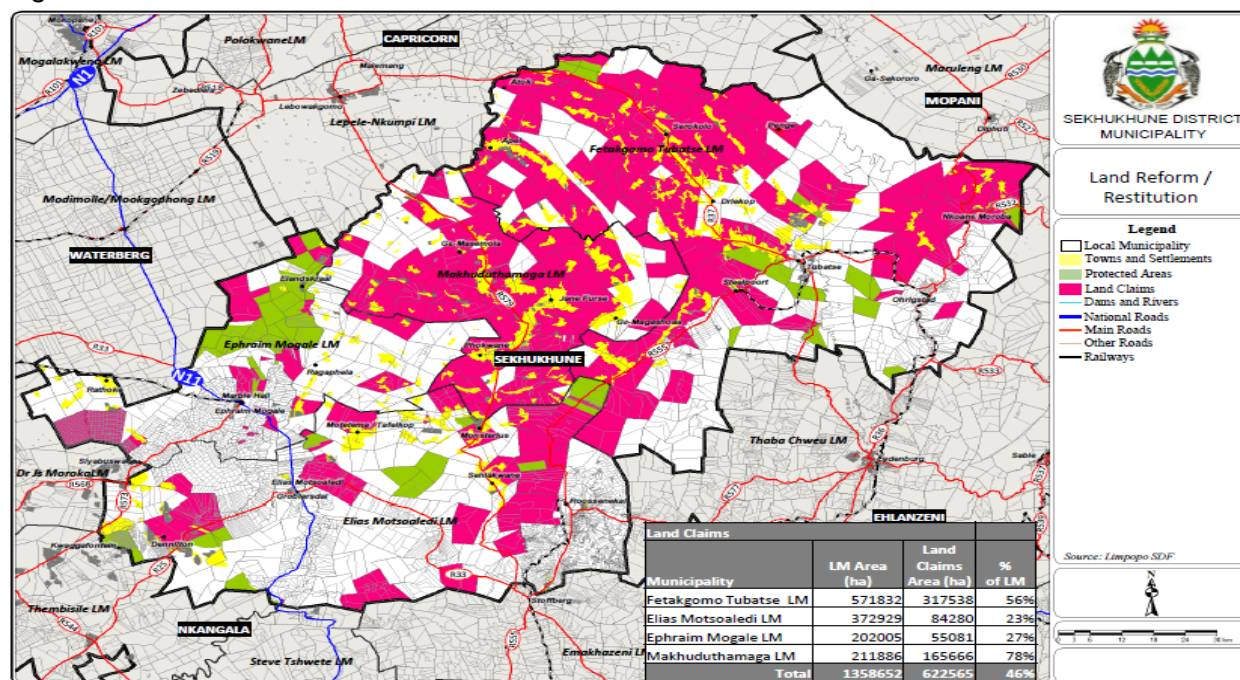
- ✚ Formalization of settlements
- ✚ Township establishment

- ✚ Land acquisition
- ✚ Development of precinct plans
- ✚ Upgrading of land tenure
- ✚ Human settlement Master Plan
- ✚ Demarcation of sites
- ✚ Enforcement of SPLUM by law
- ✚ Development and implementation of wall-to-wall land use scheme.
- ✚ Implementation of SDFs
- ✚ Development and implementation Water Master Plan
- ✚ Awareness to traditional authorities on land use management

### 2.3.6. Land Claims

**Figure 9** depicts the land areas within the SDM which are subject to land reform/ restitution claims as contained in the Limpopo SDF (2016). A total of 622 565 ha of land is subject to land claims. This represents about 46% of the total area of the SDM. About 56% of the Fetakgomo Tubatse area is subject to claims (317 538 ha), followed by Makhuduthamaga (165 666 ha or 78%); 8428 ha (23%) of Elias Motsoaledi and 55 081 ha (27%) of Ephraim Mogale. Notably, there is a strong correlation between the land claimed and the land under traditional authority. The exception in this regard is the far-eastern extents of Elias Motsoaledi Municipality where there is a large cluster of claims between routes R579 and R555 on land which does not fall under traditional authority.

Figure 9: Land Claims



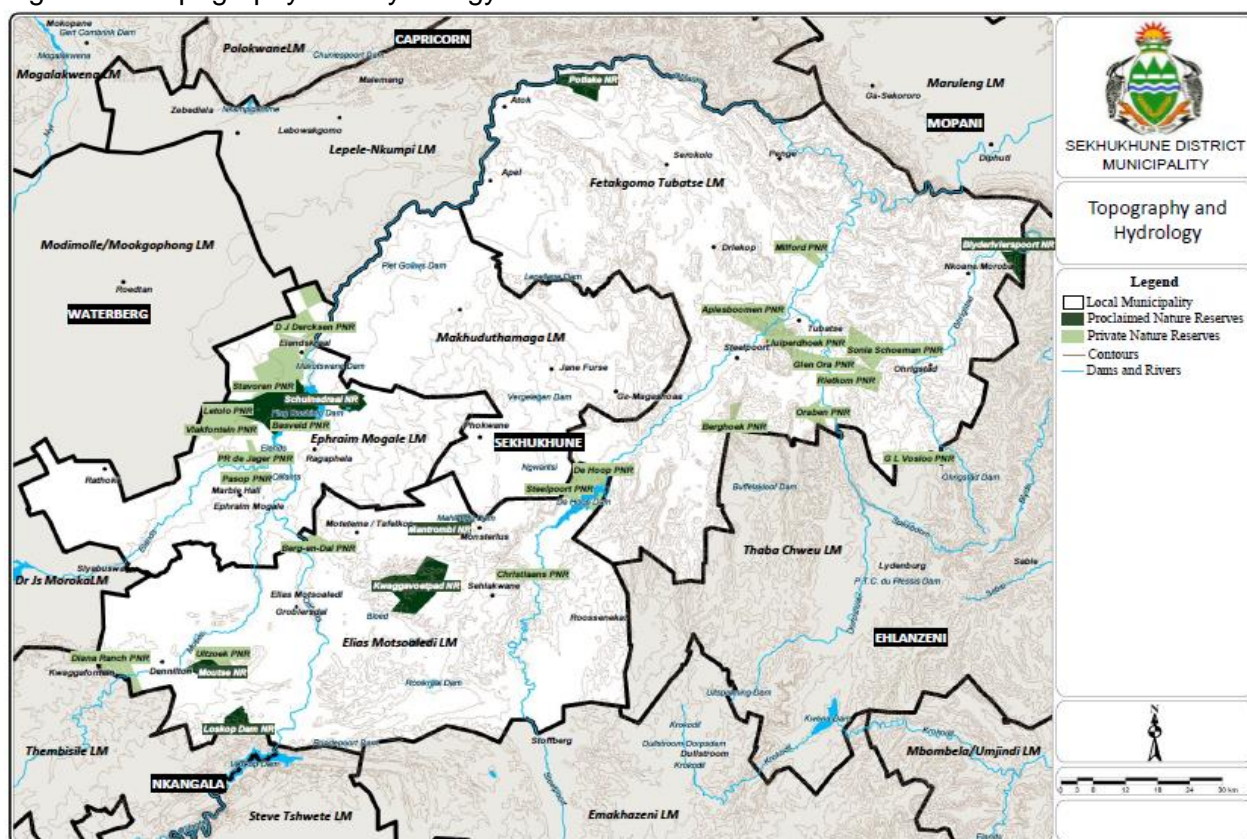
### 2.3.7. Environmental Features

As illustrated on **Figure 10** the general topography of Sekhukhune District is that of strongly undulating plains which link into the Springbok Flats of the Waterberg District towards the west. The Klein Drakensberg Mountain range covers the entire north-eastern and eastern extents of the Municipality. This mountain range is a very strong structuring element in the Sekhukhune District as it limits east-west movement in the central and northern parts of the district – especially between areas like Burgersfort, Jane Furse, Groblersdal, and Marble Hall. The Olifants, Moses and Elands Rivers enter the district from the southwest from where these converge and run in a north-north-eastern direction along the District Municipality border as the Olifants River.

The Tubatse (Steelpoort) and Ngwaritsi (Spekboom) Rivers traverse the eastern and central extents of the district before linking into the Olifants River further to the north. Prominent dams fed by these rivers include the Rooikraal, Piet Gouws and Flag Boshielo in the Olifants System, and the new De Hoop Dam in the Thubatse River. These rivers also constitute the lifeline of the Loskop and Ohrigstad Irrigation Schemes. The district is characterised by the hot and fairly dry (semi-arid) climate of the Olifants River Valley. The average temperature shows moderate fluctuation, with average summer temperatures of 23°C, and an average winter temperature of 13.5°C. The southern and south-eastern

extents of the district receive the most rain (approximately 600-800mm annually). These areas also represent the bulk of commercial agricultural areas of the district. In terms of annual rainfall, the northern and central-northern extents of the area are not well suited to intensive commercial agriculture. There is considerable variability in terms of rainfall intensity, duration, and frequency. This exacerbates the water shortage problem, which is a key developmental constraint in the district. Furthermore, increasingly sparse rainfall, coupled with a high evaporation rate, is currently limiting subsistence farming in the district – a situation that has contributed to food insecurity.

Figure 10: Topography and Hydrology



Sekhukhune's vegetation is mostly tropical bush and savannah. More specifically, the dominant vegetation type (which has also been classified as sensitive) is Sourish Mixed Bushveld which contains the false grassveld types. As shown on Figure 18 a number of nature reserves, conservation areas and private nature reserves are found throughout the district. These include the Schuinsdraai Nature Reserve at Flag Boshielo Dam, the Potlake Nature Reserve to the north, the Kwaggavoetpad Nature Reserve centrally located in Elias Motsoaledi, the Moutse and Loskop Dam Nature Reserves to the south, and Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve at the north-eastern end of the district. There are also several small clusters of Private Nature Reserves along the Olifants River in the eastern parts of Ephraim Mogale, a cluster in the south-western extents of Elias Motsoaledi (forming part of a larger cluster located in the Nkangala District (Loskop Dam to Rust de Winter), around the new De Hoop Dam along the Steelpoort/ Tubatse River in the east and another cluster around Burgersfort/ Tubatse.

**Figure 11** depicts the extent of Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBA's) located in the SDM. It shows that almost the entire eastern escarpment is classified as CBA1 as well as the areas around the Schuinsdraai, Kwaggavoetpad and Loskop Dam Nature Reserves in the southern parts of the district. The northern and north-eastern extents of the district (in the vicinity of the R37 and Steelpoort), are characterised by a relatively high occurrence of Red Data plant species and Key Vegetation Communities. Problematically, these are the same areas that feature a high occurrence of human settlements and mining activity. It is also important to note the CBA2 corridors which link the CBA1 areas to one another which are aimed at facilitating migration of fauna and flora along the Critical Biodiversity Network.

Figure 11: Critical Biodiversity Areas

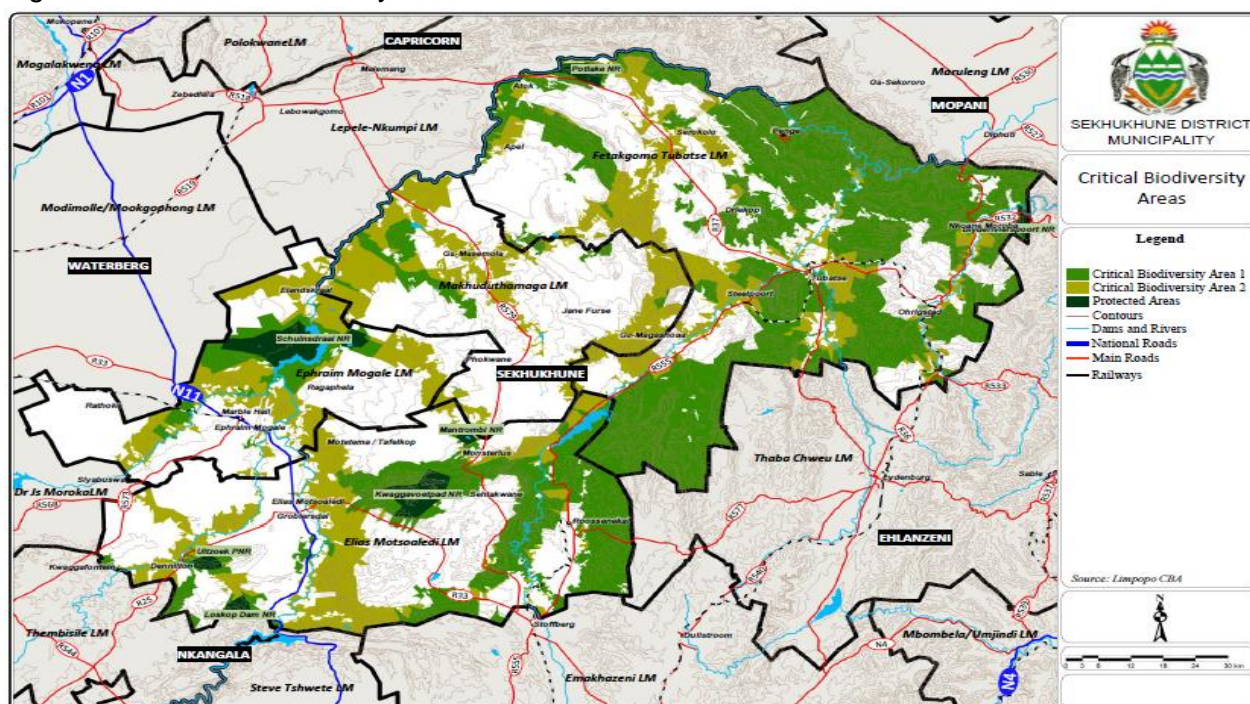
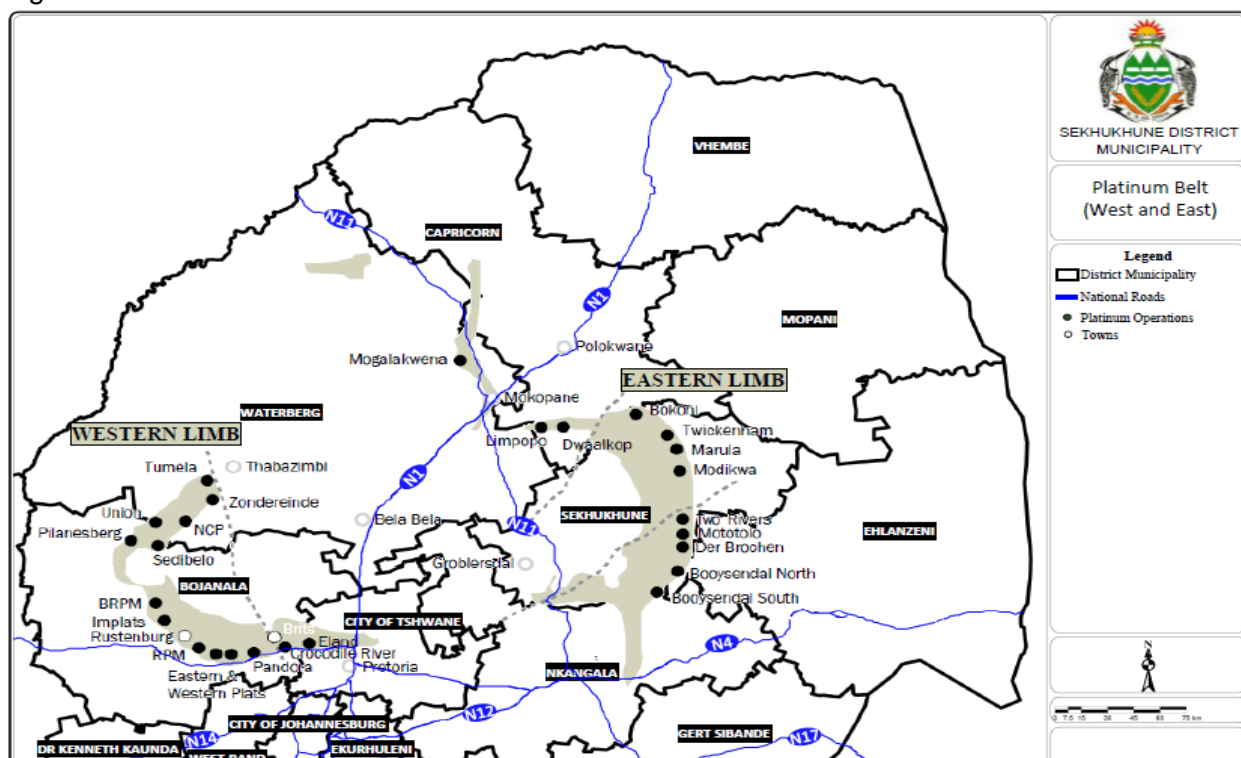


Figure 12: Platinum Belt



The Sekhukhune District holds one of the largest reserves of Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) in the world. The renowned Bushveld Complex which features the eastern limb of the Merensky Reef is found towards the north and north-eastern parts of the district. (The western limb is found in the area between Rustenburg and Northam in Northwest Province) (See **Figure 13**). Furthermore, the Springbok Flats coal fields are found along the western boundary of the SDM. Figure 18 indicates that the majority part of land (soil) located along the eastern escarpment of the district is deemed to be highly sensitive. Although the District features a substantial availability of land comprising of good arable soils (see **Figure 12**), the hot and dry climate limits the extent of agricultural production within the district to areas adjoining the Olifants, Elands, Ngwaritsi, and Tubatse Rivers. Consequently, land adjoining these rivers should be reserved for agricultural purposes.

### 2.3.8. Spatial Structure and Settlement pattern

The spatial structure and settlement pattern of the SDM is a complex one and is essentially the result of the spatial policies promoted by the former apartheid dispensation. As a result, the space economy of SDM is characterised by a geographical split between former homeland areas (Lebowa and

KwaNdebele), and areas which fell outside of the former homelands. Furthermore, the potential burgeoning of mining, agricultural, and tourism activities within the district presents spatial challenges of its own, amidst the inherited spatial challenges. Figure 21 depicts the settlement spatial structure and movement network of the Sekhukhune District. Evident from this is the fact that the majority of the population reside in the central and north-western parts of the district due to the topographical constraints (eastern escarpment) located along the eastern border of the district, and the commercial agriculture characterising the southern parts of the district.

There are approximately 811 sparsely populated and dispersed settlements, accommodating approximately 95% of the district's total population. The majority of these "dispersed settlements" are found within the central (Ephraim Mogale and Makhuduthamaga), northern and North-Eastern extents (Fetakgomo Tubatse) of the district. Only 5% of the district's population reside within urban areas, with the main urban centres being Groblersdal, Marble Hall, Burgersfort, Jane Furse, Ohrigstad, and Steelpoort. Apart from having been influenced by the spatial demarcation of the former homeland areas, the spatial occurrence of settlements has been influenced by: The spatial location of major agricultural and mining activity areas. The spatial location of major rivers traversing the district; and the spatial location of major roads such as the R37 and R579.

### Road and Rail Transport

Economic Activity is predominantly concentrated in two functional areas: The south-western economic activity area which is primarily centred on intensive commercial agricultural and the north-eastern economic activity area which is primarily centred on platinum mining activities associated with the Merensky Reef along the Dilokong Corridor (R37). With less than ten percent of the total capacity of the Reef having been unlocked to date, the platinum economy is still within its infant stage. Tourism activities forming part of both economic activity areas are primarily related to nature tourism, game farming and hunting

Regional accessibility is predominantly facilitated via three roads traversing the district in a Northwest – Southeast alignment (N11, R579 and R37). Route R555 traverses the district from south to north along the eastern border of the district. Together these roads constitute the main freight and logistics corridors connecting the district's economic activity areas to prominent provincial nodes and economic activity areas e.g., Mookgopong, Mokopane, Polokwane, Lydenburg and Middelburg.

The presence of the Klein Drakensberg and Strydpoortberge hinders connectivity to the north into Maruleng and parts of Lepelle-Nkumpi. More specifically, the N11 Freeway connects the towns of Marble Hall and Groblersdal with Mookgopong and the N1 Freeway towards the north-west. From here it leads to Mokopane and eventually links to Botswana via the Groblersbrug border post. To the south, the N11 connects Marble Hall and Groblersdal with Middelburg, which is situated along the N4 Maputo Corridor. The R579 traverses the central extents of the district and serves to connect Jane Furse and Monsterlus with Lebowakgomo towards the north, and Sehlakwane and Stoffberg towards the south.

The R37 traverses the northern extents of the district and serves to connect Burgersfort with Lebowakgomo towards the north-west and Lydenburg towards the south-east. The R555 traverses the eastern extents of the district and serves to connect Steelpoort and Burgersfort with Stoffberg towards the south-east. Routes R37 and R555 form the Dilokong Platinum Corridor. Route R36 serves to connect the Burgersfort/ Steelpoort area with Ohrigstad, and down to Lydenburg to the South and to Hoedspruit in Maruleng to the north. Although most of the urban centres and smaller towns are located along these roads, a vast number of settlements within the western, central, and eastern extents of the district are only accessible via secondary gravel roads (see **Figure 12**).

The general condition of roads within the SDM is poor. Severe damage such as potholes, cracks, and rutting can be observed along most roads. Road damage is particularly prevalent along the following sections of road:

- The R33 between Groblersdal and Stoffberg;
- The R555 between Stoffberg and Roosenekal;
- The R579 between Nebo and Stoffberg; and
- The R25 between Dennilton and Groblersdal.

To ensure continued economic growth the district has prioritised the stretches of road forming part of the proposed Dilokong and Phalaborwa Corridors which fall within the boundaries of the district. These include:

- The Dilokong Corridor
- Polokwane to Burgersfort (P33/1 and P33/2), via Mafefe.
- Flag Boshielo Dam through Lebowakgomo and Mafefe, linking the District with the Phalaborwa and Kruger National Park areas.
- Chueniespoort via Boyne to Mankweng.
- The Phalaborwa Corridor
- Ohrigstad via the JG Strijdom Tunnel (R36).
- Burgersfort to Oaks (P181/1).

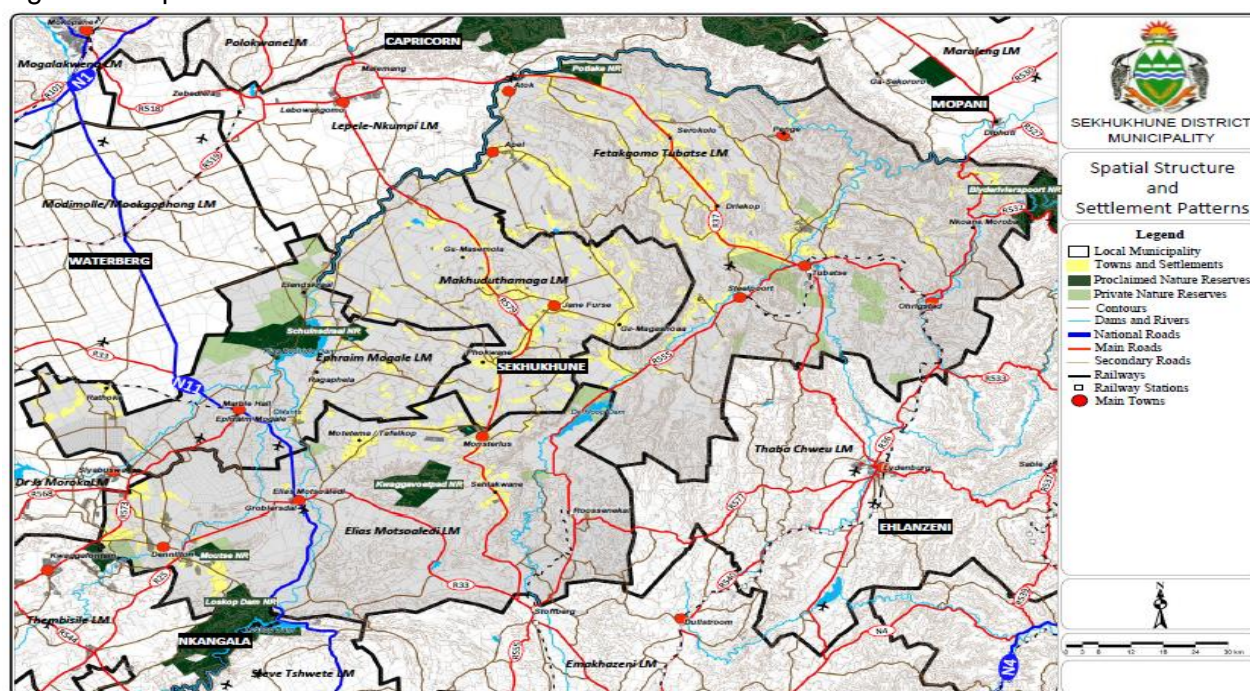
Other roads important to the economic well-being of the district include the N11 and R579. Apart from its road network, the SDM is served by three railway lines which were originally developed to support the mining activity within the district.

The three railway lines include:

- The railway line entering the SDM from the south, next to Stoffberg, from where it continues northwards for approximately 30km, eventually ending at an abandoned mine near Mapochs Mine.
- The railway line entering the SDM from the west, near Nutfield, from where it continues eastwards to Marble Hall.
- The railway line entering the SDM from the east, passing near Ohrigstad and Burgersfort, and terminating near Steelpoort (near the Tubatse mine).

Unfortunately, these railway lines have not yet been extended or re-routed to serve later/ new mining operations (such as those along the Merensky Reef and Chrome layers). Consequently, shortcomings in the railway network are resulting in extreme pressure being placed on the road network. Favourably, a new commuter rail link between Pretoria and the south-west of the SDM (along the Moloto Road) is being considered. This rail link will improve accessibility to Gauteng, which represent an employment area for many residing within the south-western extents of the district. In addition to the road and railway network of the district, two registered airfields are also found within the district. The airfields are located in Marble Hall and Groblersdal respectively, and primarily support crop spraying activities.

Figure 13: Spatial structure and Settlement Patterns



Public Transport

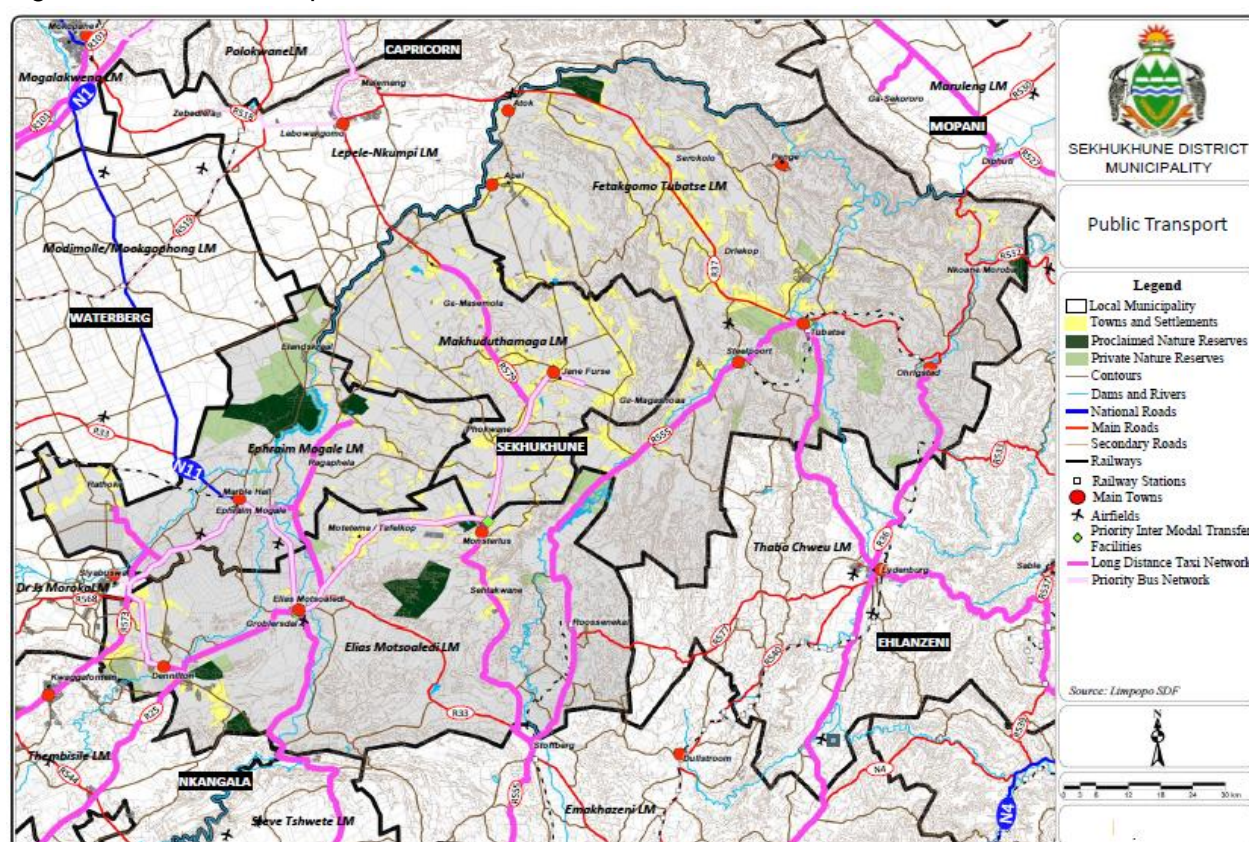
With low levels of car ownership and no commuter rail services, commuters depend heavily on road-based public transport services. According to the Limpopo Integrated Transport Plan (ITP), the most common forms of public passenger transport are buses and taxis. Unfortunately, transport routes in the district are often limited by deteriorating road conditions, as well as local stormwater problems caused by rainy seasons. Public transport services (Long Distance Taxi) are being provided along the following important public transport corridors as depicted on **Figure 14**:

- R579 in the central parts of Makhuduthamaga towards Jane Furse;
- R573 (Moloto Road) past Siyabuswa;
- R25 between Dennilton and Groblersdal;
- N11 between Middelburg and Groblersdal;
- R579 from Stoffberg to Jane Furse;
- R555 from Stoffberg to Burgersfort;
- R37 from Burgersfort to Lydenburg;
- R36 from N4 (Belfast to Lydenburg and up to Ohrigstad).

The Priority Bus Network links the following areas to one another: Dennilton, Siyabuswa, Marble Hall, Groblersdal, Moletema, Tafelkop, Monsterlus, Phokwane and Jane Furse. Priority locations for inter-modal public transport facilities are at the following strategic nodal points:

- Burgersfort;
- Marble Hall;
- Groblersdal;
- Ohrigstad;
- Driekop;
- River Cross; and
- Steelpoort

Figure 14: Public Transport



### Spatial distribution of economic activities

The section below briefly discusses several existing business and industrial establishments within the SDM. Several business activities are entrenched in the following areas in the district:

- Groblersdal Town comprises a range of retail, hardware /commercial and several industrial activities, and as a result, it is the main business node of Elias Motsoaledi LM;

- Marble Hall Town holds a prominent L-shaped business node in Ephraim Mogale municipality, Industrial activities are clustered to the south.
- The neighbourhood node of Moteti/Dennilton Business Area comprises of mainly a shopping centre and few surrounding local businesses,
- The neighbourhood business area in Phokwane/Phatametsane in Makhuduthamaga LM which largely serves the surrounding settlements/villages.
- The Jane Furse business area which holds the bulk to economic activity within the Makhuduthamaga LM.
- Burgersfort Town contains the largest cluster of business establishments within Fetakgomo-Tubatse LM. It is shaped by a substantial number and size of shopping centres. Business varies from retail, hardware/ commercial and industrial activity. The town is the fastest growing CBD's in the district due to the influence of mining activity.
- Mining activity in the Steelpoort area located south of Burgersfort town.
- Another mining activity (Bokoni Platinum Mine) located near the settlement areas of Atok / Sefateng.

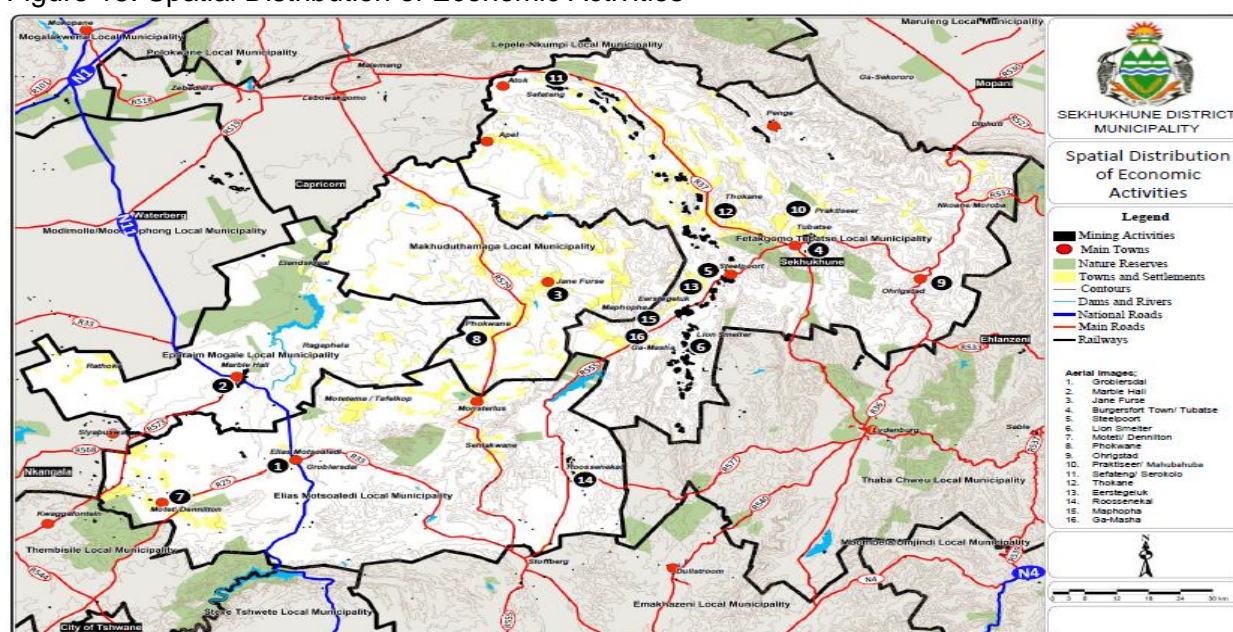
### Spatial distribution of Mining activities

Mining activity has been practised in Sekhukhune for well over a century, and typically involved (as is still the case today) the extraction of andalusite, asbestos, chromite, and platinum deposits from the Merensky Reef, which forms part of the mineral rich Bushveld Complex.

The district features the world's largest deposit of the platinum group metals (PGMs). What is striking about previous bouts of mining activity in the area is how changing commodity prices affected the opening, closing and, occasionally, reopening of mines. When prices rose, new exploration and development took place in the Sekhukhune mining sector. Conversely, when prices fell, mines in the area closed. This is an important characteristic to take into consideration when providing infrastructure and housing to support expanding mining operations. Currently, 17 operational mines are found within the district, with most of the activity situated along the Dilokong Corridor (R37 and R555). The Dilokong corridor stretches across the Fetakgomo Tubatse LM respectively (see **Figure 15**). Some isolated activities are found within then Greater Marble Hall LM. Major mining companies operating in the SDM include Anglo Platinum, Xstrata, BHP Billiton, Implats, ASA Metals and Marula Platinum. Despite the involvement of major mining companies, mining in the district has not yet reached production limits.

New mining activities within the Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi LMs could potentially create land use conflicts between mining and agricultural activities. Furthermore, new mining activities may result in increasing pressure being placed on environmentally sensitive areas found within the north-eastern and south-eastern extents of the district.

Figure 15: Spatial Distribution of Economic Activities





## **Spatial distribution of Agricultural activities**

Agriculture in the SDM is a mixture of both commercial and subsistence farming. Agriculture is the second largest source of employment, accounting for over 16% of all jobs held by nodal residents. A variety of products are produced in the area, including citrus fruit, table grapes, vegetables, maize, wheat, potatoes (both Irish and sweet), cotton and livestock. Furthermore, it has substantial availability of arable land, but the hot and dry climate limits the extent of agricultural production in the area. The scarcity of water in the area makes costly irrigation infrastructure a necessity for high quality, high output farming. However, a variety of products are produced in the district, including citrus fruit, table grapes, vegetables, maize, potatoes (both Irish and sweet) wheat, cotton, sorghum, millets, and livestock. It is estimated that about 70% of farmers in Sekhukhune are subsistence farmers, with many of them lacking the skills required to reach their potential.

The main challenge as indicated above is for the district to raise the potential of emerging farmers in line with that of the established commercial farmers. This will require support for training and access to inputs and markets, as well as addressing water shortages. Unfortunately, coupled with the above-mentioned constraints, the sector is further depressed by global economic recession, environmental constraints, and lack of access to sustainable market both local and internationally. These challenges call for farmers to be better organised and resourced with capital, technology, new skills, and creative leadership for them to succeed. They need to produce high value commodities which provide the greatest opportune for increasing household income. Further, they need integrated institutional support to facilitate their capacity building and participation in the competitive markets. And finally, they need to have good business acumen and astute to capitalize on opportunities presented in the local and global markets because most of FBO still operating at as non-legal business entities with cooperative still at the primary stage.

The future success of agricultural industry in this district will depend on a clear vision and specific plans to realize that vision. Essentially, commercial agriculture in the SDM is concentrated in two main areas: The south-western part of the district (near Groblersdal and Marble Hall), which is served by the Loskop Irrigation Scheme; and the Eastern section of the district (near Burgersfort and Ohrigstad), which is served by the Ohrigstad Irrigation Scheme).

### **The Loskop Scheme**

The towns of Groblersdal and Marble Hall are found within the Loskop Valley. The commercial agricultural schemes in this valley are serviced by the Loskop Dam. In addition to the Loskop scheme, there are 5 smaller schemes within the Loskop agricultural area, namely: The Moosrivier Scheme; The Hereford Scheme; The Olifants River Scheme; The Elands River Scheme; and The Selons River Scheme. Collectively, these contribute significantly to commercial agriculture in the area.

### **The Ohrigstad scheme**

The Ohrigstad Scheme is supplied with irrigation water from the Ohrigstad Dam along the Ohrigstad River. The total area currently being irrigated is estimated at roughly 4,500 hectares.

Alternatively described, the agricultural activities within the SDM tend to be concentrated along the following routes: The entire length of the N11 throughout the District; The R573 from Marble Hall to the District boundary; the R25 between Dennilton and Groblersdal; The minor road linking the R573 and R25 between Groblersdal and Marble Hall; The R36 as far north as Branddraai; and the southern section of the R37 as far north as Burgersfort.

## **Three potential tourism routes have been identified for Sekhukhune:**

### **The Mafulo a Matala Route**

Mafulo a Matala, literally translated into “animals grazing on green land”, is a route that will take tourists to all the natural beauty and wildlife of Sekhukhune Land. This route is for persons drawn to the African wilderness. The route combines the scenic beauty and wildlife of the area with adventure activities and attractions along the route. The Flag Boshielo dam together with the Schuinsdraai Nature Reserve is one of the most significant attractions on the Mafulo a Matala route. Schuinsdraai

Nature Reserve is a popular water-recreation destination for families, where anglers can relax at the shores of the Flag Boshielo Dam.

#### The Marota Route

The Sekhukhune District is named after King Sekhukhune who was the King of the Marota tribe (today commonly known as the Bapedi) in Sekhukhune Land during the 18th century. Sekhukhune Land has a rich cultural heritage that offers a gateway to authentic Africa. Every corner of Sekhukhune has an amazing tale to tell of this land of myths and legends, a true treasure indeed with world renowned Heritage sites like Tjate, Lenao la Modimo, Ledingwe Cultural Village and many more. The Marota Route affords the tourists the opportunity to experience the cultural heritage of the fascinating Sekhukhune area, reflecting the diverse cultures of the present day inhabitants of the area, intrepid adventures from a colourful past and ancient civilisation of which only archaeological evidence remains.

#### The Platinum Stream Route

The Platinum Stream is a tourist route designed to unite Sekhukhune's natural beauty and rich heritage with the mining activities in the area for those mining and history enthusiasts. The Platinum Stream flows along the R555 and the R37, giving tourists the opportunity to visit some of Sekhukhune's significant mines.

#### Strategic Development Areas

An analysis of the district's socio-economic profile reveals that consolidation of the district's dispersed settlement structure will be required, if the general living standards of its population are to be improved, and environmental degradation reduced. Essentially, consolidation of the urban structure will help to:

- Create higher densities, thereby stimulating purchasing power and economic development, which eventually leads to higher levels of asset ownership and living standards.
- Create the critical densities needed for the sustainable provision of communication and services infrastructure. As is, the dispersed settlement structure prevents the majority of Sekhukhune households from taking advantage of ever-expanding internet and e-telecommunication.
- Facilities, especially for business and educational purposes. Facilitate targeted infrastructure spending, thereby avoiding unnecessary and costly duplication of infrastructure such as telecommunication towers and radio and television masts.

The establishment of the system of urban and rural nodes holds the following advantages:

- Contributes towards urban-rural restructuring and environmental protection by means of promoting nodal development. Nodal development is conducive to targeted infrastructure spending, local economic development, and corridor development.
- Helps to direct infrastructure development and service delivery to most cost efficient and sustainable areas;
- Reduces the levels of inequality in living standards and access to basic services between rural and urban areas – ensures that all communities (even in rural areas) have access to at least the minimum levels of services as enshrined in the Constitution;
- Provides government with a platform from which to develop sustainable energy centres, telecentres, and information technology infrastructure within rural areas;
- Provides a platform for entrepreneurship and small business development (LED) by creating the required “critical mass” at these points;

- Informs investment decisions pertaining to prioritising upgrading of road infrastructure which connect nodes to one another, provision of multi-modal transport facilities, and determining optimal public transport routes;
- Multi-functional (one stop) nodal development reduces travelling costs between place of residence and social facilities and economic opportunities for the rural poor.

The function of a node is to provide local residents, as well as those from surrounding rural areas, with goods and services in an efficient manner – preferably as a ‘one stop’ point. Such an approach will – in time – strengthen agglomeration economies, support effective public transport, and create a network of strong nodes that discourage unsustainable low density sprawl.

**Table 18** below lists the priority nodal points identified from the Spatial Development Frameworks of local municipalities in Sekhukhune District Municipality as well as the Limpopo SDF. There are two Provincial Growth Points (Burgersfort/Tubatse and Groblersdal); three District Growth Points and eight Municipal Growth Points. A total of 21 Rural Nodal/ Service Points has also been identified bringing the total number of nodes in the SDM to 34.

Table 18: SDM Growth Points

Nodal Hierarchy	Local Municipalities			
	Fetakgomo-Tubatse	Ephraim Mogale	Makhuduthamaga	Elias Motsoaledi
Provincial Growth Point	Burgersfort			Groblersdal
District growth point	Steelpoort	Marble Hall	Jane Furse (Institutional)	
Municipal Growth Point	Ohrigstad Driekop		Apel Cross Glen Cowie	Roosenekal
	Mecklenburg Atok Apel			
Rural Nodes	Praktiseer Kgautswane Mampuru and Extension Malokela A and B Mphanama	Elandskraal Letebejane Regaphela/ Ga-Rakwadi Moganyaka /Leeuwfontein Zamekomst/ Rathoke Letebejane/ Ditholong		Elandsdoring/ Dennilton Motetema Hlogotlou Sehlakwane

The proposed Sekhukhune nodal system should form the basis for national, provincial, and municipal infrastructure investment prioritisation (budgets, programming etc.). This includes the provision of engineering infrastructure, social/ community infrastructure, and economic infrastructure. Its strategic intent is to maximise the benefits to be derived from spending the limited public budget, while creating a just and efficient spatial structure from which both urban and rural communities in the SDM will benefit.

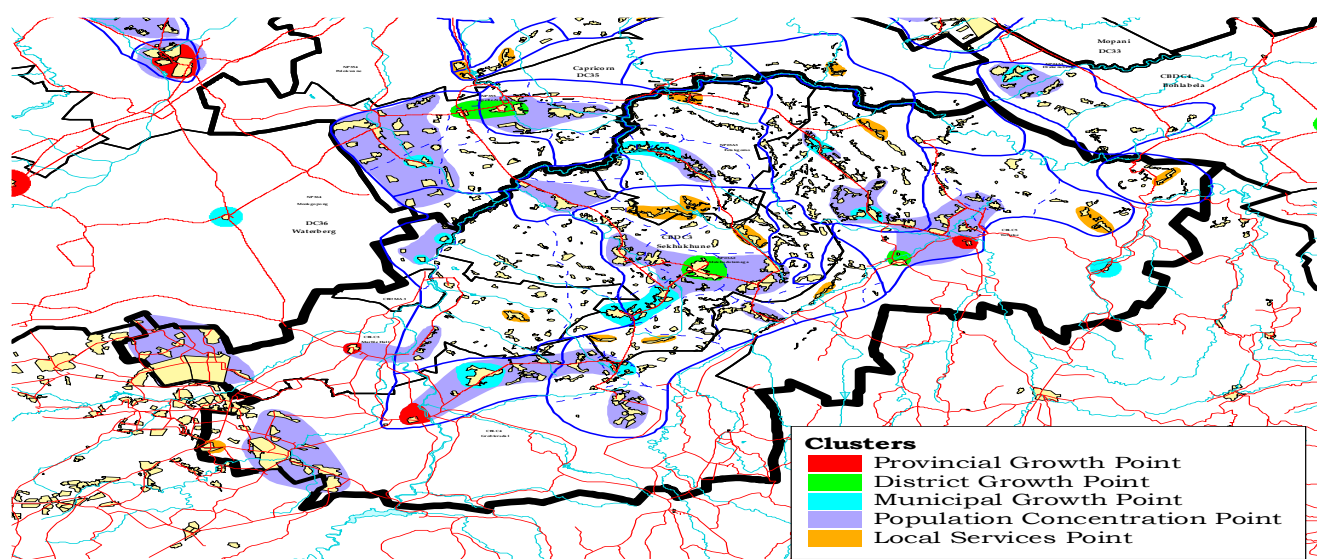
Most of these nodal points lie along main routes where they are easily accessible. An established system of nodes will not only make service delivery more efficient, but also make the area more legible and help to direct private sector investment throughout the SDM. Notably, with Jane Furse’s new status as the institutional headquarters of the SDM, all district government functions should be consolidated within Jane Furse Node.

It is furthermore recommended that a legally binding Precinct Plan/ Local Plan be compiled for each of the nodal points in the Sekhukhune District in line with the provisions of Section 21(l) (i) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA). In cases where nodes fall within the area of jurisdiction of Traditional Leaders, such plans should be compiled in consultation with the Traditional Leaders.

These Precinct/Local Plans should comprise detailed land use proposals at erf level to guide the future development of the area – and specifically the areas where future public investment in the form of community facilities, housing and engineering infrastructure should be consolidated. Each Precinct Plan should also comprise an Implementation Programme highlighting the sequence/priority of actions/ investments to be initiated in the area. Precinct Plans should also demarcate the areas where Government should acquire the land for future public investment (e.g., community facilities) in order to prevent these areas from being occupied/ allocated to people.

**Figure 16** shows the spatial distribution of these nodes in the district and also how communities within a 10-kilometre radius around the respective nodes will be served. Approximately 80% of the district population reside within 10 kilometres from an activity node/ growth point.

Figure 16 – Growth points in the Sekhukhune District *Source: Procurement Dynamics (undated)*



*Source: Synthesis report of the research*

### 2.3.9. Land Use

Land use within the Sekhukhune District is dominated by subsistence farming. This is especially true in the Fetakgomo Tubatse, Makhuduthamaga, and Ephraim Mogale municipal areas.

The second significant land use is the potential conservation areas, especially within the Elias Motsoaledi and Ephraim Mogale municipal areas. These potential conservation areas may eventually encompass roughly one third of Elias Motsoaledi and Ephraim Mogale. The different land use patterns in the Sekhukhune District are captured in the table below:

Table 19: Land use patterns in Sekhukhune

Land use types	Area in sq km	% of total
Agricultural: Commercial	1,135	7,7
Agricultural: Subsistence	2,683	18,1
Potential conservation	3,484	23,5
Active conservation	463	3,1
Active mining	37	0,2
Other	7,030	47,4
<b>Total</b>	<b>14,832</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: Department of Land Affairs (2006). Land Cover Map. Cited in M Maila (2006), *op cit*

It is also becoming apparent that land is growing increasingly scarce in the district, within the urban, rural and semi-rural areas equally. District Municipality and Local Municipalities have recognized this as a challenge and have prioritized the issue. This is particularly significant given the growing importance of agriculture, mining, and tourism – all potentially conflicting land uses – to the Sekhukhune economy.

Land Use Management

An even more complex issue within the district, however, is that of land use management. The land issue is a potentially difficult one in Sekhukhune, with the district being governed by a dual system. Under the traditional system, land allocation (and, therefore, land use) is the prerogative of tribal council – and this system dominates in much of the district's formal towns and, to some extent, the adjacent townships.

The traditional system is rendered more complex by the fact that each of the approximately 74 traditional authorities in the area has its own unique land use management system. In general, however, each traditional authority allocates land to a subject for either residential use or subsistence farming. In addition, subjects would also have unlimited access to communal grazing system, however, is becoming increasingly difficult to maintain, given the growing demand for land (for a range of purposes). Furthermore, the traditional land use management system is unwritten and therefore often subject to interpretation.

In recent years, the boundaries between different traditional authority areas have become increasingly blurred. This has led, in part, to the lodging of competing land claims in many parts of the district<sup>1</sup>. It has also led to the growth of informal settlement activities within some traditional authority areas. This is especially prevalent around district growth points like Burgersfort, Atok and Jane Furse and is undoubtedly a reflection of economic migration towards potential centres of economic activity.

In summary, the land issue is potentially a source of tension in the Sekhukhune area. There is a latent tension between the traditional (tribal council) and modern (legalized) land use management systems. There is also several competing land claims in the area, which have not been resolved by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) as yet. Finally, as the Sekhukhune economy boom, there is likely to be competing land demands by the different economic sectors. If the district population grows in response to this foreseen economic boom, domestic demand for (commercial and residential) land will become a competitor in this arena as well.

### **2.3.10. Challenges**

Land ownership patterns are one of the biggest development challenges facing Sekhukhune. Without a resolution of this issue, most socio-economic activities in the district will continue to be thwarted.

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 41 of 2003 are in operation and have been implemented in Limpopo Province. The Act has enabled the MEC for CoGHSTA to appoint representatives of the Traditional Leaders in the jurisdiction of the SDM to participate in the SDM Council as provided for in the Systems Act.

Land administration remains a bone of contention between the traditional and the municipal administrations. Land administration needs to be addressed as a matter of urgency for effective development of rural communities. All Local Municipalities remain with a challenge of land allocation for either residential or development priorities because traditional leadership are also having the responsibilities of allocating sites to residents. Traditional leaders allocate sites without engaging the Municipalities to ascertain issues relating to township establishment and land development requirements. Fetakgomo Local Municipality is the case in point that needs to be addressed to effect development. The District, Local municipalities and traditional leadership should devise a system of engagement and cooperation to address some of these challenges.

More specifically, the key land use challenges are:

- Uncertainty about the status of land ownership especially with reference to state and tribal land prohibits future development and investments.
- Unresolved and competing land claims in the area threaten to destabilize future development.
- Increasing number of Informal settlements and housing backlog as mining and agriculture activities intensify
- Competing land uses (i.e. mining and agriculture, Commercial, etc.) may cause spatial, social, environmental and economic constraints in future.
- Lack of environmental management
- Communal land use management
- Sprawled development

- Some nodal points like Jane Furse have not yet been planned and proclaimed thereby limiting the growth potential of the node.
- Water scarcity is a huge development challenge and represents a constraint to both economic and social activity within the district. Water requirements for development (especially agriculture, mining and rural areas) are placing severe stress on the available water supply.

## 2.4. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Economic growth is one of the main indicators of a progressing and developing district. The main sectors of Sekhukhune District that contribute to the growth of the economy in the district are Agriculture, Mining and Community Services. Mining is the biggest contributor in the economy of the district.

The attainment of the vision set out in this IDP will ultimately be determined by the state of the Sekhukhune economy. This section turns its lens on the principal characteristics of the Sekhukhune economy more specifically. It identifies the municipal economy's main features and describes its dominant sectors. It is therefore an important profile that plays a substantial role in defining the development strategies, projects and overarching socio-economic plans of the Sekhukhune Municipality.

The Sekhukhune economy is a curious mixture of overwhelmingly negative features (such as the highest unemployment rate in Limpopo) and positive opportunities (like the enormous mining potential within the area). Plotting an economic development path therefore requires a careful assessment of the current economic reality in the district. Integrating sustainable development into the current municipal plans to ensure the triple bottom line (people, planet, profit) is accomplished. The below sections outline the main economic indicators of the district.

### 2.4.1. Unemployment

The table below depicts unemployment trends in Sekhukhune District from 2012 to 2022 and also in comparison to Limpopo Province and the National total.

**Table 20: Unemployment (official definition) - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [Number percentage]**

	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total	Sekhukhune as % of province	Sekhukhune as % of national
2012	65,100	261,000	4,700,000	25.0%	1.38%
2013	64,300	253,000	4,850,000	25.4%	1.32%
2014	66,300	257,000	5,060,000	25.7%	1.31%
2015	73,800	284,000	5,300,000	26.0%	1.39%
2016	86,100	321,000	5,670,000	26.8%	1.52%
2017	92,200	339,000	5,990,000	27.2%	1.54%
2018	94,200	340,000	6,100,000	27.7%	1.55%
2019	105,000	373,000	6,450,000	28.0%	1.62%
2020	123,000	433,000	6,710,000	28.5%	1.84%
2021	155,000	539,000	7,470,000	28.7%	2.07%
2022	176,000	613,000	7,810,000	28.6%	2.25%
<b>Average Annual growth</b>					
2012-2022	<b>10.44%</b>	<b>8.93%</b>	<b>5.21%</b>		

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022, there were a total number of 176 000 people unemployed in Sekhukhune, which is an increase of 110 000 from 65 100 in 2012. The total number of unemployed people within Sekhukhune constitutes 28.63% of the total number of unemployed people in Limpopo Province. The Sekhukhune District Municipality experienced an average annual increase of 10.44% in the number of unemployed people, which is worse than that of the Limpopo Province which had an average annual increase in unemployment of 8.93%.

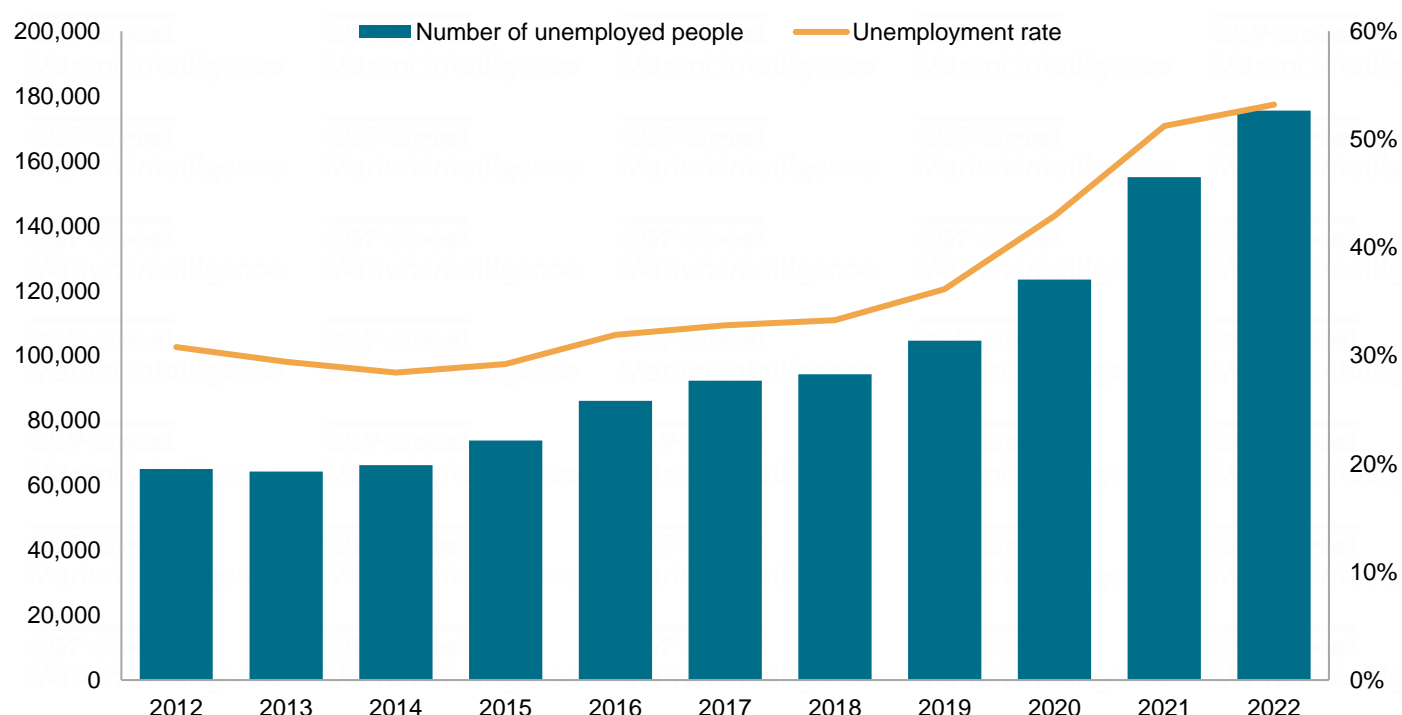
**Table 21: Unemployment rate (official definition) - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [Percentage]**

	SEKHUKHUNE	LIMPOPO	NATIONAL TOTAL
2012	30.8%	20.8%	25.1%
2013	29.4%	19.3%	25.2%
2014	28.4%	18.2%	25.2%
2015	29.2%	18.6%	25.5%
2016	31.9%	19.7%	26.4%
2017	32.8%	20.0%	27.2%
2018	33.3%	19.7%	27.4%
2019	36.2%	21.3%	28.4%
2020	42.9%	25.3%	30.3%
2021	51.2%	30.8%	33.6%
2022	53.2%	32.6%	33.8%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022, the unemployment rate in Sekhukhune District Municipality (based on the official definition of unemployment) was 53.21%, which is an increase of 22.4 percentage points. The unemployment rate in Sekhukhune District Municipality is higher than that of Limpopo. The unemployment rate for South Africa was 33.77% in 2022, which is a increase of -8.63 percentage points from 25.15% in 2012.

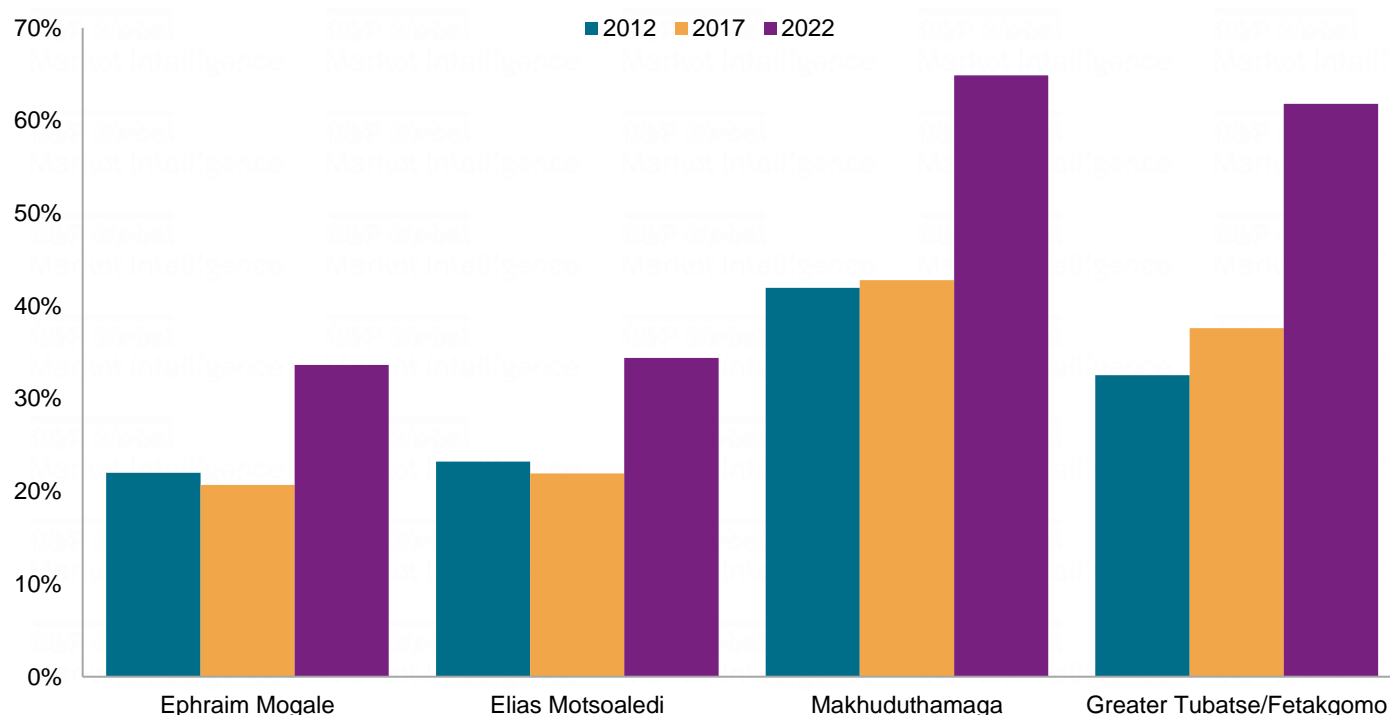
**Unemployment and unemployment rate (official definition) - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012-2022 [number percentage]**



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

When comparing unemployment rates among regions within Sekhukhune District Municipality, Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 64.9%, which has increased from 42.0% in 2012. It can be seen that the Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 33.6% in 2022, which increased from 22.0% in 2012.

### Unemployment rate - local municipalities and the rest of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012, 2017 and 2022 [percentage]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

### Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP), an important indicator of economic performance, is used to compare economies and economic states. Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R) represents the value of all goods and services produced within a region, over a period of one year, plus taxes and minus subsidies.

**Table 23: Gross domestic product (GDP) - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [R billions, Current prices]**

	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total	Sekhukhune as % of province	Sekhukhune as % of national
2012	29.2	260.2	3,566.4	11.2%	0.82%
2013	31.3	281.7	3,868.6	11.1%	0.81%
2014	32.8	299.0	4,133.9	11.0%	0.79%
2015	34.4	319.8	4,420.8	10.8%	0.78%
2016	37.4	351.9	4,759.6	10.6%	0.79%
2017	39.3	371.3	5,078.2	10.6%	0.77%
2018	41.5	396.2	5,363.2	10.5%	0.77%
2019	43.7	418.7	5,625.2	10.4%	0.78%
2020	44.3	425.3	5,568.0	10.4%	0.79%
2021	51.8	488.7	6,208.8	10.6%	0.83%
2022	53.9	511.4	6,628.6	10.5%	0.81%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

With a GDP of R 53.9 billion in 2022 (up from R 29.2 billion in 2012), the Sekhukhune District Municipality contributed 10.54% to the Limpopo Province GDP of R 511 billion in 2022 increasing in the share of the Limpopo from 11.23% in 2012. The Sekhukhune District Municipality contributes 0.81% to the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 6.63 trillion in 2022 (as measured in nominal or current prices). It's contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2012 when it contributed 0.82% to South Africa, but it is lower than the peak of 0.83% in 2021.

**Table 24: Gross domestic product (GDP) - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [Annual percentage change, Constant 2010 prices]**

	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total
2012	1.6%	1.4%	2.4%

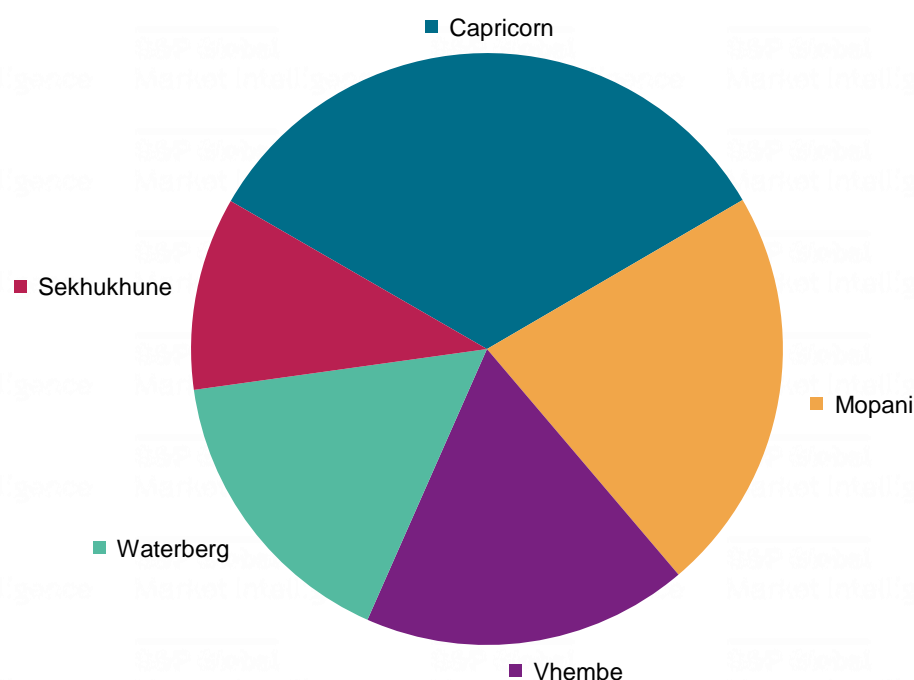


	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total
2013	2.0%	2.5%	2.5%
2014	0.3%	1.1%	1.4%
2015	2.5%	1.9%	1.3%
2016	-1.8%	0.1%	0.7%
2017	1.1%	1.4%	1.2%
2018	-0.5%	1.1%	1.6%
2019	-1.0%	0.1%	0.3%
2020	-10.2%	-6.5%	-6.0%
2021	4.7%	5.2%	4.7%
2022	-0.5%	1.0%	1.9%
<b>Average Annual growth 2012-2022</b>	<b>-0.42%</b>	<b>0.75%</b>	<b>0.92%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022, the Sekhukhune District Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of -0.51% which is a significantly lower GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 0.97%, and is lower than that of South Africa, where the 2022 GDP growth rate was 1.91%. Similar to the short-term growth rate of 2022, the longer-term average growth rate for Sekhukhune (-0.42%) is also significantly lower than that of South Africa (0.92%). The economic growth in Sekhukhune peaked in 2021 at 4.72%.

#### Gross domestic product (GDP) - Sekhukhune District Municipality and the rest of Limpopo, 2022 [Percentage]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The Sekhukhune District Municipality had a total GDP of R 53.9 billion and in terms of total contribution towards Limpopo Province the Sekhukhune District Municipality ranked lowest relative to all the regional economies to total Limpopo Province GDP. This ranking in terms of size compared to other regions of Sekhukhune remained the same since 2012. In terms of its share, it was in 2022 (10.5%) slightly smaller compared to what it was in 2012 (11.2%). For the period 2012 to 2022, the average annual growth rate of -0.4% of Sekhukhune was the fourth relative to its peers in terms of growth in constant 2010 prices.

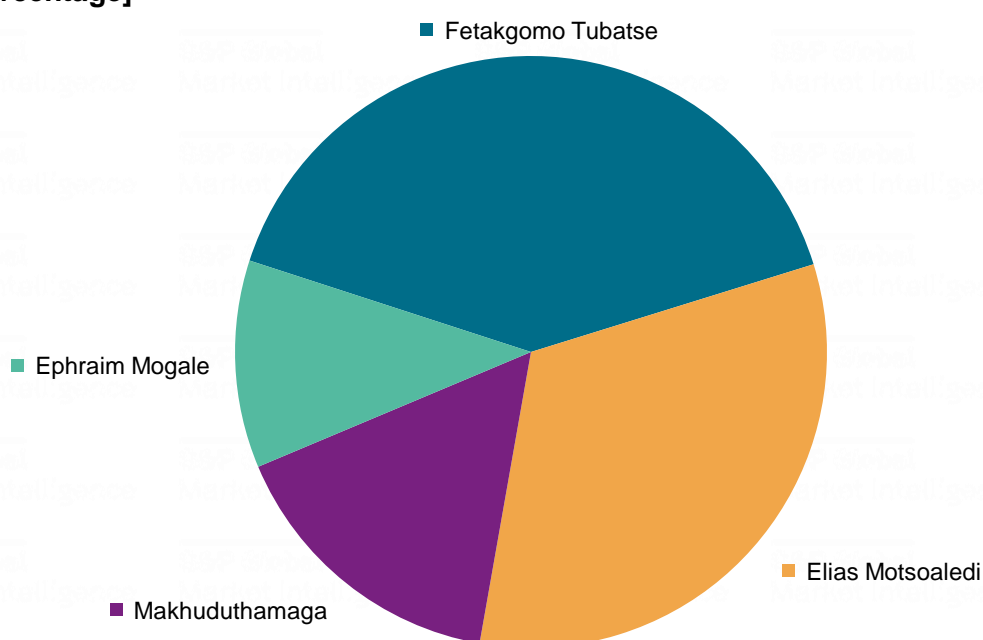
**Table 25: Gross domestic product (GDP) - local municipalities of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012 to 2022, share and growth**

	2022 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2012 (Constant prices)	2022 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Ephraim Mogale	6.11	11.34%	3.75	4.12	0.96%
Elias Motsoaledi	17.55	32.57%	10.27	11.66	1.27%
Makhuduthamaga	8.56	15.88%	5.32	5.14	-0.34%
Fetakgomo Tubatse	21.67	40.21%	13.73	10.77	-2.40%
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>53.89</b>		<b>33.06</b>	<b>31.69</b>	

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

Elias Motsoaledi had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 1.27% between 2012 and 2022, when compared to the rest of the regions within the Sekhukhune District Municipality. The Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 0.96%. Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -2.40% between 2012 and 2022.

### GDP contribution - local municipalities of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [Current prices, percentage]



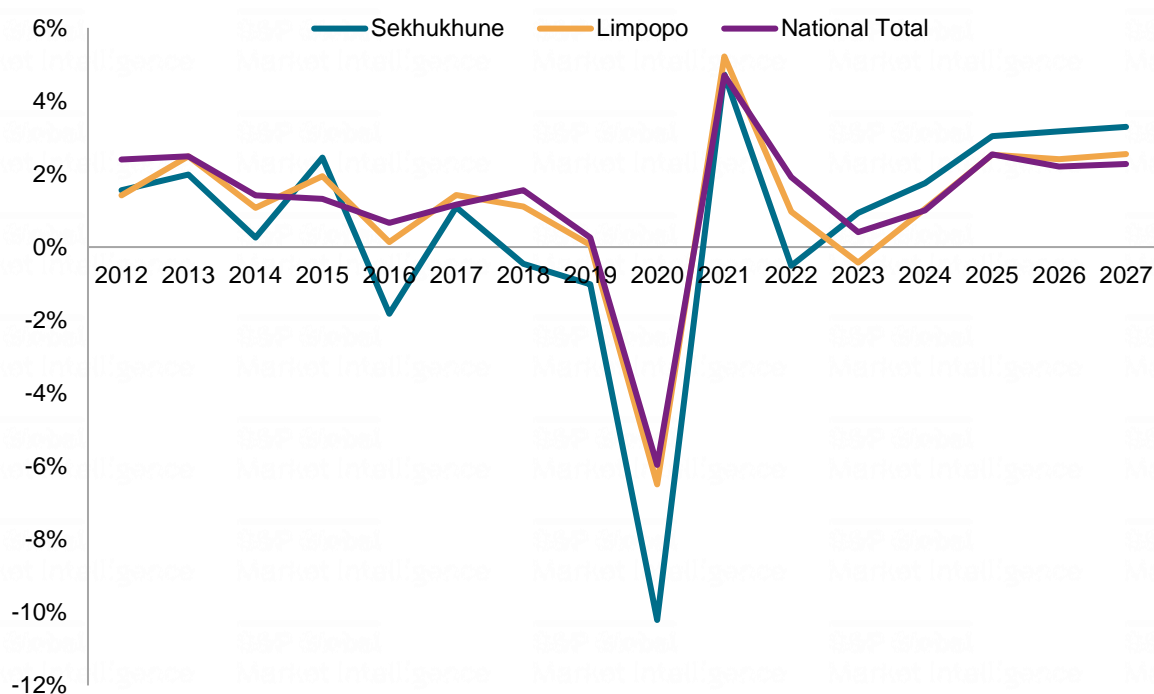
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The greatest contributor to the Sekhukhune District Municipality economy is the Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality with a share of 40.21% or R 21.7 billion, increasing from R 12.9 billion in 2012. The economy with the lowest contribution is the Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality with R 6.11 billion growing from R 3.1 billion in 2012.

### Economic growth forecast

It is expected that Sekhukhune District Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 2.43% from 2022 to 2027. The average annual growth rate of Limpopo Province and South Africa is expected to grow at 1.61% and 1.68% respectively.

### Gross domestic product (GDP) - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2027 [Average annual growth rate, constant 2010 prices]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2027, Sekhukhune's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 35.7 billion (constant 2010 prices) or 10.1% of the total GDP of Limpopo Province. The ranking in terms of size of the Sekhukhune District Municipality will remain the same between 2022 and 2027, with a contribution to the Limpopo Province GDP of 10.1% in 2027 compared to the 9.7% in 2022. At a 2.43% average annual GDP growth rate between 2022 and 2027, Sekhukhune ranked the highest compared to the other regional economies.

**Table 26: Gross domestic product (GDP) - local municipalities of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 to 2027, share and growth**

Municipality	2027 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2022 (Constant prices)	2027 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Ephraim Mogale	8.58	10.88%	4.12	4.49	1.72%
Elias Motsoaledi	23.96	30.37%	11.66	12.81	1.91%
Makhuduthamaga	11.70	14.83%	5.14	5.54	1.49%
Fetakgomo Tubatse	34.65	43.93%	10.77	12.89	3.67%
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>78.89</b>		<b>31.69</b>	<b>35.73</b>	

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

When looking at the regions within the Sekhukhune District Municipality it is expected that from 2022 to 2027 Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality will achieve the highest average annual growth rate of 3.67%. The region that is expected to achieve the second highest average annual growth rate is that of Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality, averaging 1.91% between 2022 and 2027. On the other hand the region that performed the poorest relative to the other regions within Sekhukhune District Municipality was the Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality with an average annual growth rate of 1.49%.

### Gross value added by region (GVA-R)

The Sekhukhune District Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy. Gross value added (GVA) is a measure of output (total production) of a region in terms of the value that was created within that region. GVA can be broken down into various production sectors.

The summary table below puts the Gross Value Added (GVA) of all the regions in perspective to that of the Sekhukhune District Municipality.

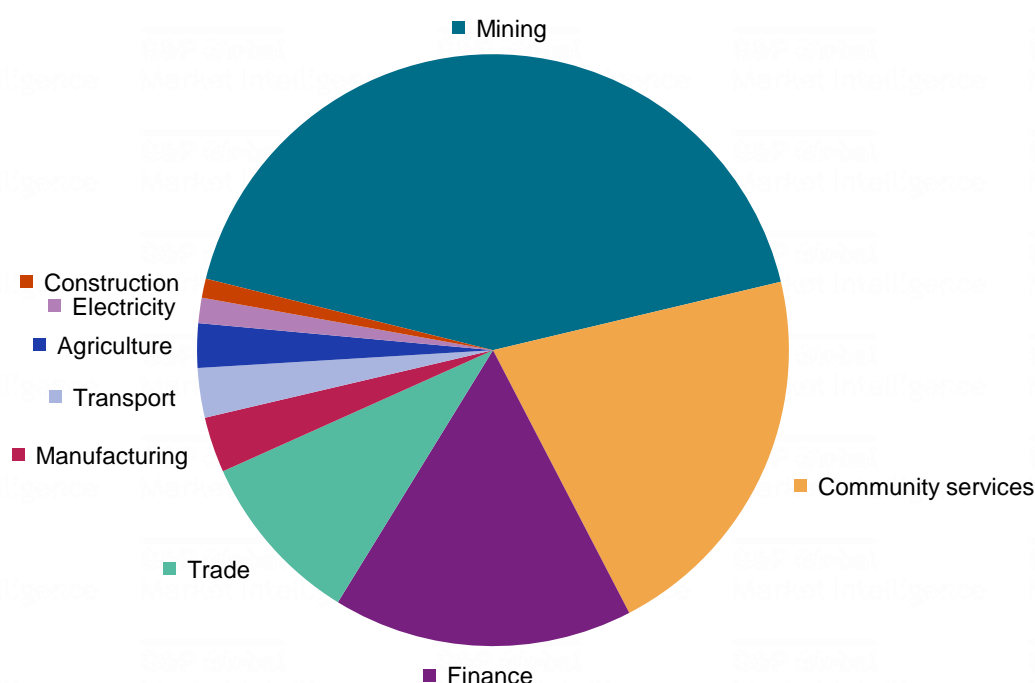
**Table 27: Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [R billions, current prices]**

	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total	Sekhukhune as % of province	Sekhukhune as % of national
Agriculture	1.2	15.2	187.6	7.8%	0.63%
Mining	20.8	117.3	483.3	17.8%	4.31%
Manufacturing	1.5	16.1	813.1	9.3%	0.18%
Electricity	0.7	11.3	192.8	6.0%	0.35%
Construction	0.5	8.9	146.6	5.8%	0.35%
Trade	4.7	59.0	807.5	7.9%	0.58%
Transport	1.3	21.2	451.4	6.3%	0.29%
Finance	8.1	64.5	1,386.9	12.5%	0.58%
Community services	10.4	149.4	1,483.6	6.9%	0.70%
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>49.2</b>	<b>462.7</b>	<b>5,952.7</b>	<b>10.6%</b>	<b>0.83%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022, the mining sector is the largest within Sekhukhune District Municipality accounting for R 20.8 billion or 42.4% of the total GVA in the district municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Sekhukhune District Municipality is the community services sector at 21.1%, followed by the finance sector with 16.4%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Sekhukhune District Municipality is the construction sector with a contribution of R 514 million or 1.05% of the total GVA.

**Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [percentage composition]**



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA in smaller and more rural local municipalities. When looking at the regions within the district municipality, the Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality made the largest contribution to the community services sector at 47.29% of the district municipality. As a whole, the Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality contributed R 15.6 billion or 31.79% to the GVA of the Sekhukhune District Municipality. The region within Sekhukhune District Municipality that contributes the most to the GVA of the district municipality was the Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality with a total of R 20.5 billion or 41.74%.

## Historical Economic Growth

For the period 2022 and 2012, the GVA in the agriculture sector had the highest average annual growth rate in Sekhukhune at 5.46%. The industry with the second highest average annual growth rate is the finance sector averaging at 2.91% per year. The electricity sector had an average annual growth rate of -4.00%, while the construction sector had the lowest average annual growth of -4.71%. Overall a negative growth existed for all the industries in 2022 with an annual growth rate of -0.22% since 2021.

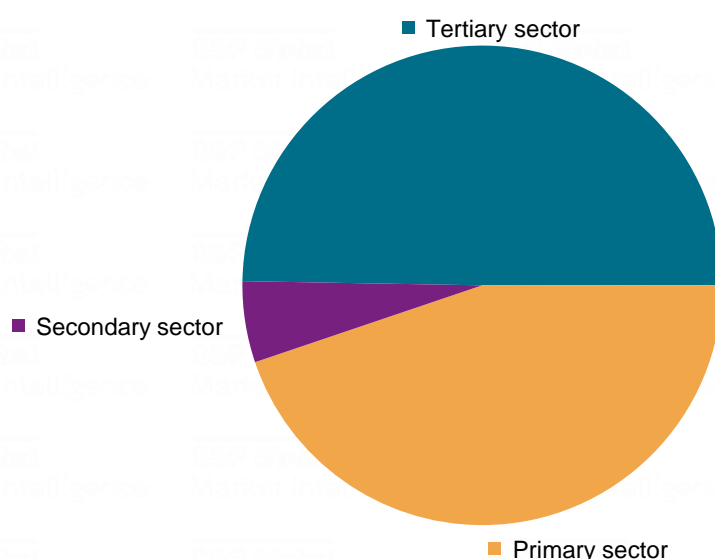
**Table 28: Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012, 2017 and 2022 [R billions, 2010 constant prices]**

	2012	2017	2022	Average Annual growth
Agriculture	0.56	0.76	0.95	<b>5.46%</b>
Mining	9.21	10.02	8.64	<b>-0.63%</b>
Manufacturing	1.18	1.12	0.97	<b>-1.95%</b>
Electricity	0.51	0.42	0.34	<b>-4.00%</b>
Construction	0.57	0.54	0.35	<b>-4.71%</b>
Trade	3.88	3.70	2.92	<b>-2.78%</b>
Transport	1.14	1.20	1.10	<b>-0.33%</b>
Finance	4.76	5.35	6.34	<b>2.91%</b>
Community services	8.20	8.03	7.28	<b>-1.19%</b>
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>30.00</b>	<b>31.12</b>	<b>28.90</b>	<b>-0.37%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The tertiary sector contributes the most to the Gross Value Added within the Sekhukhune District Municipality at 49.7%. This is significantly lower than the national economy (69.4%). The primary sector contributed a total of 44.8% (ranking second), while the secondary sector contributed the least at 5.5%.

## Gross value added (GVA) by aggregate economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [percentage]



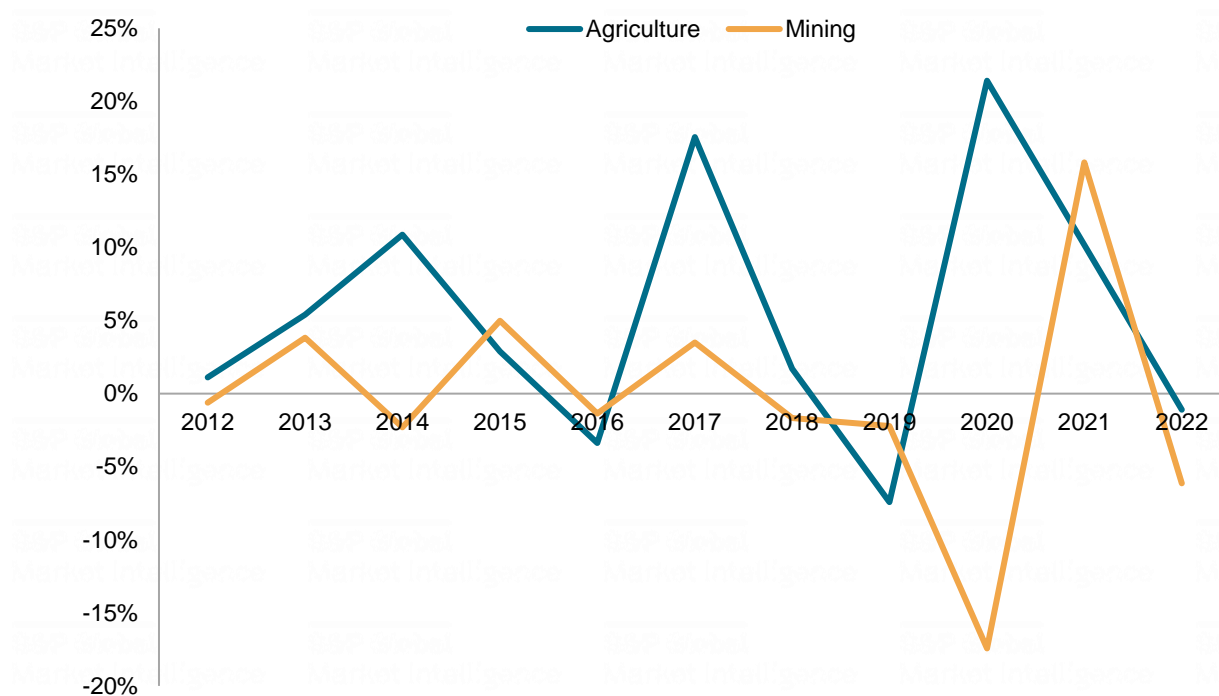
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The following is a breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:

### PRIMARY SECTOR

The primary sector consists of two broad economic sectors namely the mining and the agricultural sector. The following chart represents the average growth rate in the GVA for both of these sectors in Sekhukhune District Municipality from 2012 to 2022.

### Gross value added (GVA) by primary sector - Sekhukhune, 2012-2022 [Annual percentage change]



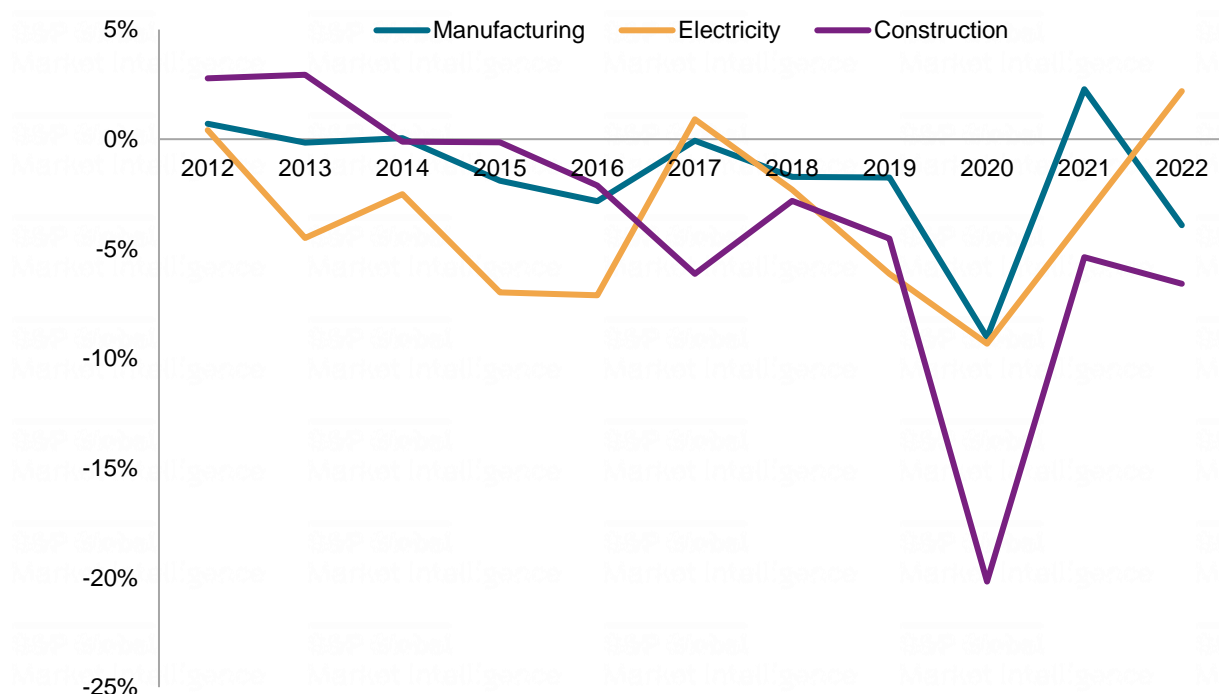
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

Between 2012 and 2022, the agriculture sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2020 with an average growth rate of 21.4%. The mining sector reached its highest point of growth of 15.8% in 2021. The agricultural sector experienced the lowest growth for the period during 2019 at -7.4%, while the mining sector reaching its lowest point of growth in 2020 at -17.4%. Both the agriculture and mining sectors are generally characterised by volatility in growth over the period.

### SECONDARY SECTOR

The secondary sector consists of three broad economic sectors namely the manufacturing, electricity and the construction sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Sekhukhune District Municipality from 2012 to 2022.

### Gross value added (GVA) by secondary sector - Sekhukhune, 2012-2022 [Annual percentage change]



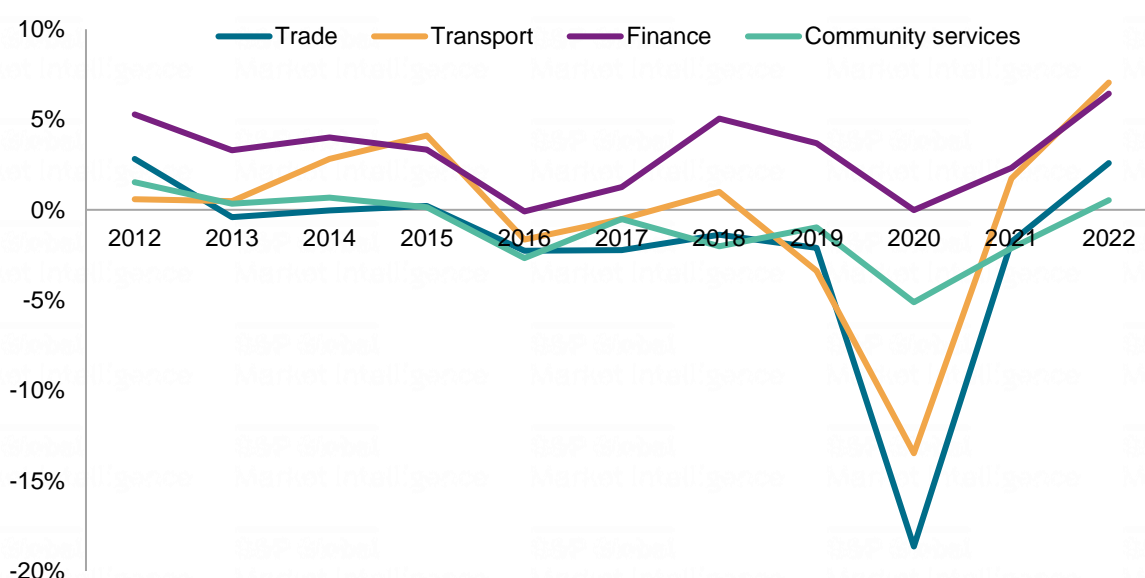
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

Between 2012 and 2022, the manufacturing sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2021 with a growth rate of 2.3%. The construction sector reached its highest growth in 2013 at 2.9%. The manufacturing sector experienced its lowest growth in 2020 of -9.0%, while construction sector also had the lowest growth rate in 2020 and it experiences a negative growth rate of -20.2% which is higher growth rate than that of the manufacturing sector. The electricity sector experienced the highest growth in 2022 at 2.2%, while it recorded the lowest growth of -9.3% in 2020.

## TERTIARY SECTOR

The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Sekhukhune District Municipality from 2012 to 2022.

**Gross value added (GVA) by tertiary sector - Sekhukhune, 2012-2022 [Annual percentage change]**



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The trade sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2012 with a growth rate of 2.8%. The transport sector reached its highest point of growth in 2022 at 7.0%. The finance sector experienced the highest growth rate in 2022 when it grew by 6.4% and recorded the lowest growth rate in 2016 at -0.1%. The Trade sector had the lowest growth rate in 2020 at -18.6%. The community services sector, which largely consists of government, experienced its highest positive growth in 2012 with 1.5% and the lowest growth rate in 2020 with -5.1%.

## Sector growth forecast

The GVA forecasts are based on forecasted growth rates derived from two sources: historical growth rate estimates and national level industry forecasts. The projections are therefore partly based on the notion that regions that have performed well in the recent past are likely to continue performing well (and vice versa) and partly on the notion that those regions that have prominent sectors that are forecast to grow rapidly in the national economy (e.g. finance and telecommunications) are likely to perform well (and vice versa). As the target year moves further from the base year (2010) so the emphasis moves from historical growth rates to national-level industry growth rates.

**Table 29: Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022-2027 [R billions, constant 2010 prices]**

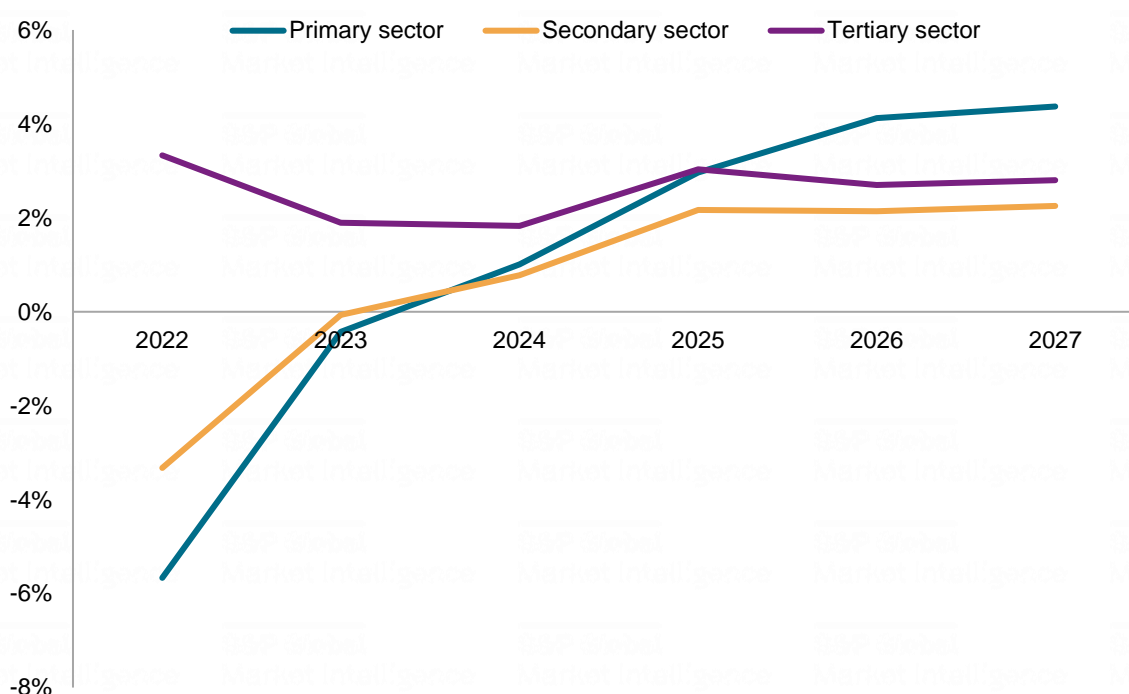
	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	Average Annual growth
Agriculture	0.95	0.99	0.99	1.00	1.01	1.02	<b>1.57%</b>
Mining	8.64	8.56	8.66	8.93	9.33	9.77	<b>2.48%</b>
Manufacturing	0.97	0.98	0.98	1.00	1.02	1.03	<b>1.28%</b>

	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	Average Annual growth
Electricity	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.35	0.36	1.01%
Construction	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.37	0.38	0.39	2.34%
Trade	2.92	2.92	2.97	3.06	3.09	3.12	1.30%
Transport	1.10	1.13	1.15	1.19	1.22	1.26	2.81%
Finance	6.34	6.64	6.87	7.19	7.48	7.77	4.15%
Community services	7.28	7.29	7.32	7.42	7.57	7.76	1.29%
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>28.90</b>	<b>29.19</b>	<b>29.63</b>	<b>30.50</b>	<b>31.46</b>	<b>32.49</b>	<b>2.37%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The finance sector is expected to grow fastest at an average of 4.15% annually from R 6.34 billion in Sekhukhune District Municipality to R 7.77 billion in 2027. The mining sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Sekhukhune District Municipality in 2027, with a total share of 30.1% of the total GVA (as measured in current prices), growing at an average annual rate of 2.5%. The sector that is estimated to grow the slowest is the electricity sector with an average annual growth rate of 1.01%.

### Gross value added (GVA) by aggregate economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022-2027 [Annual growth rate, constant 2010 prices]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The Primary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 2.39% between 2022 and 2027, with the Secondary sector growing at 1.45% on average annually. The Tertiary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 2.45% for the same period.

#### 2.4.2. Mining

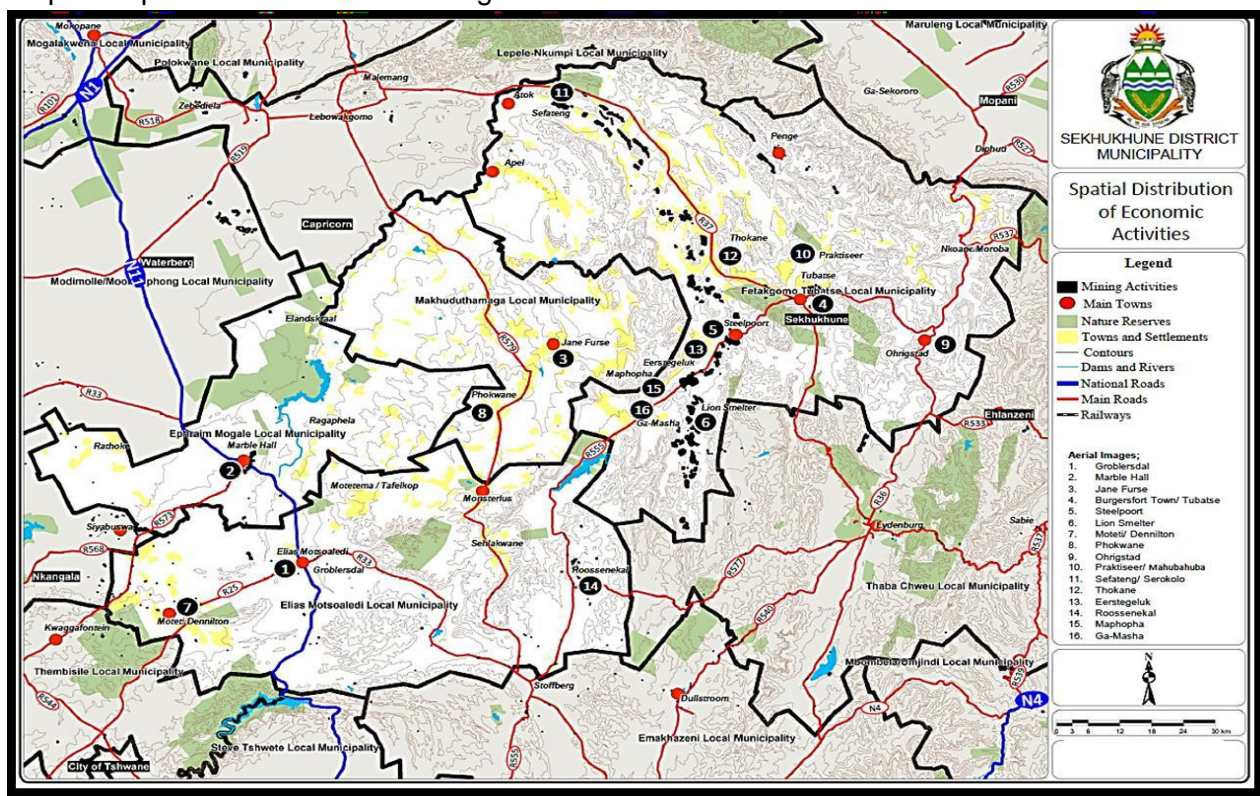
SDM mining cuts across the north-eastern part of the Bushveld Complex, an immense geological structure that contains the largest reserves of platinum group metals (PGM) in the world, of which the platinum group is a family of 6 metals which entail platinum, palladium, rhodium, iridium, osmium, and ruthenium. In SDM the mining sector is dominant in the Burgersfort area where Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality seats. Mining is the economic lifeblood of the area as the sector accounts for 34.5% of the municipality's total GVA and 55% of the municipality's total labour force are traced to the mining sector. In Ephraim Mogale limestone/dolomite are mined in the area, of which limestone and dolomite products are used in five principal industries in South Africa: cement manufacturing, metallurgy (steel refining), agriculture (fertilizers, fungicides, and animal feed), aggregate and lime manufacture.



The mining value chain consists primarily of exploration, extraction, mining, processing, refining, fabrication, and production stages. Sekhukhune District mining participates mostly in the extraction stage and very limited processing operations. Minerals and potential jobs are exported for beneficiation to overseas companies and very little beneficiation in the district and in South Africa as a whole. In order to benefit sustainably on its mineral resources, the district will need to develop its industrial capabilities in the value-creation stages of its core mineral endowments.

For other minerals such as limestone and dolomite, they include construction (mortar, whitewash, building stone) and manufacturing (glass, water treatment, food and rayon processing, papermaking, leather, explosives, coal dusting, flue gas desulphurization, adhesives, insulation, and pH control). In the Burgersfort area site, chromite, and platinum deposits from the Merensky Reef are mined in the town. Furthermore, the District features the world's largest deposit of the platinum group metals (PGMs). Figure 35 provides an illustration of the mining value chain. Map 12 provides the spatial distribution of mining activities in SDM.

Map 04: Spatial Distribution of Mining Activities in SDM



Source: (SDM Spatial Development Framework, 2018)

Map 12 provides a spatial analysis of the mining belt activities that are mostly located on the eastern side of the district municipality. However, on the western side of the municipality mining activities do take place in Elias Motsoaledi and Ephraim Mogale though it is not competitive compared to the eastern side of the municipality.

Opportunities exist for the small businesses within the district. It is vital that they be supported by being linked to the mining value chain for business development. Mining houses and the local hotel industry require catering services (which again links with agricultural development because local farms could supply fresh vegetables and meat), cleaning services, and repairing of machinery. Manufactured inputs could also be supplied to the mines and the industry at large, thereby growing the district's manufacturing capability. Strengthening initiatives like Enterprise and Supplier Development will build economic and business capacity of the SMMEs within the district.

Although mining is such a large economic contributor within the district, its future needs to be considered as this has significant implications on future settlement planning and investments. Building strong manufacturing base within the district is critical for future economic sustainability.

### Key Mineral Deposits

The following commodities are found in Sekhukhune District:

Table 30: Key Mineral Deposits

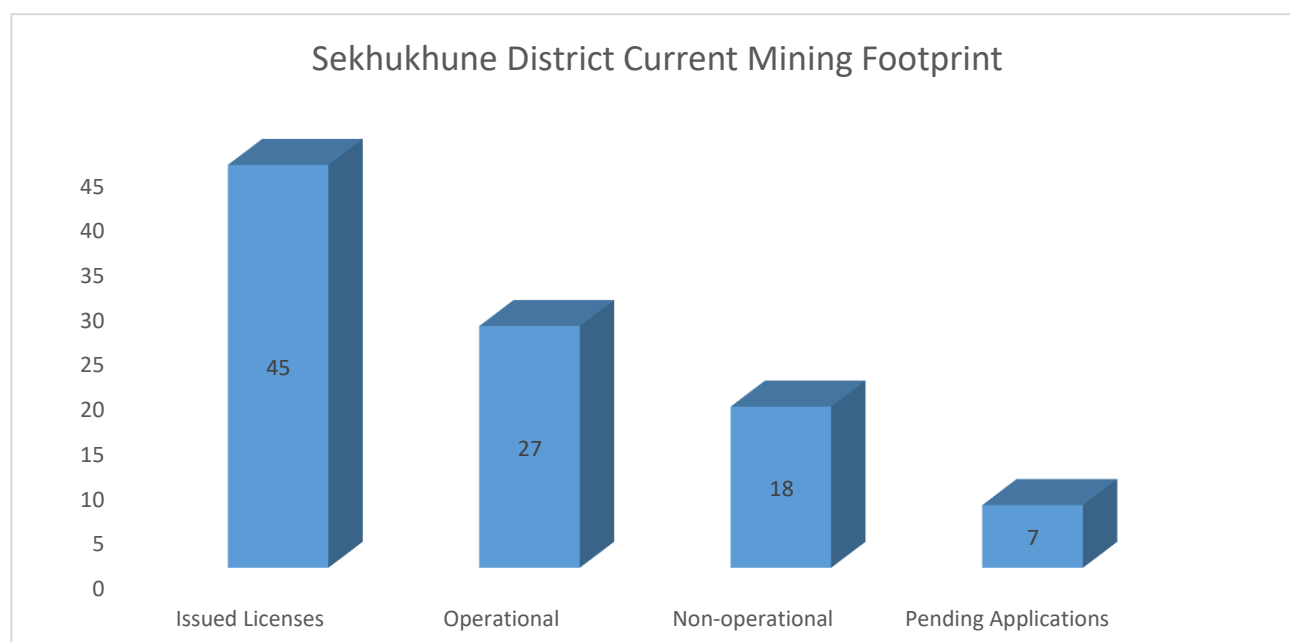
PGM's (platinum, palladium, iridium, ruthenium, osmium, rhodium)	Chrome dolomite
Vanadium	Dolomite
Dimension Stone	Andalusite
Slate	Granite
Sand	Aggregate Stone
Copper	Cobalt
Nickel	Magnesite
Clay	Titanium
Molybdenum	Magnetite

Source: DMR 2019

### Current Mining Activities

The district's current mining footprint is based on a total of forty-five (45) issued licenses as per the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy, representing twenty-seven (27) operational mines and eighteen (18) mines non-operational due to commodity demand issues, unavailability of water and lack of off-take agreements for their commodities. In addition to the non-operational mines listed, there is total of thirteen (7) pending applications.

Figure 22: Sekhukhune District Current Mining Footprint



Source: DMRE 2019

Table 31: List of Mining operations in the district

NAME OF MINE	TYPE OF ORE	TOWN / VILLAGE	STATUS
<b>FETAKGOMO TUBATSE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>			
Bokoni Platinum Mines (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Lion's Head Platinum (Pty) Ltd	PGM's, Copper, Nickel excluding Chrome	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd (Twickenham Mine)	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Dilokong Chrome Mine	Chrome	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Blackchrome Mine	Chrome, PGM's	Burgersfort	Operating
Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd (De Brochen)	Platinum, All minerals	Burgersfort	Operating
Nkwe Platinum	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Mintirho Mining Ltd	All minerals	Burgersfort	Non-operational

NAME OF MINE	TYPE OF ORE	TOWN / VILLAGE	STATUS
SAMANCOR Chrome Mines (Jagdlust)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Non-operational
SAMANCOR Chrome Mines (Scheiding)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Tjate Platinum Corporation (Pty) Ltd	Titaniferous magnetite	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Rakhoma Mining (Pty) Ltd		Burgersfort	Non-operational
Lesego Platinum (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Bokoni Platinum Mines (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Zavel Investments (Pty) Ltd	Dimension Stone	Burgersfort	Operating
SAMANCOR Chrome Ltd	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Impala Platinum (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
Impala Platinum (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
Rhino Minerals (Pty) Ltd	Andalusite	Burgersfort	Operating
SAMANCOR Chrome Ltd (Spitzkop)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd (Modikwa Mine)	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
Attaclay (Pty) Ltd	Attapulgit, Bentonite	Burgersfort	Operating
Saringa Slate	Slate	Burgersfort	Operating
Xstrata South Africa (Pty) Ltd (Glencore)	Platinum & Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Two Rivers Platinum (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
Assmang Ltd	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Micawber 278 (Pty) Ltd (Northam Boosendal)	PGM's, Copper, Cobalt, Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
SAMANCOR Chrome Ltd (Lanex)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
SAMANCOR Chrome Ltd (Doornbosch)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Spitzkop Platinum Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
SAMANCOR Chrome Ltd (Tweefontein)	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Sefateng Chrome Mine (Pty) Ltd	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Vanadium Resources (Pty) Ltd	Vanadium, Iron, Titanium	Burgersfort	Operating
Bauba A Hlabirwa Mining Investments (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Operating
BCR Minerals (Pty) Ltd	Chrome	Burgersfort	Operating
Phokathaba Platinum (Pty) Ltd	Platinum	Burgersfort	Non-operational
Chromex Chrome	Chrome	Burgersfort	Non-operational

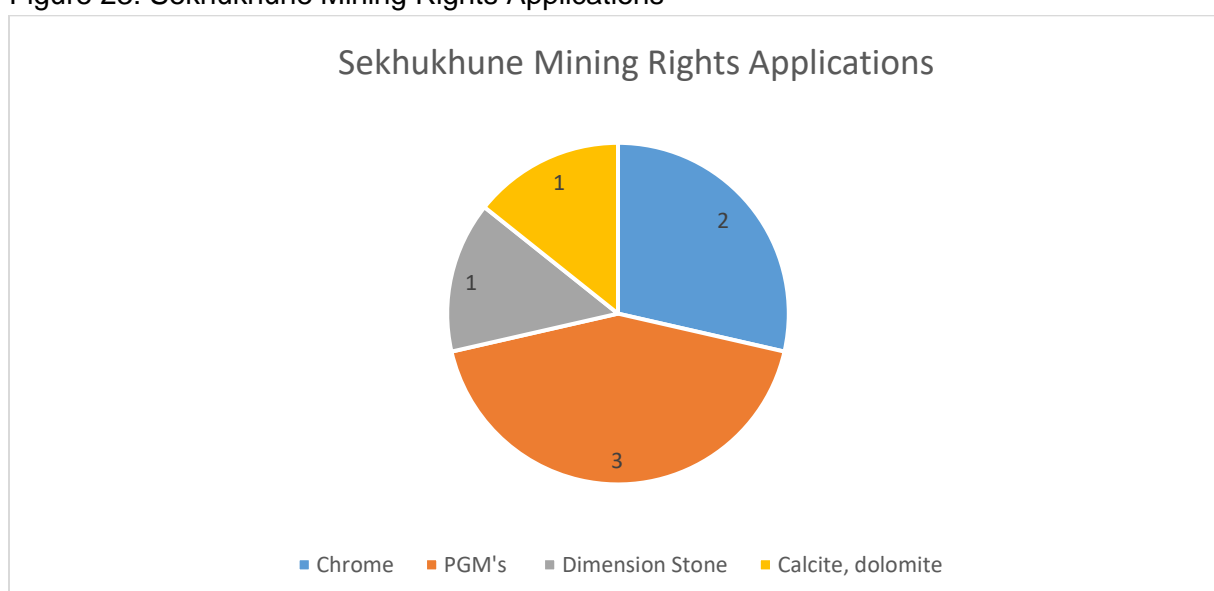
NAME OF MINE	TYPE OF ORE	TOWN / VILLAGE	STATUS
De Grooteboom (Pty) Ltd	Chrome, PGM's, Gold	Burgersfort	Operating
<b>ELIAS MOTSOALEDI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>			
Braggite Resources (Pty) Ltd (Blue Ridge)	Platinum	Grobliersdal	Non-Operational
Machero Quarries	Granite, Sand & Stone	Grobliersdal	Operating
Evrax Highveld Steel and Vanadium Ltd (Mapochus Mine)	Vanadium	Grobliersdal	Non-operational
Oppermann Kinders CC	Dimension Stone	Grobliersdal	Operating
<b>EPHRAIM MOGALE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>			
Lime Chem Mine	Lime	Marble Hall	Operating
Lyttelton Marble Hall Mine	Dolomite	Marble Hall	Operating

Source: DMR 2019

### Future Mining Developments

Despite the abundance of mineral deposits, the district seems not to be receiving a major investment appetite which may be attributable to a number of factors. A summary of mining license applications to-date indicates seven (7) pending applications which demonstrates a lower investment appetite facing the district as compared to other districts in Limpopo province. New mining license applications focus on the following minerals: chrome (2); PGM's (3); dimension stone (1); and aggregate, calcite, dolomite limestone (1).

Figure 23: Sekhukhune Mining Rights Applications



#### 2.4.1. Fetakgomo Tubatse Special Economic Zone:

Special Economic Zones (SEZs) within South Africa are geographically designated areas set aside for specifically targeted economic activities to promote national economic growth and exports by using support measures to attract foreign and domestic investments and technology. Policy makers seek to develop SEZs with the aim of attracting foreign direct investment, achieving higher exports, creating jobs, encourage skills development, SMME capacitation, harnessing the development of infrastructure, improving existing infrastructure and strengthening value chains.

In the case of the Fetakgomo Tubatse SEZ, a strong developmental rationale was emphasized by the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (Dtic), which later culminated in the signing of a quadripartite agreement between the key development partners as a commitment to support the development of the SEZ. The agreement comprises of Dtic, Department of Economic Development,

Environment and Tourism (LEDET), Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) and Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality (FTLM) whose role is to ensure the development of the SEZ without fail.

Over and above the quadripartite agreement, Provincial Treasury has pledged their financial commitment towards the development of infrastructure for the SEZ, SDM has committed to fund the key infrastructure projects which are enablers to the successful implementation of the SEZ and the local municipality has also pledged their support through their Local Economic Development

programmes and projects within the Municipality.

Partnerships with private sector through equity on land and assets as part of the first phase of the development has also enhanced the viability of the FTSEZ. A partnership with private sector is at an advanced stage, pending the finalisation of the transactional agreements where Fetakgomo Tubatse Industrial Park (FTIP) a subsidiary of LEDA which was registered to facilitate establishment of FTSEZ while waiting for SEZ designation, has in principle bought a going concern which translates into 51% of the currently existing land and assets.

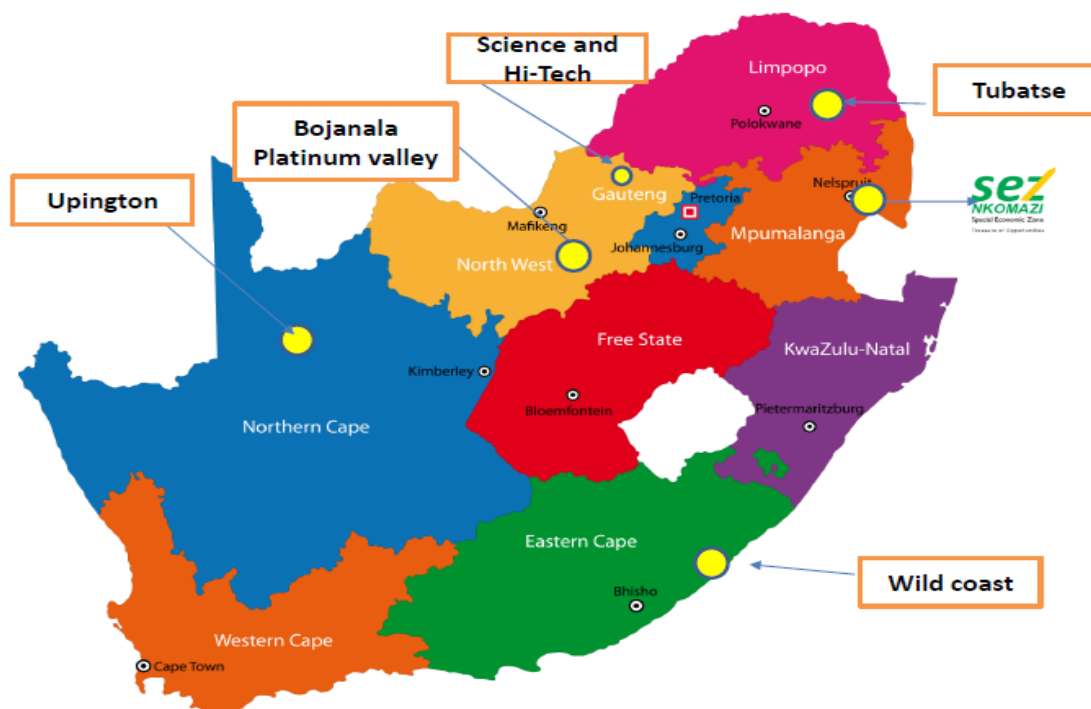
The proposed Fetakgomo-Tubatse SEZ is an industrial cluster initiative that falls within the planned Limpopo Platinum and Chrome cluster which has two components of industrial formations. This proposed SEZ will impact positively on more than a million people in the province due to improved economic activities within the Dilokong Spatial Economic Initiative as well as improving economic progress within other districts and municipalities. These economic activities will not only yield improvements of the wellbeing of provincial citizens, but will also contribute to the enhancement of requisite skills and of South Africa's role in regional integration.

The proposed FTSEZ is a key economic programme of the Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) designed to stimulate and propel industrialization, economic growth, and job creation. This proposed SEZ is strategically located in the industrial hub of the Steelpoort area, in-between 2 huge mining establishments, the Samancor smelter and the Lion Ferrochrome smelter, which are strategic landmarks for the establishment of the SEZ.

The **main objective** of this SEZ is to develop a low carbon green economy which will offer promising opportunities not only to fight climate change, but to enhance energy security and develop local industries. The strategic aim of the SEZ is to develop a green primary energy supply to a localized manufacturing of both upstream and downstream activities of the PGM and chrome value chains with a secondary backup from electricity.

Map 05: Map showing proposed SEZs in South Africa

## PROPOSED SEZ UNDER CONSIDERATION



Source: DTI, 2018

## Opportunities

- Fetakgomo Tubatse will focus on the Platinum Group Metals (PGM) minerals group and related downstream opportunities, Agro-processing, automotives (electric vehicles and after-market), pharmaceuticals, clean energy production & distribution, and mining equipment manufacturing.
- It is thus envisaged that the Fetakgomo Tubatse SEZ will unlock economic opportunities, increase investor appetite, and create thousands of job opportunities in the Sekhukhune District.

There will also be a need to establish linkages between Fetakgomo Tubatse SEZ and Musina-Makhado SEZ particularly concerning the raw material that the metallurgical cluster will need. This has the potential to create transportation corridors linking the two SEZs, which will strengthen the integration between the Fetakgomo Tubatse SEZ and the Musina-Makhado SEZ.

## Strategic Implications, Challenges and Interventions

The mining and mineral beneficiation and processing offers key essential elements for mining and beneficiation which include economic linkages (backward linkages and forward linkages). These economic linkages have the potential to develop the mining sector by expanding on the supply and value chains during various stages of production. The mining and mineral beneficiation would then need to create a cocktail of economic incentives to lure mining houses to set-up ore beneficiation plants. Diversifying the local economy by focusing and directing investment in non-mining areas would be key to the district.

There is a need for effective activation and coordination of Social Labour Plans (SLPs) to ensure that sustainable infrastructure development and other essential services are provided thereby maximising investment promotion. A further key aspect would be to diversify the local economy by focusing and directing investment in non-mining areas within the district. Encouraging local ownership of strategic mining projects through the facilitation of joint venture agreements and consortiums between locals and external investors would also be key within this industry. Furthermore, there is a need for engagement of local mining houses, local universities, and FETs to train local youths in mining-related courses.

There is a need to upgrade the existing 3 railway lines within the district. These three railway lines were originally developed to support the mining and agricultural activity within the district and have not yet been extended or re-routed to serve new mining operations (such as those along the Merensky Reef and Chrome layers) of which shortcomings in the railway network are resulting in extreme pressure being placed on the road network. Extending these lines will be essential considering new mining operations will be important considering the proposed SEZ in the area which is expected to be a game changer in the district.

Some of the factors that could affect Sekhukhune's mining sector negatively include drops in global demands for the minerals produced in the area, continued water scarcity in Sekhukhune and the increasing mechanization of platinum mining industry in the future. The latter will affect the potential employment opportunities generated by mining industry in Sekhukhune, regardless of whether the area contains significant mineral deposits or not.

The continued labour unrest within the mining sector, has been speculated to lower investor confidence in the mining industry. Further challenges are the illegal mining, poor mining beneficiation, community riots in mining, emerging and mushrooming local business forums and high unemployment rate. Currently, there isn't adequate training in relation to skills in the mining sector, hence the need for rehabilitation programmes to improve the level of skills and productivity in the district.

The skills development and industry support programme will enable a wide pool of artisans, chartered accountants, engineers, electricians, computer technicians, and social scientists etc. to be trained and fully equipped with information that would be of benefit to the economy in SDM. Furthermore, industry support through creating niche investment opportunities is expected to accelerate the

participation of local SMME's in the industry thus enabling side-stream, upstream and downstream business opportunities.

The recent history of mining development in Limpopo has been affected by continuous conflicts mainly between the mining companies and communities within Sekhukhune Districts. In 2011 the provincial government mandated the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism to develop and facilitate the Integrated Mining Development and Sustainability Framework that aimed at creating an inclusive economic growth amongst key stakeholders through creation of a mutually beneficial relationship by working together towards a common and shared vision. The implementation of this framework had since enhanced collaborative relationships between the government, mining companies and communities. The government continues, through the Limpopo Mining Forum to facilitate collaboration with mines and communities with mines committing to implement developmental projects in three work streams: Business and Industrialization; Skills Development and Employment Creation; and Community Development.

The province's mineral and mining value chains provide opportunities for local manufacturing, to deepen industrialization and enhance an inclusive economic development and the SEZ initiative will go a long way towards achieving that. Through the government and mines collaboration, an upgrade of Malekana Steel Bridge in Fetakgomo Tubatse has been planned for a tune of R117m and the construction of the bridge is underway. The construction commenced on the 01<sup>st</sup> March 2023 and will run for 18 months with the anticipated completion date been 27<sup>th</sup> September 2024. The upgrading of the bridge will enhance transportation for economic purposes, especially the mining related activities.

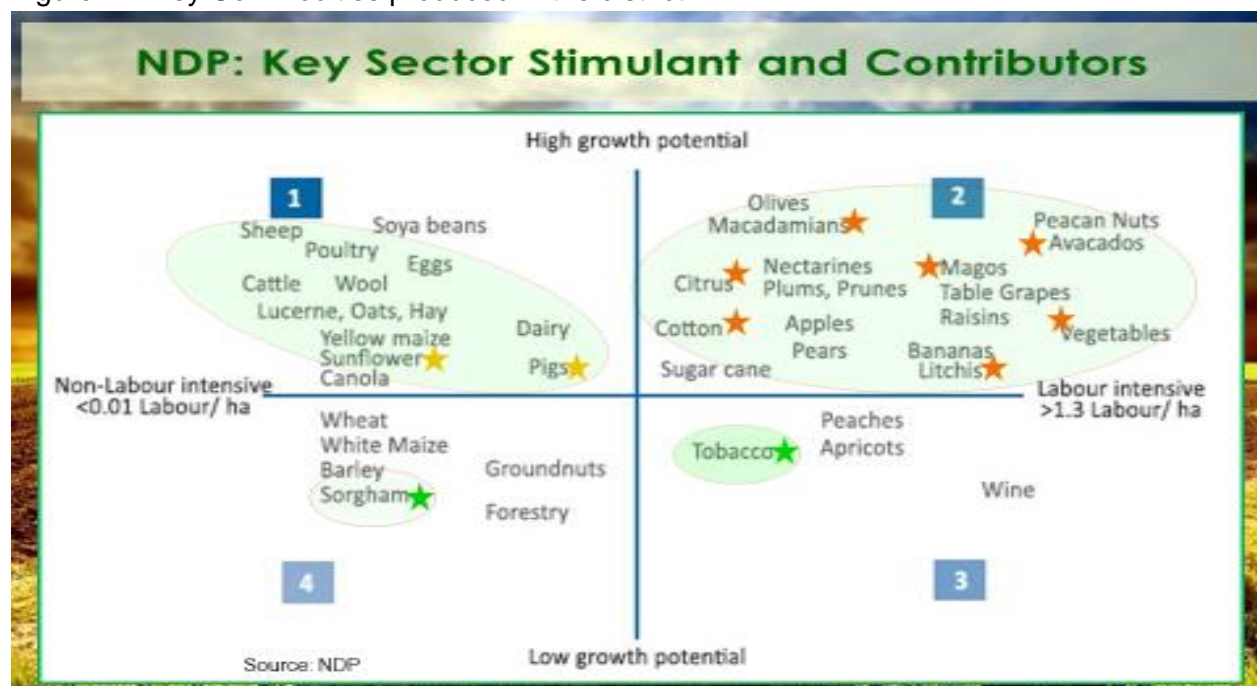
## 2.4.2. Agriculture

Sekhukhune District has a dual agricultural economy, with both large-scale commercial farming system and smallholder-based production system in the deep rural areas. The majority of the disadvantaged farmers within the district are not part of the mainstream agriculture and practice under a small size of farm holding in overcrowded and semi-arid areas. This kind of farming is characterized by low production, poor access to land and poor access to inputs and most importantly poor access to credit.

The Gross Value Added (GVA) of agriculture sector in 2022 was 1.2% and 15.2% in the district and Limpopo Province, respectively. This sector, being an important base for economic growth and employment in the district, indicates a setback in terms of achieving the district economic growth and job creation.

### Commodities produced within the district

Figure 24: Key Commodities produced in the district



Source: Limpopo Dept. of Agriculture 2019

According to the above table, Sekhukhune District is suitable for the production of Maize, Sorghum, Dry Beans, Cotton, Citrus, Table grapes, Vegetables (Tomatoes), Poultry and Livestock. Commodities which have high value and labour intensive as stipulated in Quadrant 2 are vegetables, citrus, table grapes and cotton. These commodities can create most required jobs within the district as they are labour intensive.

Cattle and poultry as indicated in quadrant 1, have high growth but non-labour intensive. Livestock in the District is mainly done under extensive conditions in the communal areas hence there is over grazing as the farmer's overstock. Cattle also face a risk of disease out- break and theft as they are not kept in designated camps.

There is also a risk for inbreeding which affect quality of the breed and leads to low production. Livestock farmers sell their stock informally in the community during weddings, funerals and traditional ceremonies. Most of them cannot sell to formal markets such as abattoirs and auctions as the cattle are under-priced due to quality issues (old cattle).

Drought also affects cattle farmers negatively as most of them loose their stock during droughts. The Limpopo Department of Agriculture provides animal health advice and infrastructure support to livestock farmers within the district through vaccinations, dipping and monitoring movement of livestock to control diseases.

Small scale poultry farmers also sell their live chickens informally to community members. Approximately 06 Large scale broiler producers (who owns 40 0000 capacity houses) are currently contracted to Kroons abattoir in Pretoria as there is no abattoir that is operating in the district or nearby. The Department will continue to support smallholders with poultry houses to improve their production capacity and quality.

Maize and sorghum as indicated in quadrant 4, are low growth and non-labour intensive, and they are mainly produced for food security. Sekhukhune district is endowed with good soil and water which have a great potential to strengthen the agriculture sector. The nature of agricultural activities by small holder farmers indicates a diversity of production mainly confined to livestock, and major cropping in tobacco, wheat, cotton, soya beans, citrus, paprika, pumpkin, peas, vegetables, grains, table grapes, dry beans, watermelons, Lucerne. The agricultural capability of the district is highly dependent on the availability and consistency of the supply of water.

Citrus is one of the commodities, which contributes to the economic growth of the district, as it is labour intensive and produced mostly by commercial farmers. The Department support small holder farmers who will want to venture into citrus production. Citrus Grower Association also support farmers through capacity building and development of business plans. Orchard establishment is very expensive; therefore, more funds are requested from other stakeholders to assist farmers. The Department has started with development of orchard for small scale farmers in the district in particular in Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality.

### **Market opportunities**

- **Vegetables**

Shopping malls that are constructed in the district and outside serve as markets for fresh produce. Most of the vegetable projects sell their produce to nearby shopping malls such as Bopedi Plaza, Tubatse crossing mall, Moratiwa plaza, Steelpoort plaza and Jane Furse Plaza. The main shops that procure from local farmers are Spar and Pick n Pay in major towns and local malls. McCain Food Manufacturing also offer contracts to vegetable farmers who produce under irrigation as long as they are able to meet their requirements.

- **Cotton**

The district is one of the main producers of cotton under dry land and irrigation, with irrigation resulting in higher yields. Cotton areas are Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi. The areas are also strategically located closer to Loskop ginnery which acts as a market for cotton. Loskop ginnery sell



inputs and offer technical advice to cotton farmers. Cotton is drought resistant and most small-scale farmers produce it under dry land due to lack of irrigation infrastructure.

Challenges encountered by farmers include high input costs as seeds and chemicals are expensive with Loskop Ginnery being the sole supplier. They (farmers) rely more on financial support from Government to augment their production expenses. All cotton producers sell their produce to Loskop Ginnery, and they get better income because they spend less on transport costs (delivery).

- **Grains**

Farmers who produce grains mainly supply it to Blinkwater Mill in Middleburg for milling/ exchange for maize meal. Some who are closer to Polokwane used to supply to Progress Milling. Maize meal is a staple food so it means all households who plant maize/ sorghum under dry land through Fetsatlala program will want to mill their grains and this poses a reliable market for the Mill. This will be linked to the Agri -Park model which aims to create market for farmers and one of the processing facilities which will be constructed in the Agri-Hub is the milling-facility.

Irrigation schemes along Olifants will also serve as a market for the milling facility hence the need for their revitalization.

### **Agro-Processing**

Most farmers within the district sell their products as raw materials and they earn lower prices, so value adding, and processing initiatives will improve the farm income as processed products are sold at higher prices. Sekhukhune is producing grains such as maize and sorghum which are sold to Millers outside the District so an opportunity exists for a milling facility in the district.

Vegetable's producers require support in pack houses so that they can package and grade their products as required by other markets. Large scale Poultry producers (40 000 capacity houses) also require value adding facilities for their chickens as they are currently selling to Kroons abattoir in Brits. Lebowakgomo abattoir which is in Capricorn can also serve as a market for broiler projects, however it is not yet operational. An opportunity exists for development of a poultry abattoir in the district as current broiler farmers are selling their chickens outside the province. The envisaged Agri-hub will serve as agro-processing facility, which will assist farmers within the district once constructed.

### **Challenges and Interventions**

Small holder farmers within the district are still experiencing different challenges that the Limpopo Growth and Development Strategy (LGDS) is trying to mitigate. Infrastructure and the scale of development is still not significant enough to sustain these smallholder farmers, in particular, youth and women who are marginalized by many development systems within the district. In order to ensure a value chain approach, a need to improve the irrigation infrastructure of identified farmers remains critical. There are some farmers who are still using farrow irrigation, which wastes water.

Access to the market is also one of the setbacks faced by farmers within the district. The market channels created in collaboration with white commercial farmers are also not yielding adequate results. The lack of transparency in the performance of produce in the market remain prevalence in the market chain. Proper institutionalization and capacitation of these farmers can result in a coordinated production system.

The Department of Agriculture in the Limpopo Province is assisting farmers to understand the concept of clustering the development which will in the long run increase production capacity and assist farmers to have buying power along the value-chain. Although this model is not yet popular within the district, it will assist farmers to influence the cost of production, which is increasing on a daily basis.

The climatic conditions of the district allow farmers to plant grains under dry land conditions, and they still manage to get yield to address food security. Crops such as maize, sorghum and dry beans are critical for food production and some improved livelihood. Cotton is also another important crop that is grown successfully under dry land in the district. It is mainly produced in Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi and sold to Loskop Ginnery in Marble Hall.

Figure 25: The following is a summary of key challenges within the district:



Summary of Challenges which affect the Agricultural sector within the district are as follows:

- Poor infrastructure (e.g. Irrigation systems, fences, contours, etc.).
- High input costs including electricity costs which are high due to Eskom price increase
- Market access, fluctuating market prices and farmers failing to meet some the set requirements due to economies of scale.
- Lack of value adding facilities and poor access roads also affect marketing and transportation of farm produce.
- Natural Disasters (floods, droughts, disease outbreaks) especially droughts which led to water shortage, drop in agricultural production and loss of livestock due to poor grazing.
- Diseases such as Foot – and- mouth affect livestock negatively as export for beef is not allowed from South Africa during disease outbreak.
- Tedious application processes for water rights with Department of Water and Sanitation. The main water source in the district is the Oliphant River which only cater for few irrigation schemes as the water is also used for other purposes such as household and mining. DWS allocates less water for irrigation purposes as compared to household and mining.
- Lack of access to credit /capital. Farmers require capital for infrastructure and production inputs and most of them do not qualify for loans. They rely on grants from Government, which is limited, as such only few farmers are assisted.
- Limited technical and entrepreneurship skills. Most farmers require training and mentorship for proper farm management and marketing. This is aggravated by ageing and low literacy levels among farmers as this inhibit training.
- Conflicts among farmers and poor institutional arrangements which lead to discontinued production (fallow lands) and vandalism of infrastructure (e.g., Tswelopele irrigation scheme in Praktiseer).

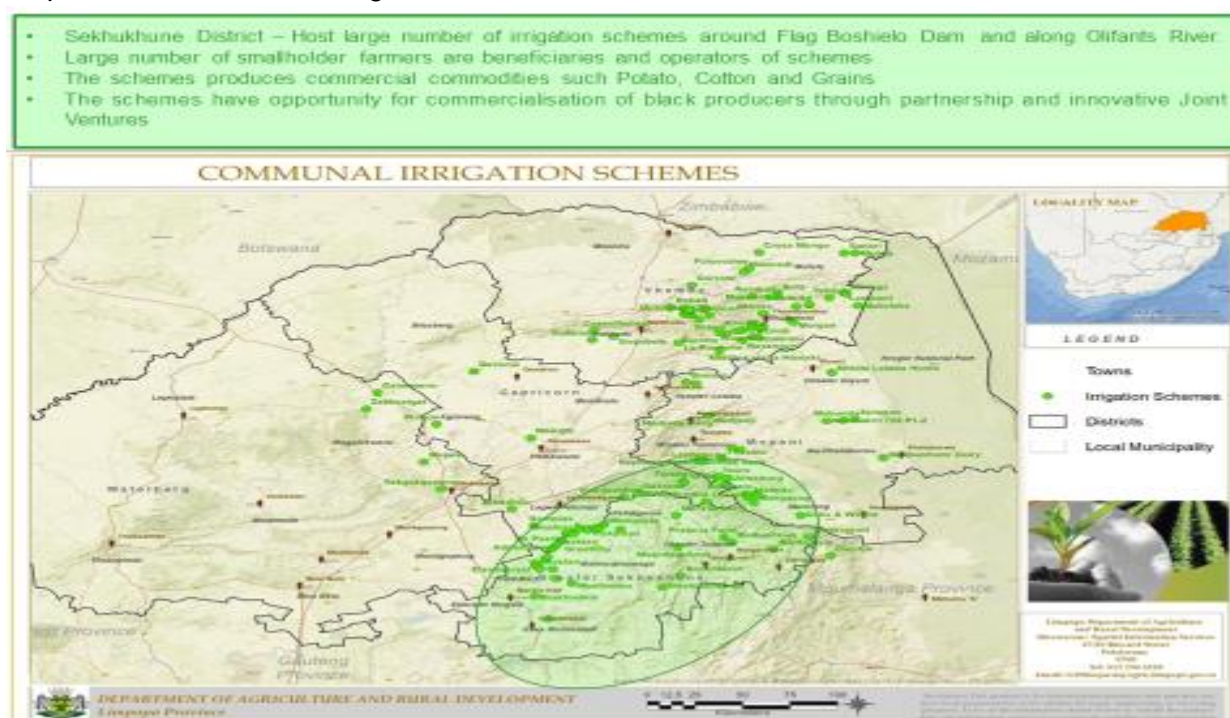
Proposed solutions:

- Continuous training and mentorship
- Limpopo Department of Agriculture offers technical advice to farmers and this will be more effective when coupled with mentorship from commercial farmers and commodity organizations. Tompi Seleka College of Agriculture continues to offer farmer training together with other Training and Research institutions such as Agricultural Research Council (ARC).
- There is a need for collaboration with stakeholders involved in training and capacity building as well as commercial farmers.
- Stakeholder involvements and collaboration in funding farmers.
- Government cannot fund the farmers alone. There is continuous need for funding from other institutions e.g., banks, funding institutions such as IDT, Land bank. There is a need for farmers to work and solve problems together as well as managing the projects effectively. These include their ability to safeguard the funded infrastructure.
- Explore other energy sources such as solar to reduce electricity costs.

Eskom should advise farmers with efficient electricity usage and affordable electricity options according to the enterprise types and sizes.

## Strategic interventions

Map 06: Revitalization of irrigation schemes



The Oliphant's River act as the main water source for irrigation schemes situated in the lower and Upper Flag Boshielo dam. The district has seven (7) irrigation schemes which were established along the Olifants River covering a total of 2478 ha, owned by 989 farmers. Currently only 2 are operational and the other schemes are vandalised/underutilised. The total area of underutilised schemes is 2051 hectares.

The priority of the district is to revitalise these schemes and to bring them back into production. In 2020 Mogalatjane irrigation scheme with a total of area of 132ha was revitalised with an estimated budget of R17.3 million.

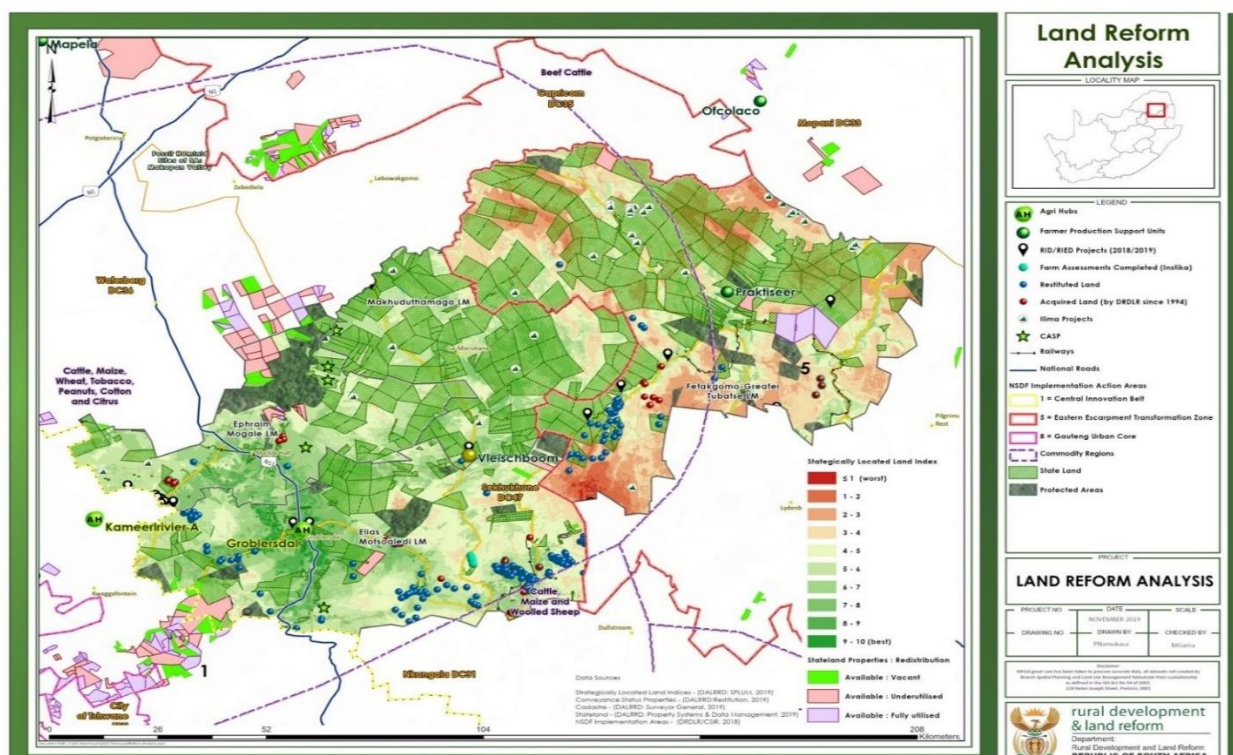
The intention of the district is to ensure that all seven (7) irrigation schemes along the Olifants River are optimally utilised and are put back to production, ensuring that 2051ha is supported with infrastructure in the long term. The success of the envisaged projects depends on the collaboration and contribution from other stakeholders either offering material or non-material support. The irrigation schemes are mainly located in communal areas, so the involvement of Traditional leaders and councillors is very important.

Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) is the important stakeholder in the revitalization of these irrigation schemes. They have already funded some of the schemes with production inputs for cotton through One-Household-One Hectar programme (1HH1H).

### 2.4.3. Land Reform

There are various land reform initiatives in the area which include Agri Hub, Farmer Production Support Units, Farm Assessments, land Restitution and Land Acquisition.

Map 07: Map showing land Reform



Source: Department of Rural Development and Land Reform

A total of 622 565 ha of land is subject to land claims. This represents about 46% of the total area of the SDM. About 317 538 ha (56%) of the Fetakgomo Tubatse area is subject to land claims, followed by Makhuduthamaga with 165 666 ha (78%), Elias Motsoaledi with 8428 ha (23%) and Ephraim Mogale with 55 081 ha (27%).

Notably, there is a strong correlation between the land claimed and the land under 74 traditional authorities. The exception in this regard is the far-eastern extents of Elias Motsoaledi Municipality where there is a large cluster of claims between routes R579 and R555 on land which does not fall under traditional authority.

#### 2.4.4. Agri-Park

Agri Parks are areas designed for multiple activities that accommodate small farmers, commercial farmers, public area, processing area and natural habitat. They are aimed to allow small farmers access to local markets, provide fresh food and are an educational, environmental and aesthetic amenity for nearby communities. Agri-Parks are also aimed to put into effect the revitalization of agriculture and agro-processing value chain thereby generating growth and creating jobs. Furthermore, the programme is aimed at the eradication of rural poverty which is a critical challenge for the government. They are primarily on the processing of agricultural products, while the mix of 'non-agricultural' industries may be low or non-existent. They intend to provide a platform for networking between producers, markets, and processors, while also providing the physical infrastructure required for transforming industries.

The district is working with Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) on the Agri Park concept. DRDLR appointed a service provider Urban Econ to develop Agri Park Farmer Production Support Units (FPSU's) business cases. After extensive consultations with stakeholders and farmers business cases for Vleeschboom and Praktiseer were finalised in March 2017. Farmers together with Government stakeholders were asked to identify 4 FPSU sites in the district and Vleeschboom, Praktiseer, Marble Hall and Apel Gross were identified. 2 FPSU sites, Vleeschboom and Praktiseer were prioritised for development and Marble Hall and Apel Gross were parked for future development.

Map 08: Agri-Park location

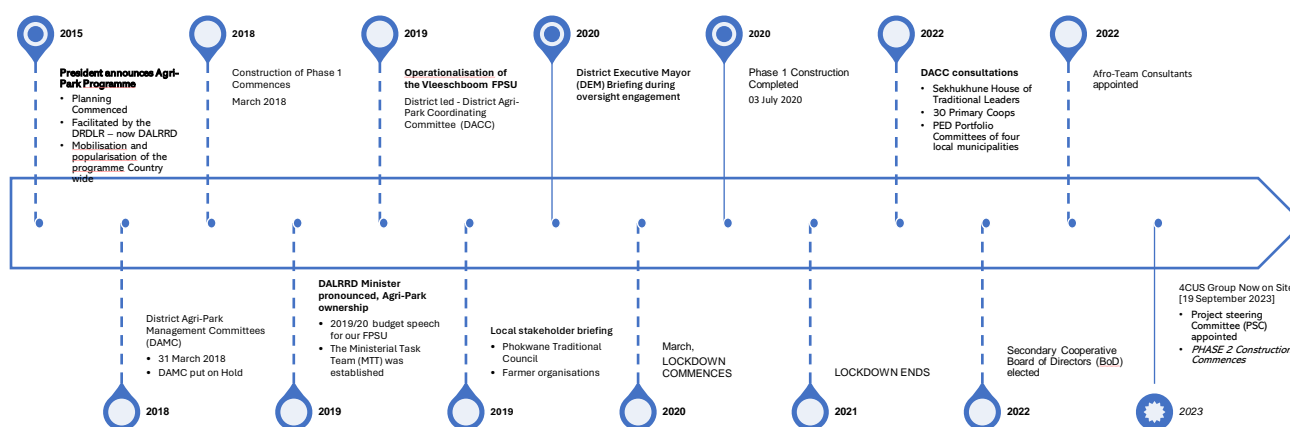


Source: SDM SDF 2018

Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality allocated 40 hectares of Portion 39 of Klipbank Farm 26JS for the Agri Park development. The site is reserved for establishment of Agri Hub which will serve the headquarters of the Sekhukhune Agri Park project.

**Notable achievements to-date**

In terms of setting up the Vleeschboom FPSU towards functionality, below is the progress. To-date phase one of the construction is complete, where the physical building is was completed in 2020. The building is now being utilised to conduct training, marketing awareness sessions, capacity building sessions, receive and dispatch of agricultural production inputs. Whereas, phase two has now commenced mainly on security upgrades, aesthetics and alternative power solutions.



Through the FPSU, over 604 jobs were created, about 526 beneficiaries were trained on various skills from agricultural to governance related, furthermore 3265.40 hectors of beneficiary enterprises benefited (2949 beneficiaries).

**Implications, key challenges and interventions**

There is a need to add value to agricultural activities through establishing agricultural linkages, local manufacturing, and processing plants which utilise local raw materials and resources as primary inputs.

The processing of raw materials from agriculture products is essential for SDM in terms of expanding the manufacturing sector. The agglomeration of these activities can result in economies of scale that would increase both economic development and employment opportunities.

Agri-Park Linkages will assist the district by developing agro-processing capacity including supporting Department of Rural Development Agri Hubs and privately owned agro-processing facilities. They will enhance strategic development for the urban market centre and the development of strategic agro-processing sub-industries within the district.

Furthermore, the identification of strategic partners to assist with the funding and development of agriculture programmes could enhance agriculture production in the region. Additionally, developing incentives is also crucial towards fostering partnerships that are expected to uplift agriculture for the communities in the district.

The skills development and enhancement programme are necessary within the district as it will cover aspects such as incorporating youth into agriculture and enhancing hands-on and technical skills within the agriculture sector. SDM has a lot of agriculture but very few youths that are involved in the sector.

According to farmers in the area, the main reason why the sector doesn't contribute more to GDP is because of water scarcity. Other reasons could include the combined effects of land claims, which creates uncertainty and discourages further investments, as well as the low growth of global commodities.

The future of agriculture in Sekhukhune is however, impeded by a number of factors. These include water scarcity, distorted land ownership patterns, a growing number of land claims, infights between and within beneficiaries once funding is allocated, limited support services and inadequate infrastructure and services. The huge disparities between the commercial and subsistence farming worlds may also eventually cause some social tension.

The other area of potential tension lies in conflicting social and economic demands for water, an increasingly scarce resource in the district as well as inadequate investments for farming district. Despite these potential difficulties, opportunities abound for agriculture in Sekhukhune, and the sector is likely to play a dominant role in the district's strategic plans and strategies

#### **2.4.5. Tourism**

The National Development Plan (NDP) recognises tourism as one of the main drivers of employment and economic growth in South Africa. This is further embedded in the constitution where tourism is listed as a functional area of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence. The tourism sector is one of the low hanging fruits that draws a lot of foreign currency to South Africa. Tourism in Limpopo has been identified as a sector with a very strong competitive advantage in ecotourism linked to wildlife, culture and vast landscapes. Sekhukhune District hosts the scenic Flag Boshielo Dam area, the adjoining Schuinsdraai Nature Reserve, Potlake Nature Reserve, and the Maleoskop Resort and Conservancy.

#### **Sekhukhune District Tourism Sector**

Tourism can be defined as the non-commercial organisation plus operation of vacations and visits to a place of interest. Whether you visit a relative or friend, travel for business purposes, go on holiday or on medical and religious trips - these are all included in tourism.

#### **Trips by purpose of trips**

As defined by the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UN WTO), a trip refers to travel, by a person, from the time they leave their usual residence until they return to that residence. This is usually referred to as a round trip. S&P Global likes to narrow this definition down to overnight trips only, and only those made by adult visitors (over 18 years). Also note that the number of "person" trips are measured, not household or "party trips".

The main purpose for an overnight trip is grouped into these categories:

- Leisure / Holiday
- Business
- Visits to friends and relatives
- Other (Medical, Religious, etc.)

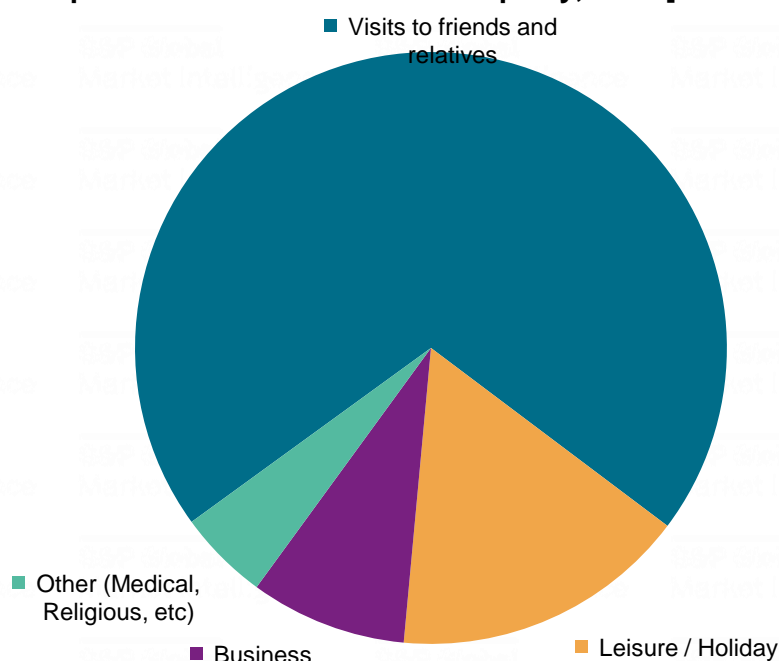
**Table 32: Number of trips by purpose of trips - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012-2022 [Number Percentage]**

	Leisure / Holiday	Business	Visits to friends and relatives	Other (Medical, Religious, etc)	Total
2012	94,400	50,900	885,000	59,500	1,090,000
2013	85,200	52,400	925,000	66,100	1,130,000
2014	77,000	52,300	979,000	71,900	1,180,000
2015	69,300	52,700	1,000,000	75,700	1,200,000
2016	68,000	56,200	1,020,000	84,300	1,230,000
2017	70,500	55,200	979,000	87,100	1,190,000
2018	77,800	52,700	916,000	79,900	1,130,000
2019	79,900	48,700	780,000	66,300	975,000
2020	61,800	38,400	572,000	40,800	713,000
2021	64,200	40,400	439,000	29,600	573,000
2022	105,000	55,500	456,000	32,200	648,000
<b>Average Annual growth</b>					
2012-2022	<b>1.08%</b>	<b>0.87%</b>	<b>-6.43%</b>	<b>-5.94%</b>	<b>-5.06%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In Sekhukhune District Municipality, the Leisure / Holiday, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest average annual growth rate from 2012 (94 400) to 2022 (105 000) at 1.08%. Visits to friends and relatives recorded the highest number of visits in 2022 at 456 000, with an average annual growth rate of -6.43%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Visits to friends and relatives tourism with an average annual growth rate of -6.43% from 2012 (886 000) to 2022 (456 000).

**Trips by purpose of trip - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [Percentage]**



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The Visits to friends and relatives at 70.26% has largest share the total tourism within Sekhukhune District Municipality. Leisure / Holiday tourism had the second highest share at 16.21%, followed by Business tourism at 8.56% and the Other (Medical, Religious, etc) tourism with the smallest share of 4.97% of the total tourism within Sekhukhune District Municipality.

## Origin of tourists

In the following table, the number of tourists that visited Sekhukhune District Municipality from both domestic origins, as well as those coming from international places, are listed.

**Table 33: Total number of trips by origin tourists - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012-2022 [Number]**

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2012	1,010,000	83,700	1,090,000
2013	1,040,000	92,400	1,130,000
2014	1,080,000	101,000	1,180,000
2015	1,100,000	96,500	1,200,000
2016	1,120,000	113,000	1,230,000
2017	1,070,000	118,000	1,190,000
2018	1,010,000	120,000	1,130,000
2019	863,000	112,000	975,000
2020	676,000	36,300	713,000
2021	549,000	24,300	573,000
2022	597,000	51,700	648,000
<b>Average Annual growth</b>			
2012-2022	<b>-5.09%</b>	<b>-4.70%</b>	<b>-5.06%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

The number of trips by tourists visiting Sekhukhune District Municipality from other regions in South Africa has decreased at an average annual rate of -5.09% from 2012 (1.01 million) to 2022 (597 000). The tourists visiting from other countries decreased at an average annual growth rate of -4.70% (from 83 700 in 2012 to 51 700). International tourists constitute 7.98% of the total number of trips, with domestic tourism representing the balance of 92.02%.

## Tourists by origin - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [Percentage]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

## Bed nights by origin of tourist

A bed night is the industry measurement of one night away from home on a single person trip. The following is a summary of the number of bed nights spent by domestic and international tourist within Sekhukhune District Municipality between 2012 and 2022.



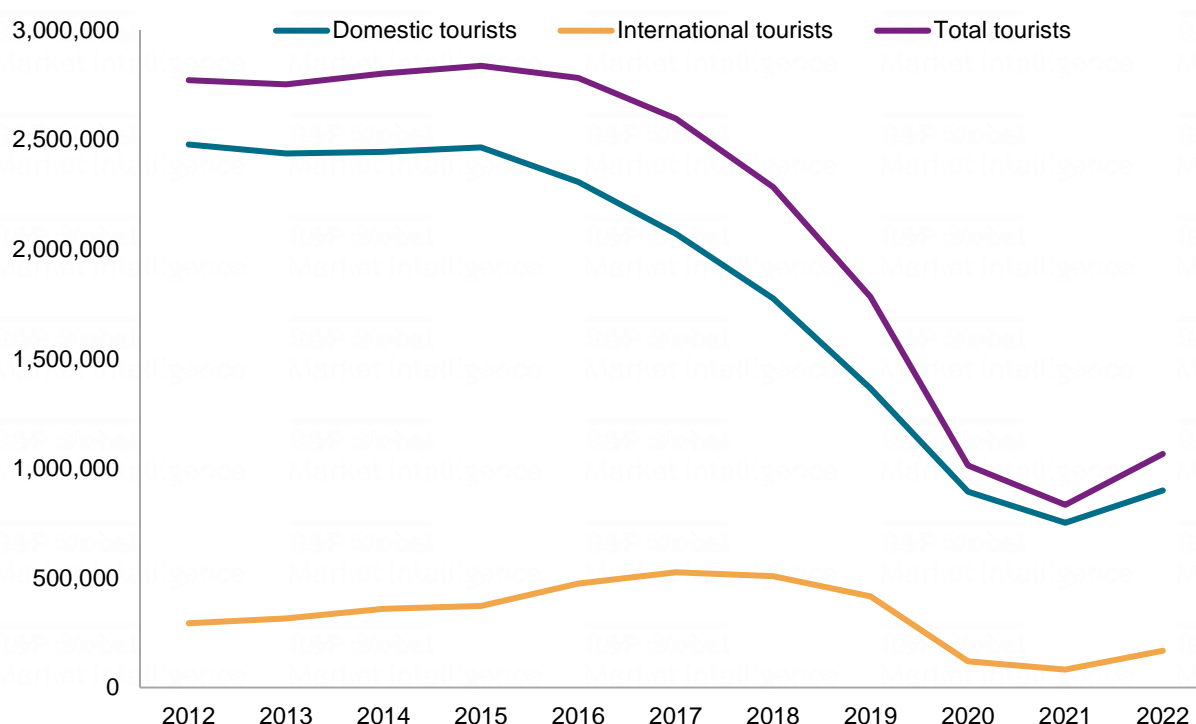
**Table 34: Bed nights by origin of tourist - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012-2022**  
[Number]

	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2012	2,480,000	293,000	2,770,000
2013	2,440,000	315,000	2,750,000
2014	2,440,000	359,000	2,800,000
2015	2,460,000	373,000	2,840,000
2016	2,310,000	474,000	2,780,000
2017	2,070,000	526,000	2,600,000
2018	1,770,000	508,000	2,280,000
2019	1,370,000	417,000	1,780,000
2020	894,000	120,000	1,010,000
2021	752,000	81,900	834,000
2022	899,000	167,000	1,070,000
<b>Average Annual growth</b>			
2012-2022	<b>-9.64%</b>	<b>-5.45%</b>	<b>-9.11%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

From 2012 to 2022, the number of bed nights spent by domestic tourists has decreased at an average annual rate of -9.64%, while in the same period the international tourists had an average annual decrease of -5.45%. The total number of bed nights spent by tourists decreased at an average annual growth rate of -9.11% from 2.77 million in 2012 to 1.07 million in 2022.

**Growth in tourism (using bed nights) by origin - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2012-2022**  
[Number]



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

### Tourism spending

In their Tourism Satellite Account, StatsSA defines tourism spending as all expenditure by visitors for their trip to the particular region. This excludes capital expenditure as well as the shopping expenditure of traders (called shuttle trade). The amounts are presented in current prices, meaning that inflation has not been considered.

It is important to note that this type of spending differs from the concept of contribution to GDP. Tourism spending merely represents a nominal spend of trips made to each region.

**Table 35: Total tourism spending - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [R billions, Current Prices]**

	Sekhukhune	Limpopo	National Total
2012	1.7	17.0	229.8
2013	1.9	18.9	253.3
2014	2.1	20.9	275.4
2015	2.0	19.4	253.9
2016	2.1	21.2	277.6
2017	1.9	19.7	264.0
2018	2.2	21.8	293.2
2019	3.5	27.7	407.4
2020	2.2	16.1	240.1
2021	2.5	18.4	288.7
2022	3.1	22.5	346.1
<b>Average Annual growth</b>			
2012-2022	<b>6.14%</b>	<b>2.84%</b>	<b>4.18%</b>

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

Sekhukhune District Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 3.09 billion in 2022 with an average annual growth rate of 6.1% since 2012 (R 1.7 billion). Limpopo Province had a total tourism spending of R 22.5 billion in 2022 and an average annual growth rate of 2.8% over the period. Total tourism spending in South Africa increased from R 230 billion in 2012 to R 346 billion in 2022 at an average annual rate of 4.2%.

#### **Tourism spend per resident capita.**

Another interesting topic to look at is tourism spending per resident capita. To calculate this, the total amount of tourism spending in the region is divided by the number of residents living within that region. This gives a relative indication of how important tourism is for a particular area.

**Table 36: Tourism spend per resident capita - Sekhukhune District Municipality and the rest of Limpopo, 2012,2017 and 2022 [R Thousands]**

DISTRICTS	2012	2017	2022
Sekhukhune	R 1,543	R 1,647	R 2,467
Mopani	R 3,444	R 3,872	R 4,247
Vhembe	R 1,711	R 1,994	R 2,434
Capricorn	R 4,768	R 5,276	R 4,254
Waterberg	R 4,343	R 4,592	R 5,836

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022, Sekhukhune District Municipality had a tourism spend per capita of R 2,470 and an average annual growth rate of 4.80%, Sekhukhune District Municipality ranked fourth amongst all the regions within Limpopo in terms of tourism spend per capita. The region within Limpopo Province that ranked first in terms of tourism spend per capita is Waterberg District Municipality with a total per capita spending of R 5,840 which reflects an average annual increase of 3.00% from 2012. The district municipality that ranked lowest in terms of tourism spend per capita is Vhembe with a total of R 2,430 which reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 3.59% from 2012.

#### **Tourism spend as a share of GDP**

This measure presents tourism spending as a percentage of the GDP of a region. It provides a gauge of how important tourism is to the local economy. An important note about this variable is that it does not reflect what is spent in the tourism industry of that region, but only what is spent by tourists visiting that region as their main destination.

**Table 37: Total spending as % share of GDP - Sekhukhune, Limpopo and National Total, 2012-2022 [Percentage]**

	<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>Limpopo</b>	<b>National Total</b>
2012	5.8%	6.5%	6.4%
2013	6.1%	6.7%	6.5%
2014	6.4%	7.0%	6.7%
2015	5.7%	6.1%	5.7%
2016	5.6%	6.0%	5.8%
2017	5.0%	5.3%	5.2%
2018	5.3%	5.5%	5.5%
2019	7.9%	6.6%	7.2%
2020	4.9%	3.8%	4.3%
2021	4.7%	3.8%	4.7%
2022	5.7%	4.4%	5.2%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In Sekhukhune District Municipality the tourism spending as a percentage of GDP in 2022 was 5.74%. Tourism spending as a percentage of GDP for 2022 was 4.39% in Limpopo Province, 5.22% in South Africa.

### **Potential Tourism Routes**

There are three potential tourism routes that have been identified in Sekhukhune:

- **The Mafulo a Matala Route**

Mafulo a Matala, meaning “animals grazing on green land”, is a route that will take tourists to all the natural beauty and wildlife of Sekhukhune Land. This route is for persons drawn to the African wilderness. The route combines the scenic beauty and wildlife of the area with adventure activities and attractions along the route. The Flag Boshielo dam together with the Schuinsdraai Nature Reserve is one of the most significant attractions on the Mafulo a Matala route. Schuinsdraai Nature Reserve is a popular water-recreation destination for families, where anglers can relax at the shores of the Flag Boshielo Dam.

- **The Marota Route**

The Sekhukhune District is named after King Sekhukhune who was the King of the Marota tribe (today commonly known as the Bapedi) in Sekhukhune Land during the 18th century. Sekhukhune Land has a rich cultural heritage that offers a gateway to authentic Africa. Every corner of Sekhukhune has an amazing tale to tell of this land of myths and legends, a true treasure indeed with world renowned Heritage sites like Tjate, Lenao la Modimo, Ledingwe Cultural Village and many more. The Marota Route affords the tourists the opportunity to experience the cultural heritage of the fascinating Sekhukhune area, reflecting the diverse cultures of the present-day inhabitants of the area, intrepid adventures from a colourful past and ancient civilisation of which only archaeological evidence remains.

- **The Platinum Stream Route**

The Platinum Stream is a tourist route designed to unite Sekhukhune’s natural beauty and rich heritage with the mining activities in the area for those mining and history enthusiasts. The Platinum Stream flows along the R555 and the R37 routes, giving tourists the opportunity to visit some of Sekhukhune’s significant mines.

### **Future Tourism Attraction sites**

De Hoop and Flag Boshielo dams are used as tourism anchors to promote future eco and cultural-heritage tourism development in the future. The two dams are also expected to improve the state of water provision in the district which will eventually enhance tourism and other development

opportunities in the area. Furthermore, the De Hoop and the Flag Boshielo Dams are used as tourism anchors to promote future eco and cultural-heritage tourism development in the future.

Department of Water and Sanitation and SDM have concluded the signing of Memorandum of Agreement (MOA) on De Hoop Dam Resource Management Plan (RMP) and its implementation on 04 August 2022. MOA is in connection with the following:

- The control, management of access and use of the De Hoop Dam and surrounding State-owned land for recreational and tourism including eco-tourism purposes.
- The MOA will enable implementation of the De Hoop RMP. An institutional structure will be set up to support SDM/SDA as Implementing Agent (IA) in the management of the dam for secondary use.
- SDM has appointed SDA as the implementing Agent of the RMP and work is underway towards the implementation of the RMP, this will go a long way towards unlocking the tourism potential of the district.

### **Heritage in Sekhukhune District**

Heritage has also a key role in uplifting and positioning tourism development in an economy. Sekhukhune District hosts rich cultural heritage sites as outlined below. They however have challenges which need to be mitigated against by a deliberate act of government:

Table 38: Cultural Heritage site

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
<b>MANCHI MASEMOLA GRAVESITE</b>	<b>Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality</b>	<b>Ga Marishane Village/Ga Phaahla</b>	The grave of the Manche Masemola, a religious martyr who died for Christian beliefs in the 1800. Manche Masemola who belonged to the Anglican Church, was brutally murdered by her parents for refusing to abandon her holy beliefs in favour of traditional and spiritual up bring.	SAHRA provided support to the Manchi site by constructing fencing and landscaping around the graveside. LEDET currently engaging the Executive members of Anglican Church, Manche's Family, Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality, Local, SARAH, chieftaincy and local community to discuss some of the interventions needed at the site. LEDET to erect two tourism signage on the main road leading to Manche Masemola	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fencing for two Hectares</li> <li>• Ablution facilities</li> <li>• Electricity and water</li> <li>• Tents and chairs during the event,</li> <li>• Dedicated Parking lot</li> <li>• Accommodation facilities</li> <li>• Tour Guides to be trained</li> <li>• Interpretative signage on site</li> <li>• Maintenance at the grave site</li> </ul>
<b>TJATE HERITAGE SITE</b>	<b>Fetakgomo-Greater Tubatse Local Municipality</b>	<b>Ntswaneng Village</b>	Proclaimed a provincial heritage site on the 23 February 2007. This is where the paramount chief of Sekhukhune fought wars against Boers, Swazis and Ndebele people.	Signage erected on R37. Interpretative signage available on site. Toilet facilities available but not operation due to unavailability of sewage system in the community. One container office which was used by guides when the site was fully operational. Statue of Kgoshi Sekhukhune erected on top of the hill inside the heritage site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New fencing needed on site</li> <li>• Water and electricity needed</li> <li>• New ablution facilities</li> <li>• Dedicated parking</li> <li>• 2 tour guides</li> <li>• Pathway leading to the caves needed.</li> <li>• Pavement required at the site</li> <li>• Directional signage on site required</li> </ul>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
				<p>Picnic sites available on site.            Security available on site.            Local community members currently assist in basic site maintenance only on the entrance area (Mondays and Thursdays).            Site is deteriorating due to insufficient maintenance.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Integration of the site into the municipal IDP for continuous maintenance.</li> </ul>
<b>ECHO CAVES</b>	<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality</b>	<b>Kgautswane</b>	<p>This is a place where candle wax stones, the stalactites and stalagmites or musical stones of the nature's wonders are found in the province. Also a historical sanctuary for the San and later the Pedi tribe. The most famous cave internationally and locally. Onsite motel and museum are found here as well.</p>	Pending site visit	Pending site visit

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
<b>MAPOCH 'S CAVES</b>	<b>Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality</b>	<b>Roosenekaal</b>	This cave is derived its name from the legendary King Mabhoko of the Ndebele Tribe. The cave was used as his sanctuary during the invasion by the by the Boers Commando and the Swazi empires. He gave asylum to Mampuru the brother King Sekhukhune who died at his hands. a statue of the king is erected 5000 meters down the slopes	Statue of king Nyabela is erected by the Chieftaincy.  Annual event by the Ndebele tribe is held at the site in commemoration of the late King Nyabela.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The development of Mapoch's Cave should be integrated as one of cluster projects of the De Hoop Dam.</li> <li>• Identify the project as one of the tourism products to be supported during coming new financial year that is 2018/19 as part of enhancing it as competitive tourism attraction.</li> <li>• Engage Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality on the</li> <li>• Conduct a follow up site visit with LEDET's management, Roosenekal Tourism and Community Representative.</li> </ul>
<b>VOORTREKERS</b>	<b>Fetakgomo-greater Tubatse Local Municipality</b>	<b>Ohrigstad</b>	Voortrekker grave site is situated at Ohrigstad, the oldest town on the panorama route which was found in 1845 by Hendrick Potgieter the well know Voortreker leader. This holds the history of the Zulu king (Dingaan) and the Voortrekkers (Battle of blood river).	Pending site Visit	Pending site visit

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
<b>YELLOW ARUM LILLY FESTIVAL</b>	<b>Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality</b>	<b>Roosenekal</b>	The village of Roosenekal is unknown to most south Africans. However, this is the natural habitat of the much sought-after Yellow Arum Lilly (Zantedeschia Pentlandia) flower- it is also celebrated by a festival for its magnificent springtime display during the month of November annually	Annual Yellow Arum Lilly Festival organised by the Roosenekal Tourism Association in partnership with LTA	Pending attendance on preparatory meeting of the festival
<b>SCHUINSDRAAI NATURE RESERVE</b>	<b>Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality</b>	<b>Next to Flag Boshielo Dam</b>	Located North of Marble Hall and next to Flag Boshielo and it covers 9037 hectares of land. Has high level of crocodile concentration. Other inhabitants include Kudu, Impala, Eland, Warthog and roan antelope. Tourism facilities: accommodation. Activities: birding, Boating and picnicking.	Operated by LTA Conference Facility Chalets-accommodation Schuinsdraai Nature reserve offers the following tourist activities for both the day visitors and overnight tourists: <b>Fishing:</b> Main activity in the reserve, with various fishing competition held in the reserve. <b>Camping:</b> Not graded <b>Picnic</b> <b>Bird Watching</b> <b>Self-drive safaris:</b> best time for game drives is early in the	The camping site needs grading Baboon are vandalizing some of the infrastructure in the reserve, new infrastructure needed to replace the tents on the verandas Draught experienced during the 2015/2016 has affected the resort's revenue as most visitors come for fishing and boating. <b>Boat sleep-way</b> to launch boat which is a constant request from customer visiting for water sports Signage needed on major roads leading to the reserve



NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
				morning and late in the afternoon, animals to see include: Giraffe, Eland, Kudu, Antelopes, Waterbuck, Impala, Leopard, Warthog etc.	Water shortages
<b>LENAO LA MODIMO/ GOD'S FOOT PRINT</b>	<b>Fetakgomo-Greater Tubatse Municipality</b>	<b>Ga- Maisela Indie</b>	Lenao La Modimo, an ancient footprint. It is believed that in the olden days rocks were soft and god then made a step on the rock. There are also some spots of amazing footprints of panthers and leopards. The people have said: "ke lenao la modimo" which is directly translated as: "this is the footprint of god" The footprint has been there since the arrival of Maisela Moswazi community in the 17 <sup>th</sup> century in the area.	Pending site visit	Pending site Visit
<b>KGOSHI MAMPURU II HERITAGE SITE</b>	<b>Makhuduthamaga local municipality</b>	<b>Mamone Village</b>	Kgosi Mampuru II, who was heir to the Bapedi throne, was executed in public, at the Pretoria Central Prison now renamed after him, for public	Annual National event of commemoration held on the capture site of King Mampuru II (Mamone Moshate) to commemorate his resistance to colonial and apartheid government.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Determine the economic impact of the event on local business</li> <li>2. The impact of the event on the occupancy rate in local accommodation facilities</li> </ol>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			<p>violence, revolt and alleged murder of Sekhukhune in 1883 by the then Paul Kruger administration. President Jacob Zuma renamed the Pretoria Central Prison after Kgosi Mampuru II as part of government's heritage programme that includes the restoration of the dignity of the people of South Africa and upgrading and declaration of historic sites to ensure a more representative and inclusive South African history and heritage.</p>	<p>The statue of King Mampuru II is erected on the site at Mamone Moshate</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ablution facilities needed</li> <li>4. Tour guides needs to be trained</li> <li>5. Link the site with Manche Masemola gravesite</li> <li>6. Marketing the site as an all year round tourist attraction</li> <li>7. Tourism management plan for the site</li> <li>8. The need for local municipalities to recognise events as tourist attractions and major contributors to economic growth</li> <li>9. Engage planning committee to determine the tourism multiplier effect of the event</li> <li>10. Tourism signage</li> <li>11. Interpretative signage onsite</li> </ol>
<p><b>MONAMETSE- SPRING WATER</b></p>	<p><b>Fetakgomo-Greater Tubatse</b></p>	<p><b>Monametse village</b></p>	<p>One of the scenic highlights in Fetakgomo municipality is Monametse spring water in Leolo mountains, which is believed to be inhabited by the water spirit. The locals believe that the snake</p>	<p>Pending site visit</p>	<p>Pending Site visit</p>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			that needs to be provoked provides the water		
<b>ECHO-STONE</b>	<b>Fetakgomo- Greater Tubatse</b>	<b>Phaahlamanoge</b>	It is found in the legendary Leolo mountains located in Phaahlamanoge mountains. This holds a great diversity of man-made influence attraction and cultural believes. When struck "echo stone" it emits a unique drum like sound which visitors find very fascinating.	Pending site visit	Pending site visit
<b>TISANE CULTURAL HERITAGE</b>	<b>Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality</b>	<b>Ga-Tisane</b>	Tisane cultural heritage site which holds the history of Pedi culture.it has strong walls, built in the form of kraals and they were constructed wisely by the forefathers to defend themselves against enemies. Also, home of the Matjading fortress the long passage between boulders that leads to a secret cave beneath rocks. Also, other	<b>NDT initiative: SRI</b>  Project uncompleted due to lack of funding.  NDT still waiting for additional funding to complete the project	LEDET to play a monitoring role on the project pending additional funding from NDT

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			caves of fascinating history that could be of interest to tourists.		
<b>DE HOOP DAM</b>	<b>Elias Motsoaledi local municipality/ Fetakgomo-Greater Tubatse local municipality</b>	<b>Steelpoort</b>	Built on the Steelpoort River, with a wall approximately 1 015 metres long and 81 metres high, the De Hoop Dam is the 13th largest dam in South Africa and one of the largest to be built in the country in the last 20 years	The Dam is listed on the website of <i>Fishing Advisor</i> as one of the best places recommended for fishing The SDM in collaboration with DWS has developed a tourism master plan for the De Hoop Dam. SDM and DWS are also in the process of developing a resource management plan for the Dam Sekgape lodge within the area currently used as residential are for DWS employees	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hiking trails: 3 to four hiking trails which differs in km from km to 6km at least</li> <li>• Picnic spots along the hiking trails: perfects spots for resting during hiking</li> <li>• Camping site along site the riverbanks</li> <li>• Fishing</li> <li>• Water activities (boat, canoeing, sailing competitions etc.)</li> <li>• Dam guided tours</li> <li>• Braai facilities</li> <li>• Swimming pools</li> <li>• Other recreational facilities</li> </ul>
<b>SEKHUKHUNE CULTURAL VILLAGE/ FETAKGOMO TOURISM CENTRE</b>	<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	<b>Ga-Nkoana</b>	<b>Pending site visit</b>	<b>NDT initiative: SRI</b> Pending site visit	Pending site visit
<b>DI-TRUPA FESTIVAL</b>	<b>Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality</b>	<b>Moutse West</b>	Celebration of traditional dances, culture in style and a way of people	Annual Event taking place every January on the 02 <sup>nd</sup> , just after New Year's Day. The	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine the impact of the festival on occupancy rate of local</li> </ul>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			<p>embracing their Heritage. 09:00am – 17:30pm, is a period where traditional and cultural performances occur, then from 18:00pm till 06:00am the after is celebrated. The after party is mainly to get everyone comfortable around and socialize in a way, as the event attracts more and more celebrities each year around all provinces.</p>	<p>event is held around Ephraim Mogale Local municipality. Local municipality currently support the event and it is IDP aligned</p>	<p>guest houses and lodges</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The need for local municipalities to recognise events as tourist attractions and major contributors to economic growth</li> </ul>
<p><b>RIBA LA MATHARI</b></p>	<p><b>Fetakgomo Tubatse local municipality</b></p>	<p><b>Kgautswane Village</b></p>	<p>Libeng la Matahari project is a potential tourism attraction which is located in the mountains of Kgautswane in Tubatse Local Municipality, about 54km out of Burgersfort. The village is under Chief Kgwete. The cave is surrounded by a cluster of limestone and dolomite Rock Mountains. It forms part of <b><i>Kruger to</i></b></p>	<p>Currently the site is not visited by a lot of tourists but it has the potential for growth as it is surrounded by major tourist attraction in Limpopo Province. Echo Caves, Hanna Lodge and the Blyde River Canyon is at a drivable distance.</p> <p>The undisturbed natural beauty of the area attracts environmental researchers from all the globe</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Hiking trails: 3 to four days hiking trails which differs in km from 2km to 6km at least</li> <li>✓ Self-catering forest cabins: starting with three and increase the number over time depending on demand</li> <li>✓ Picnic spots along the hiking trails: perfect spots for resting during hiking</li> <li>✓ Camping site and 4x4 trails</li> <li>✓ Abseiling</li> </ul>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			<p><b>Kanyon</b> Biosphere. The project has a major potential to attract the adventure tourists and nature tourists given its land escarpment and vast plant species of which most of them have a medicinal purpose or are fruit bearing trees</p>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Marketing of the potential attraction</li> <li>✓ Tourism signage</li> </ul>
<p><b>ABELS ERASMUS PASS</b></p>	<p><b>Fetakgomo Greater Tubatse</b></p>	<p>R36 between Ohrigstad and Manautsa</p>	<p>Forming part of the R36 near the Kruger National Park and the Molatse Canyon (or 'Blyde River Canyon') the pass starts at 1011m ASL, then drops down the Drakensberg escarpment to the Olifants River at 508m ASL. It can be found between the towns of Ohrigstad (40 km to the South) and Tzaneen (95km to the North-East) and incorporates the Strijdom Tunnel. This is a major pass with a big altitude variance and</p>	<p>LEDET erected a tourism signage on the pass</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Picnic areas or resting areas alongside the pass needed for tourist to stop over and take pictures</li> <li>✓ Marketing of the pass</li> </ul>

NAME OF THE ATTRACTION	MUNICIPALITY	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES	CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS	INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS
			incorporates 26 bends, corners and curves over its length of 9,8 km		
<b>MANAUTSA HIKING TRAIL AND THE BIG BAOBAB TREE IN LEPELLE VILLAGE</b>	<b>Fetakgomo greater Tubatse</b>	Strijdom Tunnel – R36	The 9km <b>Manoutsa hiking trail</b> begins at the waterfall next to Strijdom tunnel on the Abel Erasmus Pass and ends in Lepelle Village where you will have the opportunity to see the big baobab tree rooted deep inside the village of Lepelle just down the slopes of Abel Erasmus Pass. The <b>Manautsa Trail</b> involves a visit to the sacred waterfall which is famous among the community as protected by the water God. Manautsa trail also offers the opportunity to see the rarest breeding bird in South Africa called <b>Taita Falco. Full time guide available on site</b>	Full time Nature Guide available on site appointed by K2C.  Local people do not benefit from the utilization of the trail  The waterfall is visited by massive amount of people for spiritual Rituals performed on the site leaves the site dirty and unattractive which could have major impact on tourism purposes	Fencing and ablution facilities is needed on site

<b>NAME OF THE ATTRACTION</b>	<b>MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>SIGNIFICANCE / ATTRIBUTES</b>	<b>CURRENT STATUS/ DEVELOPMENTS</b>	<b>INTERVENTION NEEDED/DEVELOPMENTS</b>
<b>POTLAKE NATURE RESERVE</b>	<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality</b>	Near Atok	Nature Reserve	Pending site visit	Pending site visit



## **Implications, key Challenges and Risks**

Sekhukhune District can do more to develop the district as an international tourist destination by emphasising the broader biodiversity, cultural diversity, scenic beauty, and range of tourism products, and making it easier for tourists to travel through the provision of good tourism routes and road connectivity.

The unique selling benefits (USBs) of local heritage sites and other tourism facilities in the district are not effectively profiled and marketed.

Leisure & Business Tourism can generate an income stream for the Sekhukhune district economy by hosting various business and leisure activities in the district. It can promote and market the Sekhukhune district to be the destination for leisure and business tourism activities within the district.

### **2.4.6. SMMEs Development**

SMME Development is a very important aspect of the local economy of the Sekhukhune District. If properly developed and supported, this sector can provide many employment opportunities for the community within the district. Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality has a lot of informal trading activities taking place in the municipality than other Local Municipalities within the district.

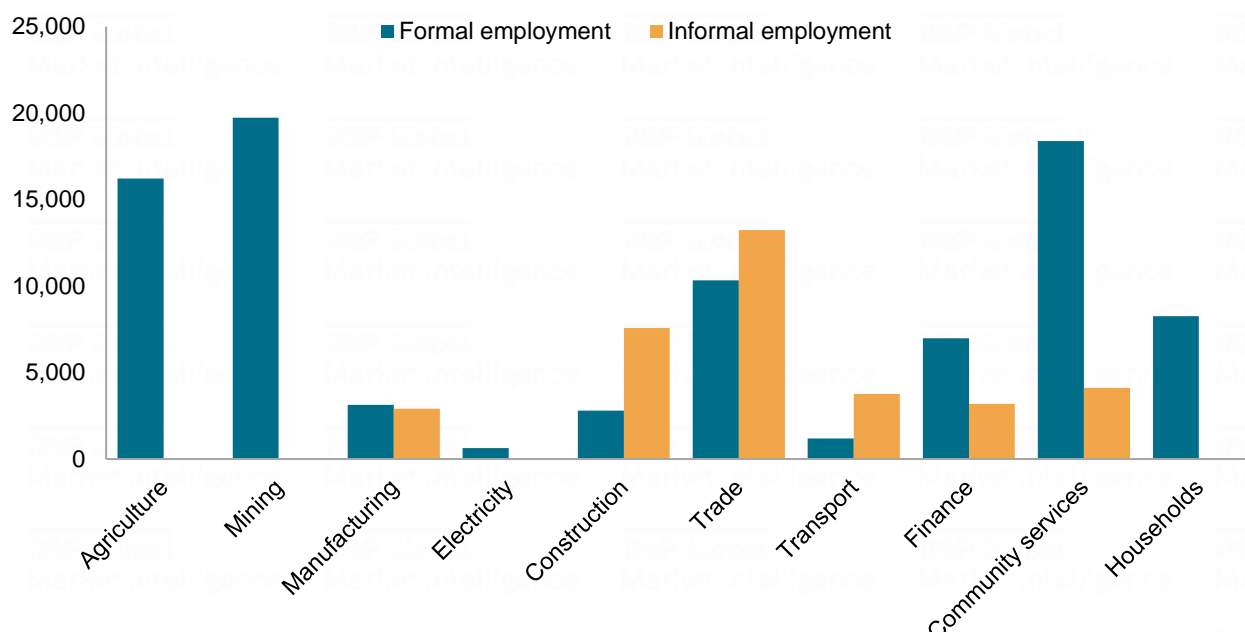
#### **Formal and Informal employment**

Total employment can be broken down into formal and informal sector employment. Formal sector employment is measured from the formal business side, and the informal employment is measured from the household side where formal businesses have not been established.

Formal employment is much more stable than informal employment. Informal employment is much harder to measure and manage, simply because it cannot be tracked through the formal business side of the economy. Informal employment is however a reality in South Africa and cannot be ignored.

The number of formally employed people in Sekhukhune District Municipality counted 87 700 in 2022, which is about 71.61% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 34 800 or 28.39% of the total employment. Informal employment in Sekhukhune increased from 33 500 in 2012 to an estimated 34 800 in 2022.

#### **Formal and informal employment by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [numbers]**



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

In 2022 the Trade sector recorded the highest number of informally employed, with a total of 13 200 employees or 38.09% of the total informal employment. This can be expected as the barriers to enter the Trade sector in terms of capital and skills required is less than with most of the other sectors. The Manufacturing sector has the lowest informal employment with 2 900 and only contributes 8.35% to total informal employment.

**Table 39: Formal and informal employment by broad economic sector - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2022 [numbers]**

	Formal employment	Informal employment
Agriculture	16,200	N/A
Mining	19,700	N/A
Manufacturing	3,140	2,900
Electricity	637	N/A
Construction	2,790	7,560
Trade	10,300	13,200
Transport	1,200	3,760
Finance	6,970	3,180
Community services	18,400	4,110
Households	8,260	N/A

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2423. Data compiled on 10 Oct 2023. © 2023 S&P Global.

*The informal sector is vital for the areas with very high unemployment and very low labour participation rates. Unemployed people see participating in the informal sector as a survival strategy. The most desirable situation would be to get a stable formal job. But because the formal economy is not growing fast enough to generate adequate jobs, the informal sector is used as a survival mechanism.*

## Implications, key challenges, and interventions

The majority of SMMEs in Sekhukhune District tend not to be sustainable in the long run considering the constraining factors such as lack of business and financial management skills and informal businesses without trading zones. It is important that existing local businesses be supported in their development and growth. The success of the implementation of the existing programmes such as Contractor Development within the district will assist in developing business capacity through linkages with the big corporates.

One of the concerns raised by most SMME's during primary research was the relationship between SDM and the SMME's. They believe that more needs to be done to establish a strong relationship which will pave way for effective communication for their grievances to be heard. Therefore, establishing an SMME help desk in the district could curb the gap and enforce effective communication between SDM and SMME's.

The success of SMME's in the business environment is also reliant on continual support through training and regularly updating the SMME's database. This is essential as it provides an analysis of the business landscape of SMME's that have managed to survive during harsh economic times.

The SMME's are further affected by challenges relating to tough economic times, stiff competition with cheap substitutes from Foreign Nationals, lack of technical and business management skills; Insufficient capital and lack of access to funding; Lack of access to markets; and compliance with regulations.

Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA) facilitates capacity building, coaching and mentorships, technical training, and facilitation of funding co-ordinated by partners in the SMME Ecosystem. SDM has put skills development and SMME's and Cooperative Support through grand funding as one of the LED projects in the 2024/2025 IDP, the municipality will implement these projects in collaboration with SEDA, National Youth Development Agency and other stakeholders.

## Summary of Challenges

- The economic potential of the district may be undermined by demographic, infrastructural and spatial challenges alluded to elsewhere in this chapter.
- The Sekhukhune economy is excessively reliant on public sector funding with community services being a major contributor to GDP in the area.
- Most revenue flows out of the Sekhukhune economy as residents and businesses source and sell their goods and services outside the district.
- Decline in global demands for the minerals produced in the area, continued water scarcity and the increasing mechanization of platinum mining could affect Sekhukhune's mining industry negatively in the future
- Insufficient beneficiation and value-adding activities occur within the Sekhukhune economy at present.
- Maximizing the use of ICT to gain access to untapped markets outside the region and taking advantage of globalization
- Commercial agriculture is coming under increasing pressure as rising input costs; a stronger local currency, lower commodity prices and external competition take their toll.

- Subsistence farming continues to dominate the agricultural sector in Sekhukhune, which is further affected adversely by global warming and declining interest in the sector.
- The district's tourism potential is not being fully exploited yet because of a lack of tourism infrastructure and poor related services.
- The skills profile in the district is low, due to the low level of education. This will result in the economy failing to manage any developmental intervention that the district may come up with.
- Insufficient funding to implement programmes and projects identified in the LED strategy.
- Inability of the district to attract investment in tourism and the development of attractive tourism packages to ensure local and international tourist spend more than just a day or two in Sekhukhune
- Integration and marketing of key tourism attraction with those of other districts within the province to ensure synergy

#### **2.4.7. Sekhukhune Development Agency (SDA)**

##### **Introduction to SDA**

Sekhukhune Development Agency (SDA) is wholly owned by the Sekhukhune District Municipality and has been in existence since 2008, operationalized in 2009 through appointment of the first Board of Directors. It is befitting to define it as being at an early development stage, particularly given the progress it has made thus far. Like any organization at that stage, it constantly strives to strike a balance between setting and pursuing its development path whilst simultaneously addressing operational limitations. Such a scenario often results in multiple and competing priorities, with limited resources to ensure their attainment, that blur progression towards attaining the desired outcomes.

The function and activities of SDA is informed by the following statutory and legal framework:

- Company's Act No.71 of 2008
- Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000
- Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011
- Municipal Finance Management Act No.56 of 2003
- By Law on Operating SDA (Provincial gazette No.1863)

However, the agency has not been able to realise its intended objectives in the last 8-9 years or so of its existence. The major challenge of the agency is that of capitalisation, the agency relies on its parent municipality for salary and other related operational costs with nonexistence of budget for capital projects identified in its strategic plan documents 2023-2026.

For the agency to function and attain its objectives, a lot of public-private funding mobilisation has to take place. The agency has to establish and sustain relationship with funding agencies such as IDC, NEF, NDA, NYDA, SETA's and private investors. The new board of directors has adopted a strategy to appoint a panel of private financial mobilisation companies to bring fund on a risk basis based on the success of the project.

##### **Strategic goals**

- To initiate, identify, facilitate, and implement high impact economic development projects
- To secure a stable and sustainable financial base for the future development of the Agency.
- To forge strategic partnerships, promote rural industrialisation and the high impact development project space.
- To ensure that the high impact economic development projects create sustainable job opportunities for locals.
- To attract sustainable investment in growing the economy.
- To attract and maintain capable human capital.

### **Priority Projects**

The following are the high priority projects

- Policy Development and Implementation
- Implementation of the De Hoop RMP identified Projects
- Yellow Lily Arum Yearly Festival
- Mixed use Precinct
- Enterprise Supplier Development program
- Establishment of Transport planning and Management Function
- Sekhukhune Tourism ROUTE implementation
- Augmentation of SDM power supply through Alternative energy installations in water treatment works.
- Transfer of title deed to SDA and Development of the Land ERF 488
- ICT connectivity and Broadband
- Appointment of SDA as an implementing agent by SDM on the FT SEZ Park
- Skills Development & Training
- Investment promotion through CEO Sector Outreach Program
- Revitalisation of cotton Industry
- Branding and marketing of SDA
- Mining and land rehabilitation

## **2.5. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY, INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT AND SOCIAL SERVICES**

The information on analysis of basic service delivery was taken from variety of sources including Statistics SA, communities within the SDM (through community consultation), internal departmental inputs, and other spheres of government.

### **2.5.1. Access to Water**

Sekhukhune District Municipality is both a Water Services Authority and a Water Services Provider in accordance with its powers and functions in terms of the Water Services Act, Act 108 of 1997. This makes its primary function in terms of service delivery to be that of the provision of water. The 811 villages within the district are supplied with water from 45 water supply schemes.

The Municipality is currently providing full water services in the main towns of Burgersfort, Marble Hall, Groblersdal, Steelpoort and Ohrigstad. These areas have access to other high-level services such as refuse removal and roads infrastructure.

The most villages in the vast rural areas are being provided with ground water as alternative sources and water tankers where necessary. Most of the rural villages in the Flag Boshielo Water Scheme receive water services in a much more improved way than other villages within the district.

In 2017-2018 financial year, a number of villages have begun to receive basic water provided by a main pipe from De Hoop dam, namely: Mpelegane, Maepa, Ratau, Maphopha, Rantho, Masha, Malekana and Maseven. This is a notable progress as De Hoop dam's provision is beginning to reach villages.

The following tables provide the history of water access by the households within the district. The tables include Census 2022/2011 and Community Survey 2016.

Table 40: Access to piped water: 2011

Municipality	Piped water access	No piped water access	Total
Ephraim Mogale	27 102 (84%)	5 181 (16%)	32 283
Elias Motsoaledi	40 195 (66,7%)	20 056 (33,3%)	60 251
Makhuduthamaga	47 802 (73,3%)	17 416 (26,7%)	65 218
Fetakgomo Tubatse	83 175 (78%)	22 877 (22%)	106 052
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>198 272 (75.2)</b>	<b>65 530 (24.8)</b>	<b>263 802</b>

Source: Census (2011)

Table 41: Number of households indicating access to safe drinking water in 2016

Municipality	Access	No access
Ephraim Mogale	13 980 (41, 7%)	19 554 (58, 3%)
Elias Motsoaledi	44 308 (68, 1%)	20 740 (31, 9%)
Makhuduthamaga	41 804 (65%)	22 537 (35%)
Fetakgomo Tubatse	78 581 (63, 9%)	44 427 (36, 1%)
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>178 675 (62, 5%)</b>	<b>107 258 (37, 5%)</b>

Source: Community Survey (2016)

Table 42: 2022 Access to Piped Water

Municipality	Sekhukhune District		Fetakgomo Tubatse		Makhuduthamaga		Elias Motsoaledi		Ephraim Mogale	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling	85 165	25.0%	35 640	24%	14 810	18.9%	24 592	31.1%	10 122	28.2%
Piped (tap) water inside the yard	75 753	22.2%	32 048	21%	17456	22.2%	14 547	18.4%	11 702	32.5%
Piped (tap) water on community stand	64 432	18.9%	28 810	19.6%	22 615	28.8%	10 993	13.9%	2 014	5.6%

Municipality	Sekhukhune District		Fetakgomo Tubatse		Makhuduthamaga		Elias Motsoaledi		Ephraim Mogale	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
No access to piped water	115 404	33.9%	50 669	34.4%	23 616	30.1%	29 004	36.7%	12 115	33.7%

Households in Sekhukhune district with access to piped water was recorded as 24.8% in 2011 (65 530 households) which has increased to 25% (85 165) in 2022. Whereas households with no access to piped water was 75.2% (198 272 households) and the backlog has been reduced to 33.9% (115 404) in 2022. Majority of households with no access to piped water are found in Fetakgomo Tubatse followed by Elias Motsoaledi according to both Census 2011 and 2022.

Table 43: Households by Type of Water Access - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2018

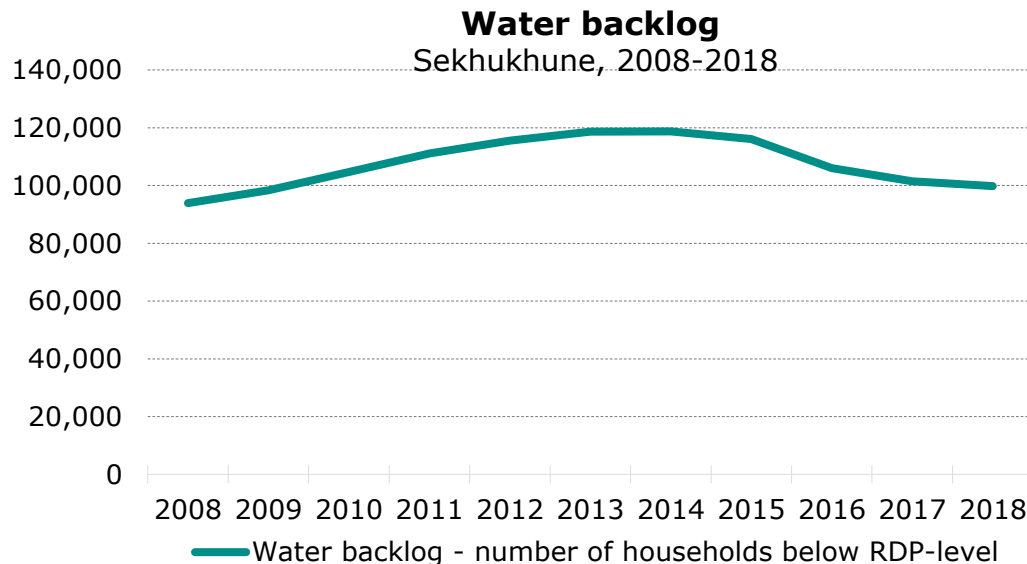
Municipality	Piped water inside dwelling	Piped water in yard	Communal piped water: less than 200m from dwelling (At RDP-level)	Communal piped water: more than 200m from dwelling (Below RDP)	No formal piped water	Total
Ephraim Mogale	3,420	23,100	1,990	2,950	3,570	35,000
Elias Motsoaledi	9,740	35,600	7,110	4,140	11,300	67,900
Makhuduthamaga	5,060	22,900	16,800	12,000	13,200	70,000
Fetakgomo Tubatse	12,800	35,700	28,100	30,500	22,200	129,000
<b>Total Sekhukhune</b>	<b>30,994</b>	<b>117,265</b>	<b>54,005</b>	<b>49,543</b>	<b>50,259</b>	<b>302,066</b>

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

The Municipality within Sekhukhune District with the highest number of households with piped water inside the dwelling is Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality with 12 800 or a share of 41.21% of the households with piped water inside the dwelling within Sekhukhune District Municipality. The Municipality with the lowest number of households with piped water inside the dwelling is Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality with a total of 3 420 or a share of 11.03% of the total households with piped water inside the dwelling within Sekhukhune District Municipality.

When it comes to water backlog (number of households below RDP-level) over time, it can be seen in the graph below that in 2008 the number of households below the RDP-level were 93 900 within Sekhukhune District Municipality, this increased annually at 0.61% per annum to 99 800 in 2018.

Figure 28: Water Backlog



Source: IHS Markit Regional Explorer version 1750

The total number of households within Sekhukhune District Municipality increased at an average annual rate of 2.49% from 2008 to 2018, which is higher than the annual increase of 2.00% in the number of households in South Africa. With high in-migration into a region, the number of households increases, putting additional strain on household infrastructure.

The Sekhukhune District has prepared a Water Services Development Plan (WSDP) that was first developed in 2005 and updated annually (last updated in 2015/2016 financial year). The raising of Flag Boshielo Dam by five meters has been completed by the then DWAE. The De Hoop Dam has also been completed to increase the district's capacity to provide water to its communities. These two dams will improve the state of water provision in the district, and these will eventually increase tourism and other development opportunities in the area.

The district has developed a Community Water Supplies Master Plan (Bulk Water Master Plan). This enables the district and its implementing agents to achieve its WSDP objectives. The intention is also to investigate alternative technical options for supplying specific areas with water, and to ensure coordination and implementation of water supply infrastructure. Early findings of these studies reveal that groundwater is a major water resource for most Sekhukhune households – and will continue to do so in the future.

#### a) Water Sources

The water sources found in SDM include Ground water, Wells, Rivers, Pools, Dams (20 small dams and 2 major Dams i.e., Flag Boshielo and De Hoop).

SDM relies on two major rivers where two large dams are located within its jurisdiction Flag Boshielo Dam on the Olifants River at full storage capacity of 185.2 million cubic metres (110%) in January 2020, source DWS. De Hoop Dam on the Steelpoort River at full storage capacity of 348.7 million cubic metres (81, 2%), January 2020; source DWS

**Olifants River abstraction points are as follows:**



- 15.7MI/day of raw water at the abstraction point in Groblersdal WTW
- 11.5MI/day of raw water at the abstraction point in Flag Boshielo WTW
- 60 MI/day of raw water at the abstraction point in Olifantspoort WTW (6MI/day is allocated for SDM villages)

Conjunctive use of surface and ground water sources is preferred in Sekhukhune District. Promotion of conjunctive use of ground and surface water sources must be encouraged during the planning phase where feasible. Efficient and effective use of ground water sources must be integrated into surface bulk water supply schemes,

The cost of operating and maintaining local water treatment works and production boreholes should be compared to the cost of operating and maintaining regional surface water schemes, before ground water sources can be declared redundant, once surface water schemes have been commissioned.

The cost of water from existing groundwater schemes and local treatment works may be cheaper than water from surface water schemes, in this case the communities must be made aware of the water balance rather than acceding to their demand for surface water only. Ground water development must always continue even in areas where there is bulk surface water supply, Surface water and ground water sources must always augment each other, Rainwater harvesting must also be considered for contribution to the water balance.

#### b) Water Resources in the Sekhukhune District:

Table 44: Total water resources (kl/day)

Water resource	Capacity developed	Potential to be developed	Total
Ground water	54, 207	45, 718	99,924
Surface water	67, 787	76, 676	144, 463
<b>Total</b>	<b>121, 994</b>	<b>122, 394</b>	<b>244, 388</b>

Source: Water Services Master Plan (2015)

Table 45: Total water balance (probable scenario) (kl/day) if all water infrastructure is functional

	2015	2020	2025	2030	2035	2040	2045
Developed water resources	121, 994	121, 994	121, 994	121, 994	121, 994	121, 994	121, 994
Total water demand	88, 197	105, 067	140,298	155, 332	171, 276	186, 680	201, 429
Balance	33, 797	16, 927	-18, 304	-33, 338	-49, 282	-64, 686	-79, 435

Source: Water Services Master Plan (2015)

Water resources salient points:

- Water transfers out of the municipal area includes the existing Olifants-Sand River Water Transfer Scheme where water is transferred from Olifantspoort Weir to Polokwane LM.
- Each Water Scheme has a water safety plan covering the WTWs operated by SDM or LNW.

- Blue drop and green drop scores are recorded in the DWS geo data base, WSDP and 5 year reliability water and sanitation plan.

### c) Free Basic Water

Most Sekhukhune households can be defined as poor/indigent - where the total income is below R1, 500 per month. In 2019/2020, approximately 79% of the households in Sekhukhune was in this category. These are the households to which Free Basic Water (FBW) must be supplied and to whom the Equitable Share subsidy applies.

### d) Status Quo on Bulk Water Supply Schemes

- **Moutse West & East Bulk Water Supply Scheme (MW&EBWSS)**

The scheme commenced with infrastructure planning in 2005 for feasibility study and technical designs. Construction commenced in 2011. The Groblersdal WTW was planned to be upgraded from 18MI/d to 36MI/d as part of the water provision to MW & EBWSS.

The project intends to provide bulk water supply to about 30 543 household in Moutse East and approximately 9 934 household in Moutse West. The project commenced in 2005/2006 for planning and 2010/2011 for construction.

The following villages are planned to benefit from the scheme:

**Moutse East:** Kgobokwane, Walkraal A, Manganeng, Ga-Matlala, Walkraal C, Stompo, Mpheleng, Mabuyeni, Joe Slovo Park, Magakadimeng, Ramaphosa, Moteti A, Theareng, Moteti B, Lusaka, Moteti C, Mzimdala, Ten Morgen, Five Morgen, Elokhishini, Tambo Square, Malaeneng, Ntwane/Mametse, Marapong, Thabakhubedu, Phookwane, Phukukane

**In Moutse West:** Malebitsa, Driefontein, Uitvlugt, Rathoke, Spitspunt, Metsanangwana, Tshikanosi, Makola, Matlerekeng, Mokgwaneng, Mamaneng, Matlala, Ramosheba

### Challenges

- ✚ The continuous legal disputes regarding the professional fees between the Municipality and the Consulting Engineers
- ✚ There were also delays due to late delivery of material and approval of variation orders during the construction period which led to cost implications which affected the project budget.
- ✚ The accumulated delays led to the financial claims by both the Consulting Engineers and the Contractor.
- ✚ Previously disruptions from business forums
- ✚ Vandalised and dilapidated sections along the constructed bulk pipeline

### Proposed Interventions

- ✚ Amicable solutions reached to settle the disputes and Consultant will be paid based on the work done.

- ✚ DWS construction to continue with current phases under implementation
- ✚ Consultant is busy assessing the work done and costing of the outstanding works to be executed
- ✚ DWS Construction to prepare the revised construction programme and submit to the Consultant and SDM for approval
- ✚ Remedial work under conditional assessment project to fix the vandalised and dilapidated sections,

- **Lebalelo Bulk Water Supply Scheme (LBWSS)**

The scheme commenced with infrastructure planning in 2016 for feasibility study and technical designs. Construction commenced in 2017. The scheme depends on Mooihoek WTW as the water source at current capacity of 12MI/d and planned to be upgraded to 24MI/d. The Scheme also depends on ground water (9 boreholes) which yields a total 2.93MI/d.

The following villages are planned to benefit from the scheme:

- Ga Maroga, Driekop, Ga Riba, River cross, Madiseng, Frans, Mandela, Motlolo & Mashamothane
- The above will be completed in 2020/2021 financial year.

### Challenges

- ✓ The construction of the scheme is affected by the social challenges of subcontracting, mainly from the informal business forums within the communities.

### Proposed Interventions

- ✓ The social facilitation must be improved to ensure that projects are not affected.

- **Flag Boshielo Bulk Water Supply Scheme (FB-BWSS)**

Flag Boshielo Scheme supply water to the following four Local Municipalities; Ephraim Mogale, Elias Motsoaledi and Makhuduthamaga which are within the district with a total estimated population of 131 000 and about 156 villages. The main bulk water infrastructure of Flag Boshielo Scheme is the dam, the Water Treatment Works, bulk pipelines of about 387km, 10 pump stations and 88 storage reservoirs.

The dam wall was raised in 2006 to increase the catchment of raw water. The plant was initially designed to serve a population of 100 000, about 56 villages, with a capacity of 8 mega litres per day (MI/d). It is currently being upgraded to 16MI/d due to high demand based on extension of households which affected the basic provision of water services.

**Table 46: The following villages are planned to benefit from the scheme:**

Western Side		
Village	Household	Status
Elandskraal	1310	Benefiting
Morarela/ Hinlopen	524	Benefiting
Mbuzini/ Weltevrede	284	Benefiting

Tsansabela/ Van Der Merwes Kraal	1061	Benefiting
Dicheoung/ Doornpoort	358	Benefiting
<b>Northern Side</b>		
<b>Village</b>	<b>Household</b>	<b>Status</b>
Tompi Seleka Agri College	198	Benefiting
B2 Matseding	208	Benefiting
B3 Phetwane	296	Benefiting
B4 Magalatsane	165	Benefiting
B5 Krokodilheuvel	168	Benefiting
B6 Setlaboswane	118	Benefiting
B7 Thabanapitsi	96	Benefiting
B8 Mmakgwabe	121	Benefiting
Malope	102	Benefiting

<b>Northern East Side</b>		
<b>Village</b>	<b>Household</b>	<b>Status</b>
Mooihoek	563	Benefiting
Tsimanyane	77	Benefiting
Mohlotsi	269	Benefiting
Masanteng	165	Benefiting
Makhutso	169	Benefiting
Serageng	110	Benefiting
Ga-Mampana	112	Benefiting
Semahlakole	73	Benefiting
Sehusane	86	Benefiting
Masehlaneng	37	Benefiting
Maraganeng	12	Benefiting
Maswanyaneng	37	Benefiting
Pitsaneng	6	Benefiting
Ditholong	239	Benefiting
Letebejane	174	Benefiting
Makgatle A	136	Benefiting
Makgatle B	86	Benefiting
Mamphokgo North	386	Benefiting
Mamphokgo South	242	Benefiting
Moganyaka North	280	Benefiting
Moganyaka South	176	Benefiting
Manapsane	374	Benefiting
Leeufontein	1261	Benefiting
Moeding	40	Benefiting
Puleng B	11	Benefiting
Puleng A	10	Benefiting
Dikgalaopeng	65	Benefiting
Ga Mmela	239	Benefiting
Goru	174	Benefiting
Mohlaotwana A& B	136	Benefiting
Serithing	143	Benefiting

Northern East Side		
Village	Household	Status
Mmatilo	86	Benefiting
Mmotwaneng	56	Benefiting
Mabitsi B	29	Benefiting
Vaalbank	22	Benefiting
Mabitsi A	20	Benefiting
Ngwalemong B	27	Benefiting
Ngwalemong A	25	Benefiting
Selebaneng	21	Benefiting
Makhutso	23	Benefiting
Manotelwaneng	34	Benefiting
Ga-Masha	103	Benefiting
Moomane South	130	Benefiting
Klip	17	Benefiting
Mabintwane	117	Benefiting
Greenside	17	Benefiting
Phokwane	255	Benefiting
Mohlarekoma	37	Benefiting
Mogodi	13	Benefiting
Brooklyn	31	Benefiting
Mogaladi	375	Benefiting
Moomane North	28	Benefiting
Sepfoto	7	Benefiting
Goodhope	31	Benefiting
Mathapisa	23	Benefiting
Mathukuthela	11	Benefiting
Zoetvelden	8	Benefiting
Kome	105	Benefiting

### Challenges

- ✚ The above village relies mainly on surface water sources from Flag Boshielo WTW which is under design capacity.
- ✚ The illegal connections are affecting the continues supply of water.
- ✚ The extensions and new settlements are not metered.
- ✚ Lack Water Conservation & Water Demand Management (WC&WDM).

### Proposed Interventions

- ✚ Upgrading and completion of the WTW from 8MI/day to 16MI/day
- ✚ Authorized the illegal connections
- ✚ Budget for extension and new settlements
- ✚ The combination of different water sources can be used to supplement the water supply

- **Mooihoek Bulk Water Supply Scheme (MBWSS)**

The scheme commenced with infrastructure planning in 2005 for feasibility study and technical designs. Construction commenced in 2006 from phase 1 to 4. The scheme depends on Mooihoek WTW as the water source at current capacity of 12MI/d and planned to be upgraded to 24MI/d.

The project intent to provide bulk water supply to about 40 000 household in MBWSS. The project commenced in 2005/2006 for planning and 2007/2008 for construction.

The following villages are planned to benefit from the scheme:

Burgersfort, Dresden, Praktiseer, Manoke, Bothashoek, Alverton, Ga- Motodi & Makgemeng

### Challenges

- ✓ Limitation of funds (RBIG which funding through indirect grant)
- ✓ Illegal connection on the main bulk pipeline

### Proposed Interventions

- ✓ The funding must then be prioritized to ensure the completion of the scheme timeously
  - ✓ Authorize connection on the take-offs from the main pipeline and install water meters.
- **Nebo Plateau Bulk Water Supply Scheme (NP-BWSS): Nkadimeng Water Supply Scheme (NK-WSS)**

The NK-WSS commenced with infrastructure planning in 2006 for feasibility study and technical designs. Construction commenced in 2011. The scheme depends on Nkadimeng WTW at the design capacity of 2.5MI/d. The project intent to provide water supply to 17 400 household 47 villages. The project commenced in 2005/2006 for planning and construction.

### Challenges

- ✚ The Nkadimeng dam yield has dropped
- ✚ The illegal connections in the scheme
- ✚ The capturing of projects by local business forums
- ✚ Lack of operation and maintenance

### Proposed Interventions

- Test the existing boreholes in the area and if suitable, incorporate them into the scheme for augmentation
  - Awareness campaigns required and implementation of by-laws
  - National Treasury needs to clearly provide explanation of the 30% subcontracting.
  - The municipality needs to improve on operation and maintenance
- **Nebo Plateau Bulk Water Supply Scheme (NP-BWSS): Malekana to Jane Furse Bulk Water Supply (ML-WS)**

The ML-WS commenced with infrastructure planning in November 2006 for feasibility study and technical designs. Construction commenced in 2011. The scheme depends on Malekana WTW at the design capacity of 12MI/d and Jane-Furse command reservoir at the storage capacity of 25MI. The project intent to provide water supply to 65 040 household 115 villages. The project commenced in 2010/2011 for planning and construction.

### Challenges

- ✚ Dilapidated on pumps and motors along the pump stations

- ✚ Insufficient electrical capacity
- ✚ Expired contracts of both PSPs

### Proposed Interventions

- ✚ Appoint PSP to perform conditional assessment to complete the commissioning
  - ✚ Notify in writing PSPs of expired contract
  - ✚ Inspect and verify the pipelines and installations to continue testing
  - ✚ Attend to snag list items as per list items
  - ✚ Electro Systems to do electrical tests and commissioning procedures.
  - ✚ Confirm the alignment of pumps and motor bearings are in order.
  - ✚ Test and commission of 25MI Jane Furse Reservoir
  - ✚ Install additional telemetry and instrumentation required for pump protection.
  - ✚ Repair damaged chamber between pump station 1 and the WTW and install new control valve.
- **Nebo Plateau Bulk Water Supply Scheme (NP-BWSS): Vergelegen - Water Supply**

This system is severely over-stretched. An investigation revealed higher than expected usage of water in the Jane Furse area of a total of 5.54 MI/day. The higher than predicted water demand of Jane Furse Low-Cost Housing scheme at 3.45 MI/day can be directly attributable to the installation of water-borne sewerage on this housing scheme. This has had the effect of increasing daily consumption from a basic use of around 25 l/capita to about 200l/capita/day.

The minimum water supply needed to sustain a water-borne system sewerage system is between 60 to 90 l/capita/day. The minimum water supply needed to sustain a water-borne system sewerage system is between 60 to 90 l/capita/day. This highlights the inappropriateness of water-borne sewerage for low-cost housing settlements without an accompanying additional water supply and proper metering and billing to keep usage within limits.

The design capacity of the Vergelegen WTW is 5.12 MI/day and similar to the dam it was also operating well over its design capacity (108%) in 2005 and way beyond the sustainable yield of the dam. This led to the implementation of a temporary Flag Boshielo connection from Phokwane and the De Hoop Dam to Jane Furse (Nebo Plateau) Bulk Water Supply Phase 1.

### Challenges

- ✚ The silting of the Vergelegen dam affecting the raw water supply to the WTW
- ✚ The non-implementation of water conservation and water demand management
- ✚ Illegal connection affects the continues water supply
- ✚ Delays in commissioning of Malekane to Jane-Furse bulk water supply pipeline

### Proposed Interventions:

- ✚ Engagement with DWS to maintain the Dam and reduce the silting
  - ✚ Implementation of Water Conservation and Water Demand Management
  - ✚ Authorize the illegal connection
- **Olifantspoort South Bulk Water Schemes (OSBWS)**

The Olifantspoort South Bulk Water Schemes is currently under implementation at Phase 24 to complete the bulk pipeline and water distribution pipeline. The scheme commences in 2004 at the planning stage and construction commenced in 2008. The above scheme is planned to benefit about 16 275 household once the scheme is completed.

### Challenges

- ✚ The population has increased and affected the availability of water versus the water demand
- ✚ The funding to complete the scheme is not sufficient
- ✚ The villages under Fetakgomo area are experiencing illegal connection which affects the consistency of water supply

### Proposed Interventions

1. The new technical report has been submitted to DWS for the coverage of new settlements and extensions for the southern side of the scheme (Atok areas).
2. The required funding is also reflecting in the technical report under costing of the new infrastructure
3. The authorization of illegal connection, consultation, and awareness to ensure that the water conservation and water demand management is implemented

- **Groblersdal to Luckau Bulk Water Scheme (GL-BWS)**

The Groblersdal-Luckau bulk water scheme (BWS) receives water from the Groblersdal Water Treatment works which abstracts raw water from the Olifants River. Raw water is pumped from the river into the plant for purification. The capacity of the water treatment plant is 22ML/day and is currently being upgraded to 40ML/day. There are also several boreholes which augment water supply from the Groblersdal Water Treatment Works.

The Groblersdal-Luckau BWS receives treated water from the Groblersdal Water treatment Works and directs water to fifteen villages and one semi urban settlement that receives potable water through a network of pumping mains, gravity mains, command reservoirs, service reservoirs and pump stations within Elias Motsoaledi local Municipality in the Sekhukhune District Municipality. Most of the villages are located north-east of Groblersdal town adjacent the road from Groblersdal town to Nebo.

The plant is also designed to pump water to Groblersdal town and the Moutse bulk water supply scheme, these 2 schemes are outside the scope of this study. The above scheme is planned to benefit about 19505 household once completed.

### Challenges

- ✚ Ageing of old asbestos bulk pipelines and associated system components;
- ✚ Rapid growth of villages exhausting the system capacity;
- ✚ Pipeline isolation valves on most of the pipelines are not effective due to ageing;
- ✚ Vandalism of critical system components;
- ✚ Inadequate O&M budgets and operational teams to maintain infrastructure;
- ✚ Extensive water loss due to leakages in the reticulation;
- ✚ Unauthorized illegal connections on rising mains;



- ✚ Inadequate bulk water supply from the Groblersdal Water Treatment Work;
- ✚ Inadequate bulk infrastructure such as storage facilities and transmission pipeline;

### Proposed Interventions

- ✚ The upgrading of bulk water pipeline and replace of asbestos pipes
- ✚ Modification and refurbishment of the Groblersdal WTW clear water pump station to reduce the effect of flooding
- ✚ Additional water storages and upgrading of electrical transformers

- **Cabornatites to Zaaiplaas Sub – Bulk Water Schemes**

The Bulk Water Scheme commenced in 2010 for planning and actual construction started in 2011. The scheme is dependable on the completion of 3.8MI command reservoir and pumping main pipeline from Spitskop catchment (small dam). The scheme will cover the total of 1822 household once completed

### Challenges

- ✚ The above village rely mainly alternative water sources such as boreholes and well fields which has limited yields to meet the water demand.
- ✚ The incomplete command reservoir affects the whole sub-scheme to function
- ✚ The construction of distribution reservoirs and supply water pipelines are practically completed and not functioning due to non-completion of command reservoir

### Proposed Interventions

- ✚ Completion of command reservoir must be prioritized and completed.
- ✚ The pumping main water supply pipeline and the pump station be completed
- ✚ The combination of different water sources can be used to supplement the water supply

### Water Services Operations and Maintenance

- The National Treasury requirement is 8% spend on asset value
- SDM has a draft Operational and Maintenance Plan dated April 2018, which will provide Asset Management Support.
- Reliable water service delivery is a major issue for revenue collection.

### Water Challenges and interventions

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unavailability of surface and ground water (drought affecting dams and Boreholes)</li> <li>• Illegal water connections</li> <li>• Community high expectations/lack of information to the communities (Possible service delivery protests)</li> <li>• Mushrooming of Business fora in all communities.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conjunctive use of ground and surface water sources. Implementation of Water Conservation and Water Demand Management (WCWDM), continues ground water management.</li> <li>• Community awareness campaigns and Implementation of By-Laws</li> <li>• Improvement of Customer Services for effective communication</li> </ul>

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Encroachment on the existing infrastructure (Servitudes, Theft, vandalism and unauthorised connections)</li> <li>• Water Use License approval by DWS</li> <li>• Delays by Eskom to connect electricity and energise Projects</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implementation of approved SDM (Learner Contractor Development Programme and Small Business Enterprise)</li> <li>• Continuous engagement with DWS to approve the Water Use Licences</li> <li>• Engagement with ESKOM to prioritise the energising of projects with the planned period of construction</li> </ul>

### 2.5.2. Sanitation

The provision of sanitation in Sekhukhune also faces considerable challenges at present. The situation is more of a concern that it was the case with water. Only 22% of Sekhukhune households receive above RDP standards sanitation services. The sanitation backlog is primarily within the rural villages, comprising 78% of households without adequate sanitation.

The SDM has different households that use different types of toilet facilities. Almost all towns in the district use flushing toilets while in the rural areas there are few households that use flushing toilets. The rest of the population in the rural areas of the district use pit latrines.

The following tables provide the history of sanitation access by the households within the district. The tables include Census 2011, Community Survey 2016 and IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750 for 2018.

Table 47: Sanitation Type

MUNICIPALITY	Flush/chemical toilets			Pit toilets			Bucket			No toilets		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	1 708	3 758	4 067	15 789	17 162	25 328	151	121	611	1 892	3 147	1 677
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	2 883	3 786	7 792	36 377	38 802	47 632	274	375	460	2 672	2 516	2 680
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	1 274	2 176	3 009	38 532	41 918	58 561	188	372	224	9 545	8 512	2 552
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	1 687	4 986	7820	37 064	48314	88 699	267	445	1 314	23 370	22 464	8 213
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	7 552	14 706	22 687	127 762	146 196	220 221	881	1 313	2 609	34 528	33 070	13 510

Source: Census 2011

Table 48: Household access to sanitation considering 2016 community survey

Municipality	Flush/chemical toilets		Other	
	2011	2016	2011	2016
Fetakgomo Tubatse	7 820	13 802	98 231	111 661
Makhuduthamaga	3 009	3 009	62 208	61 760
Ephraim Mogale	4 067	4 213	28 217	29 723
Elias Motsoaledi	7 792	10 209	52 459	56 149
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>22 687</b>	<b>31 233</b>	<b>241 114</b>	<b>259 293</b>

*Census (2011) and Community Survey (2016)*

According to the table below, Sekhukhune District Municipality has a total number of 37 560 flush toilets (12.43% of total households), 65 898 Ventilation Improved Pit (VIP) (21.82% of total households) and 185 631 (61.45%) of total household's pit toilets. SDM is currently implementing a massive sanitation programme and providing Ventilated Improved Pit latrines (VIP's) to various households. In the 2016/17, 2017/18 & 2018/19 financial year's 25 395 VIP Sanitation units were built across the district as part of providing communities with sanitation.

Table 49: Households by Type of Sanitation

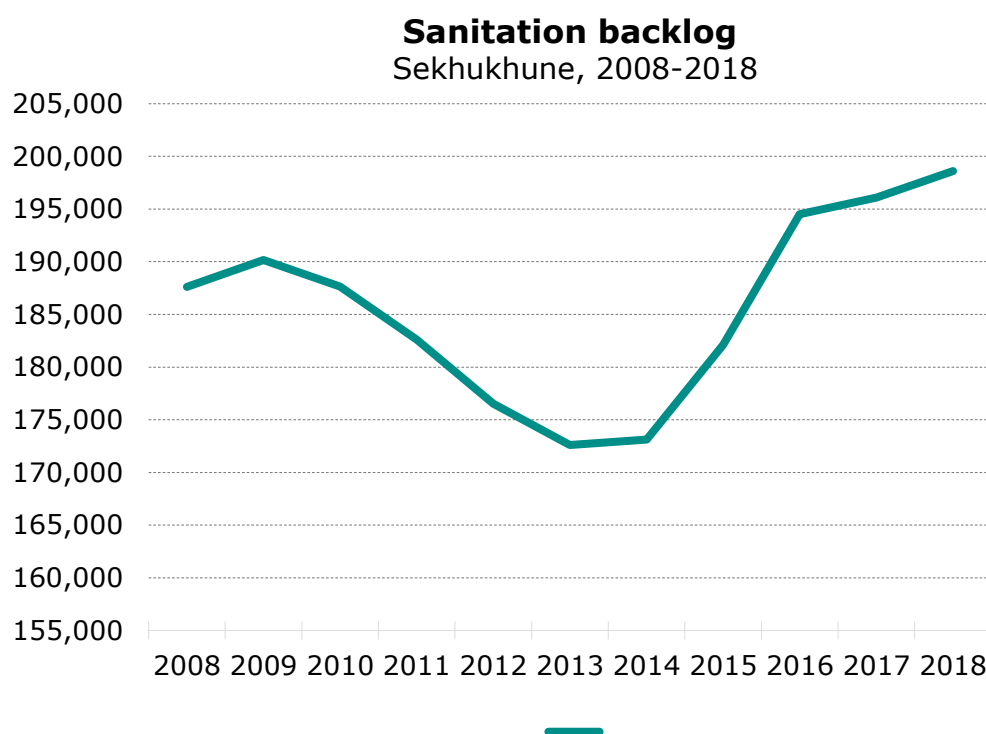
	Flush toilet	Ventilation Improved Pit (VIP)	Pit toilet	No toilet	Total
Ephraim Mogale	4,080	10,600	18,500	1,350	35,000
Elias Motsoaledi	14,700	7,730	42,900	2,330	67,900
Makhuduthamaga	4,140	13,800	50,600	1,360	70,000
Greater Tubatse/Fetakgomo	14,700	33,800	73,700	5,940	129,000
<b>Total Sekhukhune</b>	<b>37,560</b>	<b>65,898</b>	<b>185,631</b>	<b>10,983</b>	<b>302,066</b>

*Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750*

The table above shows that the local municipality within Sekhukhune with the highest number of flush toilets is Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality with 14 700 or a share of 39.09% of the flush toilets within Sekhukhune. The local municipality with the lowest number of flush toilets is Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality with a total of 4 080 or a share of 10.85% of the total flush toilets within Sekhukhune District Municipality.

When it comes to sanitation backlog (number of households without hygienic toilets) over time, it can be seen that in 2008 the number of Households without any hygienic toilets in Sekhukhune District Municipality was 188 000, this increased annually at a rate of 0.57% to 199 000 in 2018.

Figure 29: Sanitation Backlog



*Source: IHS Markit Regional eExplorer version 1750*

The total number of household backlogs within Sekhukhune District Municipality increased at an average annual rate of 2.49% from 2008 to 2018, which is higher than the annual increase of 2.00% in the number of households in South Africa. With high in-migration into a region, the number of households increases, putting additional strain on household infrastructure.

### Challenges and Interventions

Challenges	Interventions
Financial Constraints to address the sanitation backlogs.	Sanitation projects are implemented annually based on the MIG allocation to reduce the backlogs  Provision of honey suckers to existing sanitation toilets as part of operation and maintenance
Poor sanitation and lack of hygienic practices and storage facilities enable transmission of water-borne germs.	Health and Hygienic training and awareness campaigns are implemented during project implementation and after completion

### 2.5.3. Municipal Health Services and Environmental Management

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No: 108 of 1996) allocates Municipal Health Services (MHS) as a Local Government function under Part B of Schedule 4, section 156(1)(a). On the other hand, the National Health Act, 2003, defines Municipal Health Services (MHS) as follows:

- Waste management
- Water quality monitoring
- Health surveillance of premises
- Surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases excluding immunisations
- Vector control
- Environmental pollution control
- Disposal of the dead
- Food control
- Chemical safety

### 2.5.3.1. Waste Management

In terms of section 84 of the Municipal structures Act, 117 of 1998 section 84(1)(iii) a district municipality can only be involved with a waste disposal facility where that facility will involve /include more than local municipality in the district. Waste Management forms an important part of basic service delivery in Sekhukhune District Municipality. The district has developed the Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP). Refuse removal services is being provided mostly in urban centers, townships and recently in some rural areas within the district.

Waste recycling in the district is taking a good shape since the inception of Sekhukhune District Waste Management Forum constituted by various National and Provincial government departments, Local Municipalities and chaired by Sekhukhune District Municipality.

Involvement of private sector e.g., PRASA, PETCO, Collect a Can etc. enables effective recycling of waste and discussions are underway for local recyclers to reclaim recyclables from industrial premises.

To enhance waste recycling within the district, Sekhukhune District Recycling Forum has been established. The district has introduced School Recycling project wherein about 108 schools are participating in waste separation at source for recycling purposes. In support of Small Micro Medium Enterprises (SMMEs), recyclers are collecting recyclables from participating schools.

Furthermore, separation of office wastepaper for recycling done at SDM Bareki Mall offices and this has been encouraged to government departments within Sekhukhune District. The district view waste recycling as a reliable measure to waste management.

Table 50: Landfill sites in Sekhukhune District Municipality

MUNICIPALITY	DISPOSAL SITE	PERMITTED/ NOT AND PERMIT No.	ACCESS	COMPACTION	COMMENTS
<b>SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY</b>					
Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality	Rossenekal Landfill Site	Permitted as a GCB+ Permit no: 12/4/10-A/15/GS1	The site is well fenced with a lockable gate	No compaction done	Waste is disposed-off on an unlined

MUNICIPALITY	DISPOSAL SITE	PERMITTED/ NOT AND PERMIT No.	ACCESS	COMPACTION	COMMENTS
			Access is restricted during working hours only		area and there is no operation and maintenance of the facility.
	Hlogotlou Transfer Station	Licensed as a GCB- Licence No: 12/14/10-A/1/GS2	Transfer station adjacent to the old one site is developed with palisade fence and lockable gate	Not operational	The facility is revamped but waste is still dumped and burnt at the old site.
	Groblersdal Landfill Site	Permitted as a GMB. Licence no: 12/4/10-B/10/M3	The site is developed. Fenced with lockable gates. Access restricted to working hours.	Compaction daily	Operational
Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality	Marble Hall Landfill Site	Permitted as a G:M:B- 16/2/7/B300/D58/Z1	The site is well fenced with a lockable gate Access is restricted during working hours only	Compaction done but not effective due to the type of machinery used (bulldozer)	Waste compaction and covering must be done on daily basis  Waste reporting
Makhuduthamag a Local Municipality	Jane Furse Landfill Site	Permitted as a GCB-	The site is well fenced with lockable gate There are security personnel on site	Compaction of waste is done on daily basis	Operational
Fetakgomo-Tubatse Local Municipality	Burgersfort Landfill Site	Permit no: 16/2/7/B400/D66/Z1/P292A1	Fenced with lockable gate	Compaction done daily but the facility has reached capacity	Applied for closure licence
	Malogeng Landfill Site	Permitted as a GSB- Permit No:12/9/11/P67	The site is well fenced with a lockable gate Access is restricted during working days only	Compaction daily	Operational
	Mphanama Landfill Site	Permitted as a GSB- Permit No:12/9/11/P60	Not developed	Not developed	The licence will expire if construction is not undertaken

Source: LEDET (2019)

### 2.5.3.2. Environmental Impact Assessments and landfill sites

Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET) had assessed status of Environmental Impact Assessments and Landfill sites in the district. They are reflected below.

Table 51: Environmental Impact Assessments (EIA)

Municipality	2016-2017			2017-2018			2018-2019		
	No of EIAs received	No of EIAs approved	No of EIAs rejected	No of EIAs received	No of EIAs approved	No of EIAs rejected	No of EIAs received	No of EIAs approved	No of EIAs rejected
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	07	05	01	19	12	0	24	12	0
Ephraim Mogale	07	03	0	04	03	0	5	5	0
Elias Motsoaledi	02	04	0	03	03	0	3	2	0
Makhuduthamaga	02	04	0	03	02	0	5	5	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>01</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>37</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: LEDET (2019)

Table 52: Number of licensed landfill sites.

Municipality	Total number of landfill sites	Number licensed	Number not licensed	Number permitted (where permits were issued)	Number of transfer stations per municipality
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	2	2 (Burgersfort Full and licensed for closure)	0	0	0
Ephraim Mogale	1	1	0	0	0
Elias Motsoaledi	2	2	0	0	2 (One not developed)
Makhuduthamaga	1	1	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: LEDET (2019)

### Challenges and Interventions

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Illegal dumping and littering of waste</li> <li>• Waste collection services not provided to most areas in the district</li> <li>• Landfill sites not properly managed</li> <li>• No regional Landfill site owned by the district</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Awareness on waste management (Reduction, Recycling and Reuse).</li> <li>• Provide waste collection Services.</li> </ul>



## **Recycling of waste**

Recycling of waste makes meaningful contribution to the reduction of waste quantities that end up buried at landfill sites thereby reducing its air space. This is in line with the National waste Management Strategy (NWMS) published under the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) as amended.

The strategy puts recycling as a first goal to be achieved by public, private and individuals. Recycling can be more beneficial in cutting waste management costs if waste separation at source can be advocated and it also create employment opportunities and address poverty challenges.

Recycling at source enhances quality of recyclables as it minimizes the contamination of recyclables. However, the limited recycling infrastructure for separation at source and diversion of waste streams to material recovery and buy back centres is still a major hindrance to effective recycling.

Despite numerous resource challenges like lack of recycling bins, bailing machines, transportation etc recycling seemed to be a workable solution to waste as there has been an increase of waste pickers who plays a vital role in waste recovery and reclamation.

## **Legal requirement and obligations**

Section 16 of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) (NEMWA) provides that a holder of waste must, within the holder's power, take all reasonable measures to avoid the generation of waste and where such generation cannot be avoided to minimize the toxicity and amount of waste that are generated.

Government Notice N0, 718 Gazette No, 32368 provides that waste recycling is a listed activity and no person may commence the listed activity unless the competent authority has granted an authorization.

The NEMWA provides that the Minister must, within two years of the date of the Act, by notice in the *Gazette* establish a national waste management strategy which among others will give guidance on raising awareness regarding the impact of waste on health and the environment and the benefits of recycling in accordance with the waste management hierarchy and also the approaches for securing compliance with the requirements of the Act.

## **Recycling within the district**

Waste recycling in the district is taking a good shape since the inception of Sekhukhune District Waste Management Forum constituted by various National and Provincial government departments, Local Municipalities and chaired by Sekhukhune District Municipality.

Involvement of private sector e.g., PRASA, PETCO, Collect a Can etc enables effective recycling of waste and discussions are underway for local recyclers to reclaim recyclables from industrial premises.

To enhance waste recycling within the district, Sekhukhune District Recycling Forum has been launched by the Executive Mayor during Provincial Recycling Day on the 28 September 2017 and local fora are established.

The district has introduced School Recycling project wherein about 108 schools are participating in waste separation at source for recycling purposes. In support of in support of Small Micro Medium Enterprises (SMMEs), recyclers are collecting recyclables from participating schools.

Furthermore, separation of office wastepaper for recycling done at SDM Bareki Mall offices and this has been encouraged to government departments within Sekhukhune District.

The district view waste recycling as a reliable measure to waste management however challenges faced by the recycling in general are among the following:

- Lack of resources such as scales, bailing machines, recycling bins
- Lack of Infrastructure
- Vandalism
- Lack of knowledge on administration
- Lack of ownership and willingness
- High expectations
- Lack of market within the province
- Haulage distance to the market
- Recyclers not working as a team and form cooperatives
- Personal protective clothing
- Lack of basic services by local authorities

Pic 1: No proper storage area at Thabampshe Recycling Project



### **Socio-economic impact**

Socio-economic benefits from waste recycling in the district is gradually growing as recycling corporative are on the increase and job opportunities are realised. Small quantities of collected recyclables sold to various recycling companies generate income can feed families.

The bigger picture in recycling is to develop buy-back centres in each local municipality to fulfil the objectives of the NWMS that seek to do away with landfilling rather waste recovery for

recycling. There are projects underway initiated and supported by the District Municipality focusing on converting waste to energy in Mamphokgo and Tompi Seleka.

Other examples of recycling projects are composting of wet waste generated in schools for ploughing of vegetables and landscaping. Sekhukhune District is water-stricken area, rainwater harvesting and water conservation are advocated to communities.

The municipality encourages sustainable and renewable clean energy projects for the benefit of communities.

### Summary

- The collection of materials for recycling reduces littering and minimizes the negative impact of litter on the environment.
- Creates a source of income for the unemployed who operates as collectors.
- The use of recyclable metal rather than raw materials to make products will result in less water and air pollution during the manufacturing process.
- Collection of recyclables result in less waste going to the landfill sites which saves scarce landfill air space.
- Separation at source must be encouraged as this practice will assist in lowering the contamination of recyclable thus resulting in less water used to clean the materials.

### Summary of Challenges

- Outdated Integrated Waste Management Plan
- Refuse removal do not cover most villages
- The district is still looking for available land for regional landfill sites
- Informal disposal of waste e.g., disposable nappies along rivers and roads
- Non-compliance of existing landfill sites in accordance with permit conditions.
- Insufficient budget for waste management in all Local Municipalities
- Limited awareness of communities on good waste management practices

#### 2.5.3.3. Water quality monitoring and water supply in the district

Water scarcity is a huge developmental challenge within the Sekhukhune District and constrains both economic and social activity in the area. The issue is a manifestation of climate variability. However, it is also the result of a number of other factors, which include insufficient and variable rainfall, inequitable water resource management and the absence of drinking water, bulk water and irrigation infrastructure that would aid the distribution of water to rural villages. The quality of this scarce resource (domestic water supply) is still a challenge that Environmental Health Practitioners needs to monitor closely and urgently.

### Challenges and Interventions

Challenges	Interventions
➤ The Sekhukhune district is a water- scarce Municipality.	➤ Taking water samples and mapping water sources.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Some communities still using water from unreliable water source resulting in water borne disease outbreaks.</li> <li>➤ Contamination of water sources</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Lobbying to have accredited laboratory for both chemical and bacteriological analysis within the district.</li> <li>➤ Providing awareness on water disease, water purification methods and ways to keep water source clean</li> <li>➤ Promoting water harvesting</li> </ul>
---	--

#### 2.5.3.4. Health surveillance of premises

This involves the identification, monitoring and evaluation of health risks, nuisances and hazards and instituting remedial and preventative measures.

- Residential, Business and Public premises are regularly monitored to identify and evaluate health risks and hazards and institute remedial and preventative measures.
- Environmental Impact Health Assessments.
- Assessing aspects such as ventilation and indoor air quality, lighting, moisture –proofing, thermal quality, structural safety and floor space.
- Ensuring the abatement and prevention of any condition on any premises which is likely to constitute a nuisance or health hazard.
- Assessment of an overcrowded, dirty or unsatisfactory condition in any residential, commercial, industrial or other occupied premises.

#### Challenges and Interventions

Challenges	Interventions
1 A database of all these facilities have to be reviewed and this needs a lot of human and financial resources.	Ongoing collection and updating the current data base
2 Mushrooming of spaza shops within the district	

#### 2.5.3.5. Surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases excluding immunisations

This function involves the identification, monitoring and prevention of any disease which can be transmitted directly or indirectly from any animal or through any agent to any person or from any person suffering therefrom or who is a carrier to any other person. The district conducts health and hygiene promotion in the prevention of communicable diseases.

Challenges	Interventions
Some of these diseases are not reported to the Environmental Health Practitioners, this make is difficult for the district to prioritise on diseases that are prevalent in the district.	Request information from the district co-ordinator monthly

### **2.5.3.6. Environmental pollution control/ management**

Across the globe, environmental stresses and major changes in climate conditions are influencing the lives and livelihoods of ordinary people and communities everywhere. This is no less true of the Sekhukhune District. The recent draught in Sekhukhune, for instance, is widely regarded as the result of the much publicized El Niño and La Niña phenomena (Ziervogel et al, 2016).

The increasingly important role that climate plays in the Sekhukhune area has recently been highlighted in some few studies. What is becoming even more evident is that rainfall patterns in the district are highly variable – a situation that tends to disrupt a wide range of socio-economic activities in the area such as rain-fed crop production, often with very little warning.

Key to Environmental Pollution Control aspects will be to manage the following using some of the Municipal Health Services By-laws to be promulgated. The first two have been discussed in other function above: -

#### *Land/Soil Pollution:*

- Landfill/dumping and burning of waste, farming, mining, factories, etc.

#### *Water Pollution:*

- Mining and mining activities, industrial wastewater, municipal wastewater, agricultural wastewater, unprotected landfill sites, illegal dumping, etc.

#### *Air Pollution: Air quality Management Functions*

### **2.5.3.7. Compliance monitoring**

The municipality AQO also has compliance monitoring and reporting requirements regarding AQMPs that are consistent with requirements at national and provincial levels. Compliance monitoring at municipal level deals specifically with AELs and uses licences as the primary means to ensure compliance with ambient air quality standards. The Atmospheric Impact Reports are an additional means of monitoring compliance and can be requested of any individual that is under reasonable doubt of contravening the AQA or causing negative impacts, as well as within the context of a licensing process. In addition, the municipality IS also responsible for compliance monitoring for dust generating activities as contemplated in the national Dust Control Regulations, as well as compliance monitoring with respect to any notice issued in terms of section 23 of AQA.

### **2.5.3.8. Ambient air quality monitoring**

Sekhukhune district Municipality has a continuous ambient air monitoring station situated at Dilokong Hospital, it is measuring the following criteria pollutants Sulphur Dioxide, Carbon Monoxide, Nitrogen Oxides, Ozone and Particulate Matter <sup>2.5 and 10</sup>. Ambient air monitoring is an integral part of an effective air quality management system.

The district has developed an Integrated Environmental Management Plan (DIEMP) that needs to be approved by Council and there is an Air Quality Management Plan in place that is being reviewed to update things that have changed. The district has two (2) authorised Environmental Management Inspectors in its territory to preserve the biodiversity and its natural resources and

there is a need for more due to vast growing developments within the district. The district will need to have 116 Environmental Health Practitioners to effectively deal with Environmental Health issues as benchmarked and illustrated in the section 78 Process of the Municipal systems Act, 32 of 2000 conducted by the Municipality. The resources for both Environmental Inspectors and Environmental Health Practitioners are still to be provided.

#### **2.5.3.9. Disposal of the dead**

In terms of section 84 of the Municipal structures Act 117 of 1998 section 84 (1) (l) a district municipality can only be involved with a cemetery where the cemetery will involve /include a major proportion of the Local municipalities in the district. However, District Environmental Health Practitioners will be responsible for as mandated by the district By-law:

- Controlling, restricting, or prohibiting the business of an undertaker or embalmer, mortuaries and other places or facilities for the storage of dead bodies. Issuing certificates of Competency to Funeral Undertakers premises complying with legislation.
- Monitoring practices at cemeteries, crematoria and other facilities used for the disposal of dead bodies.
- Managing, controlling, and monitoring exhumations and reburials or disposal of remains.
- Investigating and performing pauper burials

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most existing cemeteries are not well sited as they are placed near water sources.</li> <li>• Some communities still don't consult the local municipalities when choosing new cemetery sites.</li> <li>• There are no sanitary facilities and waste storages in cemeteries</li> </ul>	<p>Create awareness on the location of cemeteries and provision of Sanitary facilities</p>

#### **2.5.3.10. Food control**

Food Control is described by the World Health Organization (WHO) as a mandatory regulatory activity of enforcement by National or Local authorities to provide consumer protection and ensure that all foods during production, handling, storage, processing and distribution are safe, wholesome and for human consumption; conform to quality and safety requirements and are honestly and accurately labelled as prescribed by law.

The district monitors and evaluate Food control in formal (food retailers, open air markets, catering organisations etc.) and informal premises (vendors and hawkers).

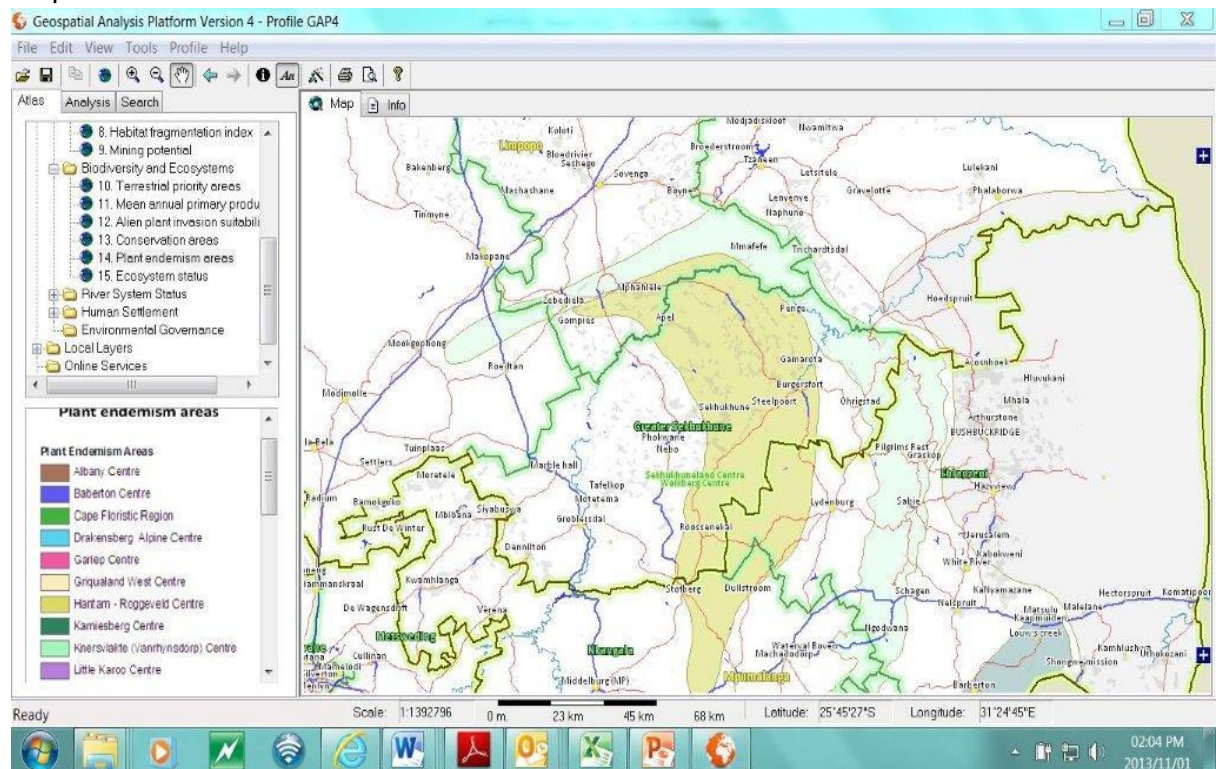
Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Municipalities still appoint caterers and other food handlers without certificate of acceptability from the District Environmental Health Practitioners at minimal revenue to the district.</li> <li>• Mushrooming of small shops in residential homes.</li> <li>• Impersonation of EHPs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Train Municipalities and caterers on the importance of having certificate of acceptability COA.</li> <li>• Requesting a zoning Certificates for shops</li> <li>• Producing the SDM employee card</li> </ul>

### 2.5.3.11. Biodiversity

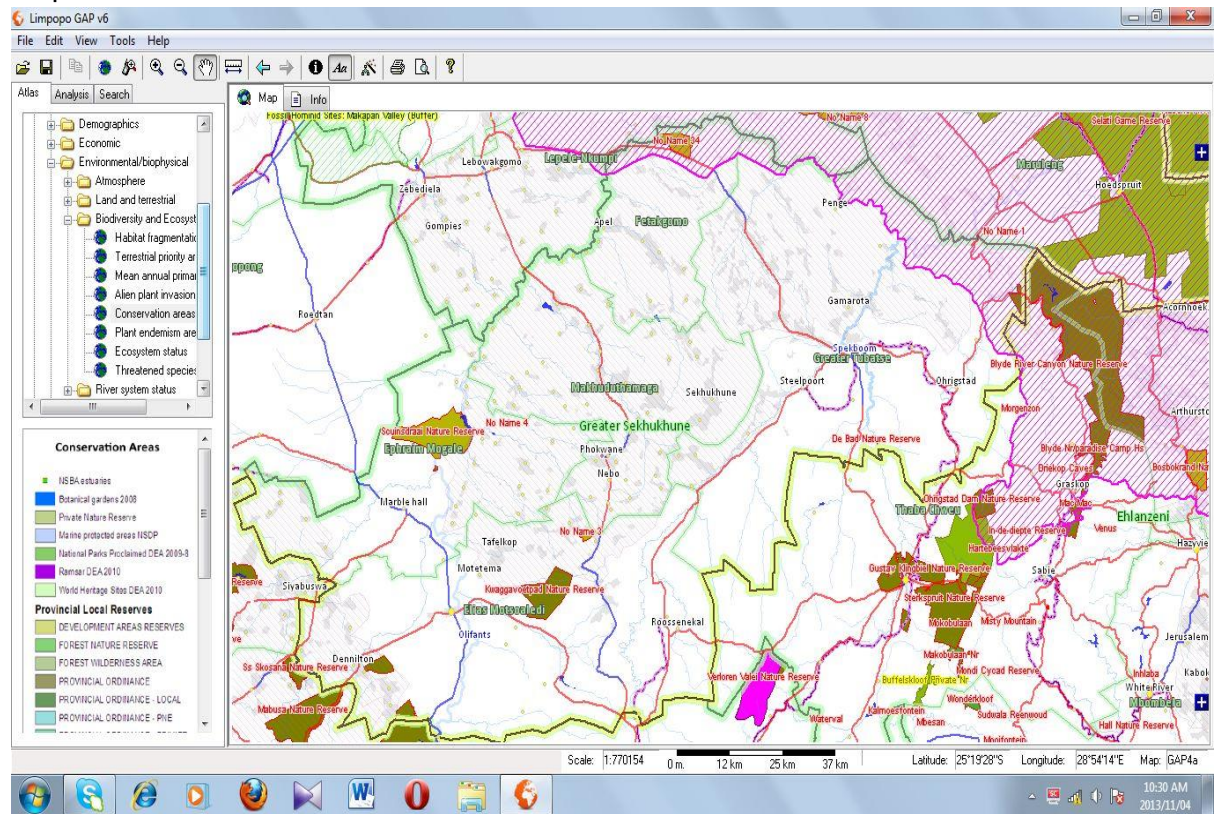
- **Topography and geology**

The district is characterised by heavy metal soils that are derived from predominating pyroxite, norite, and anorthosite formations. It forms part of the Bushveld Igneous Complex that has ultramafic layers.

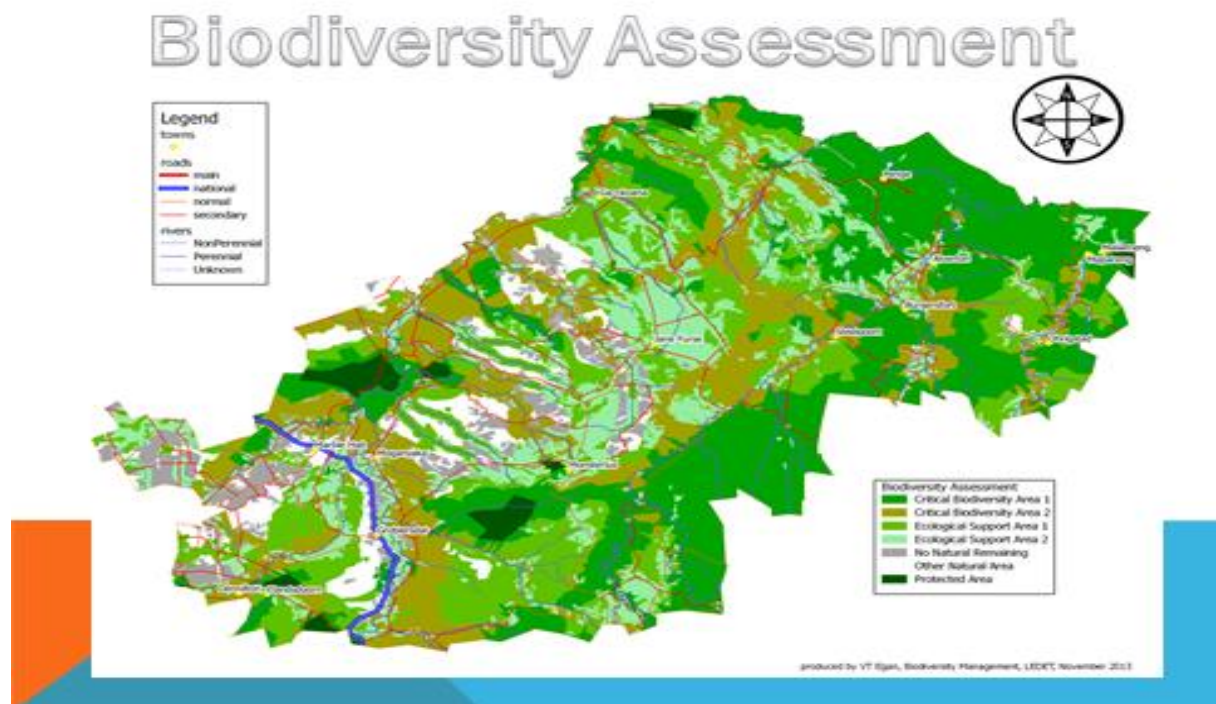
Map 09: Plants Endemism



Map 10: Conservation areas



Map 11: Biodiversity Assessment



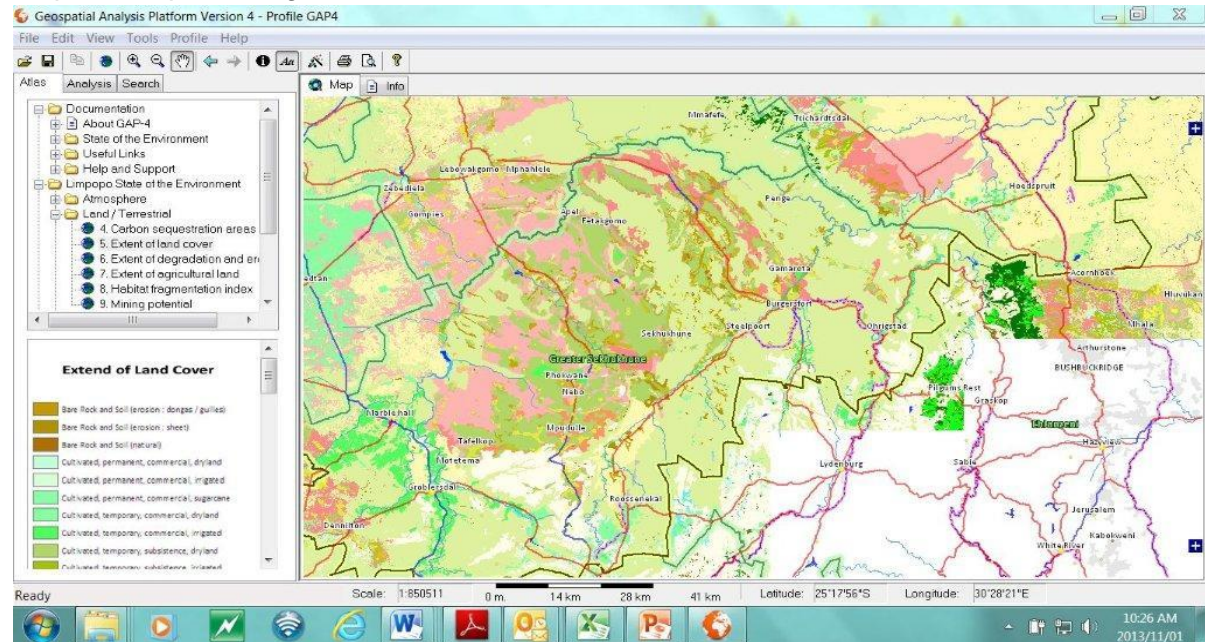
- **Extent of land cover**

The land-cover map shows that Elias Motsoaledi Ephraim Mogale, Fetakgomo Tubatse and Makhuduthamaga are dominated by the natural grassland thicket, bushveld, bush clumps and



high fynbos. In addition to the above mentioned extend of land-cover, Ephraim Mogale is bordered by the degraded forest and woodland, cultivated, subsistence dry land and forest plantations around Motseleope (Mining). There are also mining quarries in Fetakgomo Tubatse (Atok area), Makhuduthamaga and in Greater Tubatse.

Map 12: Map showing the extend of land cover



- **The role of biodiversity in Sekhukhune**

From the human viewpoint, the role of biodiversity in agricultural and natural ecosystems is to ensure food security and sustainable agricultural production through direct or indirect provision of food for humans and their livestock, provision of raw materials and services, such as fibre, fuel and pharmaceuticals and the maintenance of ecosystem functions. However, there is the risk in over-utilized (whether through overgrazing, mismanagement, increased cropping, mining etc.) systems that the provision of these natural products and services becomes compromised due to unsustainable harvesting of resources.

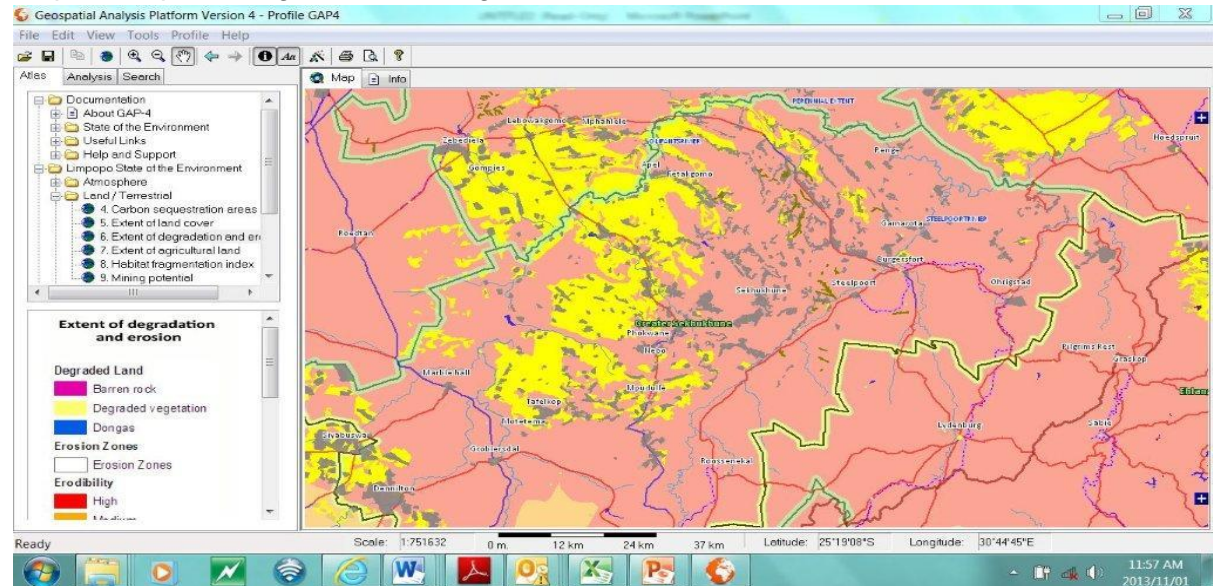
So far more than 2,200 species of vascular plants have been reported in the natural vegetation of the region (Siebert et al. 2002). Close to 70% of the plants in Sekhukhune are herbaceous species of which a large number are used directly for medicinal or cultural purposes or are edible. Because this has until recently been a botanically under-explored area, new endemic plant taxa and biogeographically important species are still being discovered regularly.

- **Risks to the plant diversity in the Sekhukhune land region**

The Sekhukhune region is rich in ultramafic-induced endemic plant species, which makes it a treasure house for biodiversity. Unfortunately, the substrate to which these plants are restricted is being used for mining. At present mining activities occupy approximately 15% of Sekhukhune, causing some endemic species such as *Melhania randii* (Figure 6) to be threatened with extinction. There are 58 endemic and approximately another 70 near-endemic plant taxa in Sekhukhune, mostly belonging to the two families Liliaceae (sensu lato) and Euphorbiaceae which have immense importance in traditional medicine.

Communal lands occupy at least 35% of Sekhukhune and belong to a population of mainly impoverished people, with subsistence farming and use of natural resources as their only means of survival. Cash income is predominantly from work in mines and on farms.

Map13: Map showing extends of degradation & erosion



- **Grazing**

The major source of plant production in grasslands, for grazing and grain for human consumption, is natural grasses. In many natural grasslands, biomass is attributed to relatively few species, even though many more may be present and the identity of the dominant species affects the quality of grazing. Heavily utilized grasslands had much lower species richness than pristine grassland. There were far more grasses which had a greater aerial cover in the pristine areas and most were of good grazing value; over-utilized areas were characterised by unpalatable grasses with lower cover.

Many grasses have good grazing value and others perform a multitude of useful ecological functions, for example to bind soil. Grass species composition is also an indicator of vegetation condition.

- **Grasses found in over-utilized grassland**

*Aristida ascensionist* is very unpalatable, grows in disturbed areas and is one of the commonest grasses in degraded parts of Sekhukhune. It performs a useful ecological function as a pioneer which colonises degraded areas thereby reducing erosion.

### 2.5.3.12. Climate Change

There are various ways in which climate change will impact on human health. Projected increases in storm events may result in increased risk of drowning, injuries and population displacement impacts. A changing climate will also result in increased water borne and communicable diseases as increasing air and water temperatures may create favourable conditions for the incubation and

transmission of waterborne diseases. Projected temperature increases will also impact negatively on the young and elderly. People working in the informal sector usually work outdoors and will therefore be particularly vulnerable to increases in temperature.

Table 53: Climate Change implications

No	Sector	implications
1	Human Health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water borne and communicable diseases (especially bilharzia)</li> <li>• Vector and Rodent-Borne Diseases</li> <li>• Increased air pollution</li> </ul>
2	Agriculture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change in grain (maize, wheat &amp; barley) production</li> <li>• Change in deciduous fruit production</li> <li>• Change in other crop production areas</li> <li>• Increased exposure to pests such as eldana, chilo and codling moth</li> <li>• Increased risks to livestock (cattle and pigs)</li> <li>• Reduced food security Increased heat stress</li> </ul>
3	Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decreased quality of drinking water</li> <li>• Decreased water quality in ecosystem due to increased concentrations of effluent and salt concentrations</li> <li>• Increased impacts of flooding from litter blocking sewer system</li> </ul>
4	Biodiversity and Environment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Loss of Grasslands</li> </ul>
5	Human Settlements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increased isolation of rural communities and displacement</li> </ul>

### Water borne and communicable diseases

- ✚ Natural disasters such as floods, hurricanes, and earthquakes pose an increased risk of contamination of water supplies with disease-causing agents. In turn, the health of communities relying on water from surface sources, and those with poor sanitation is at greater risk of, for example, diarrhoeal diseases, typhoid fever and Hepatitis A & E.
- ✚ Severe or repeated episodes of diarrhoea may lead to malnutrition and lowered immunity, with increased susceptibility to other infectious diseases.
- ✚ Floods may cause displacement and increased demand for safe water, sanitation and housing. Lack of proper accommodation will lead to overcrowding. Overcrowding is one of the environmental factors that influence the spread of diseases such as meningitis and influenza.

### Vector and rodent borne diseases

Malaria is a life-threatening disease caused by parasites that are transmitted to people through the bites of infected mosquitoes. Malaria affects the northern part of Limpopo Province and affects around 10% of the population. A change in the climate could increase the geographical distribution of malaria in the province. High rainfall has also been associated with vector-borne diseases such as yellow fever, Malaria and Chikungunya.

The weather affects the distribution of rodent-borne diseases, which may also be associated with flooding. Rodent infestations are already a growing public health concern in many urban areas. There is a particular need to focus on rodent infestation prevention through universal service delivery such as ensuring the integrity of sewerage systems and efficient waste disposal services and domestic hygiene programmes. The latter is required also to prevent the indiscriminate use of pesticides in domestic settings. Of considerable concern in respect of an increase in the distribution of disease vectors is the likely increase in the use of pesticides, and the concomitant risk of an increase in poisoning, as well as longer-term health effects of both vector- and rodent-borne diseases.

### 2.5.3.13. Air pollution

Increased exposure to South African Criteria pollutants (ozone, Nitrogen oxides, carbon monoxide, Particulate matter 10 and Sulphur dioxide) is a particular air quality concern associated with climate change. Persons with respiratory diseases such as asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, allergic rhinitis and bronchitis are most vulnerable, as are the elderly and young children. Stricter pollution control, air quality monitoring and respiratory health surveillance are important in this regard.

Actions to be taken:

- ✚ Given the degree of uncertainty associated with the consequences of climate change, it is imperative that public health, monitoring and surveillance systems be reviewed and strengthened to increase their ability to detect climate change and health trends at an early stage.
- ✚ Strengthen information and knowledge of linkages between disease and climate change.
- ✚ Educational campaign shall inform and encourage citizens to adopt actions and behaviours that minimise environmental damage and prepare individuals to cope with effects of climate change and an increase in the frequency of disasters or service disruptions. Such campaigns may include encouragement of a culture of disaster preparedness.
- ✚ Identify communities that are vulnerable
- ✚ Develop mechanisms that will enable vulnerable communities to respond to the spread of vector borne diseases.
- ✚ Improve the bio-safety of the existing strategies that control the spread of vector borne diseases to incorporate the effects of the changing climate.
- ✚ Commission reliable air pollution monitoring systems to alert communities on atmospheric conditions and possible accidents of legislated standards.

### Planned awareness campaigns on waste management (littering of waste along the roads) for 2020-2021

Table 54: Awareness campaigns for 2020-21

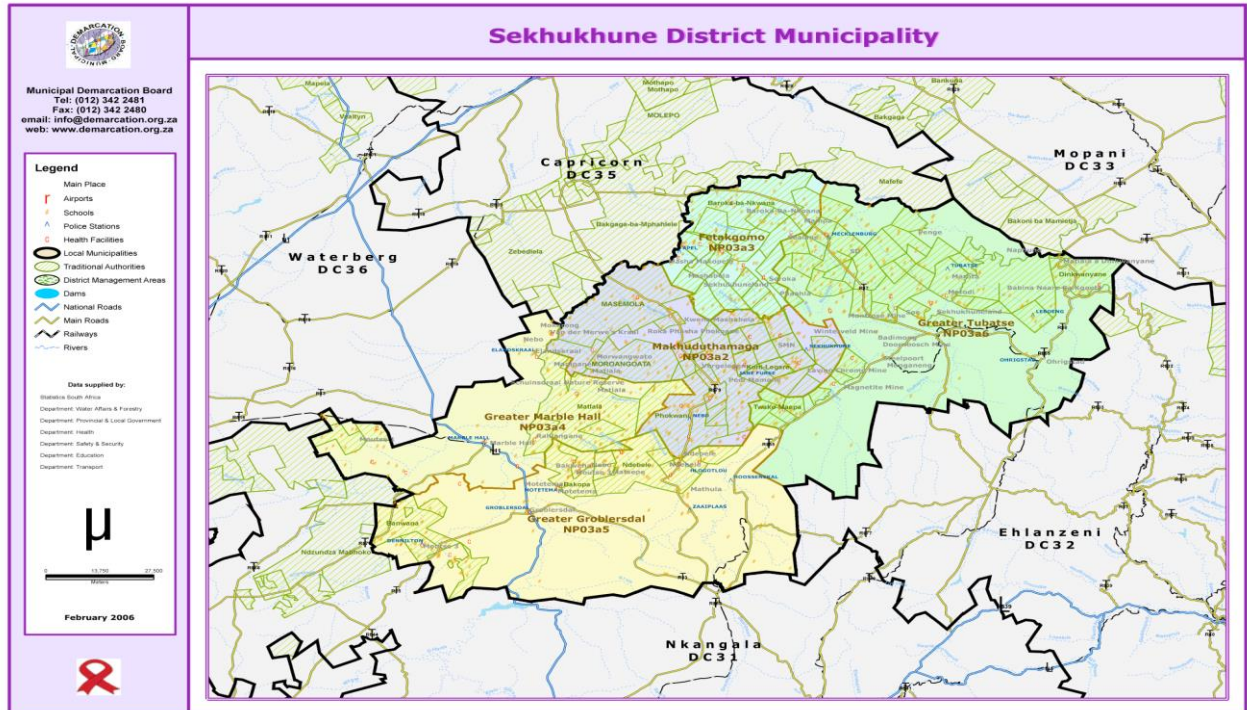
Municipality	Awareness campaigns planned for 2020-2021
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	2
Ephraim Mogale	3
Elias Motsoaledi	2
Makhuduthamaga	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>9</b>

Source: LEDET (2019)

## Natural Environment

According to Raper (1987) Sekhukhune-land is a small area in the North-Eastern South Africa, in the province Of Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The region was named after Sekhukhune I, who was the Chief of the Pedi tribe when rights were granted to them in 1885.

Figure 30: map shows the location of Sekhukhune district



## Climate

The climate is fairly typical of the Savanna Biome: warm, moist summers and cool, dry winters. Mean annual rainfall ranges from 400 mm in the valleys to 600 mm on the mountain slopes and mean summer temperatures from 25°C in the South. Fire is an important factor in the mountains and helps to maintain the strong grassy component of the vegetation.

The area is however under threat from factors such as mining for heavy metals, inappropriate land management, rural sprawl and unsustainable use of natural resources. This affects the level of goods and services provided by the ecosystem.

## Climate change and global warming

### Topography and geology

According to Wilson and Anhaeusser 1998 in Janine et al, geologically the area is dominated by ultramafic substrates of the Rustenburg layered Suite, topographically it is characterised by undulating hills, from the Steelpoort River Valley lying at about 900 metres, the Leolo Mountains rise to 1,932m.

The area is transacted by major chains of hills and has a North-South orientation, creating moderately steep slopes facing predominantly east or west.

The region is characterised by heavy metal soils that are derived from predominating pyroxite, norite, and anorthosite formations. It forms part of the Bushveld Igneous Complex that has ultramafic layers.

Figure 31: Plants Endemism

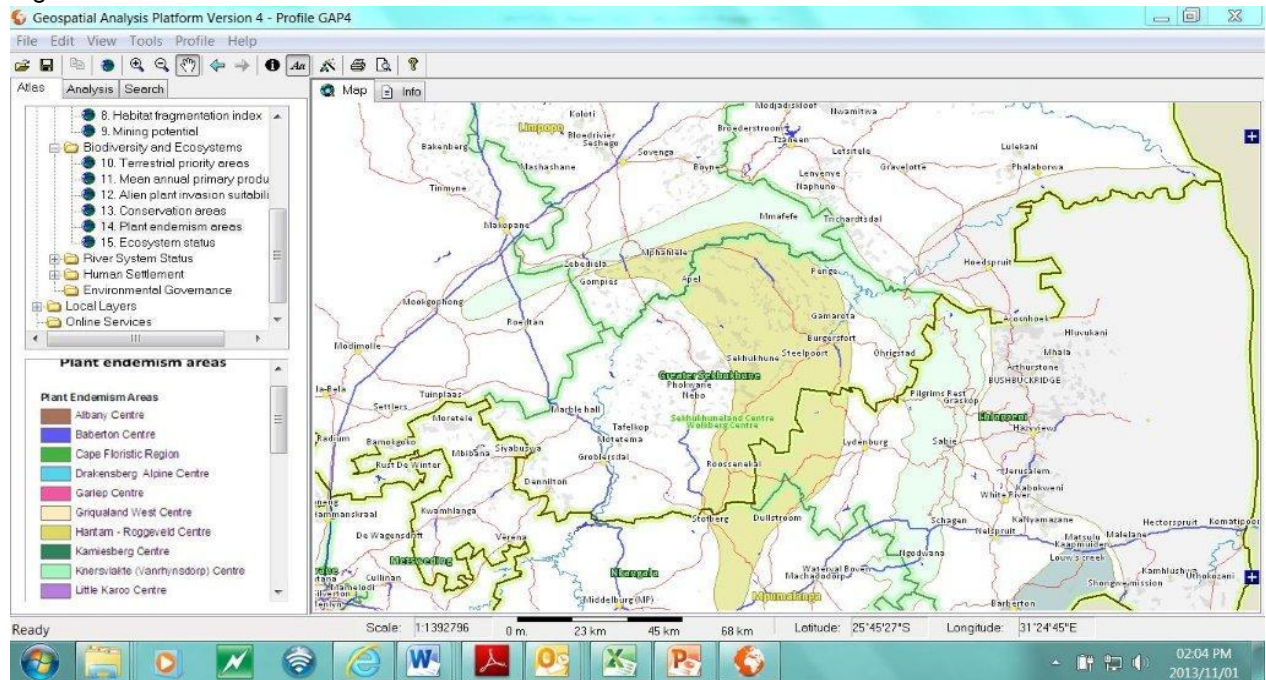


Figure 32: Conservation areas

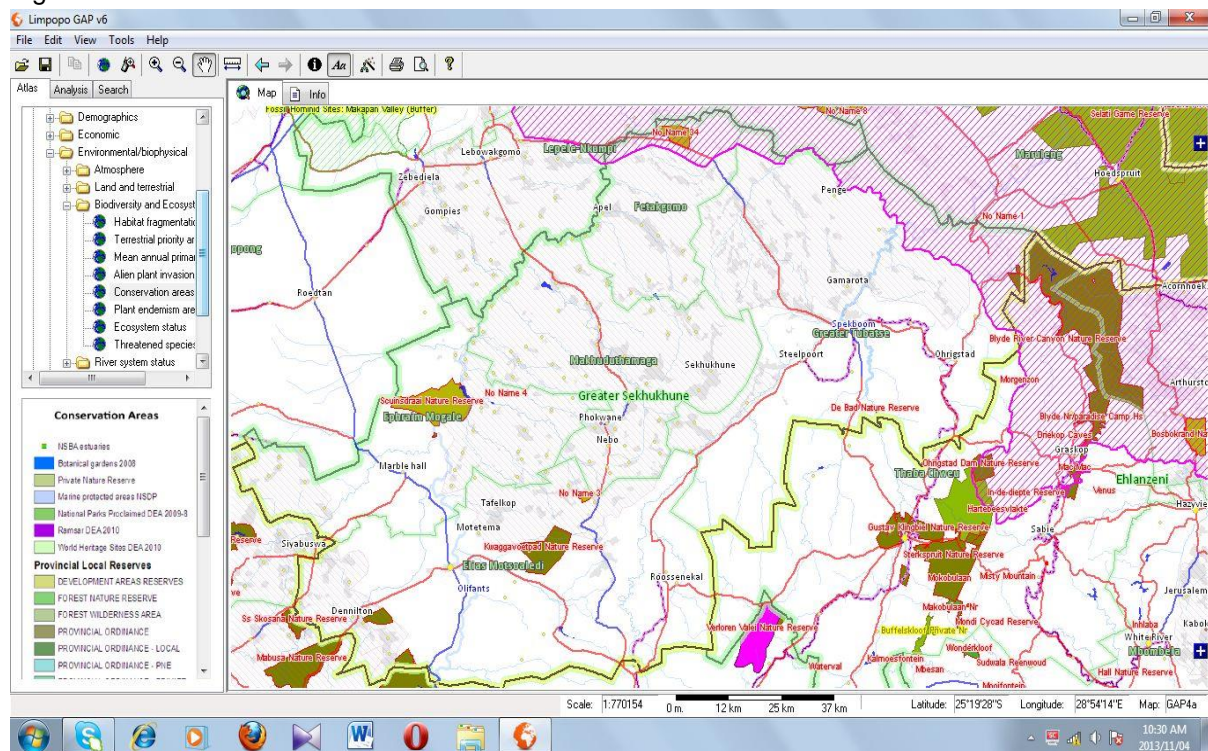
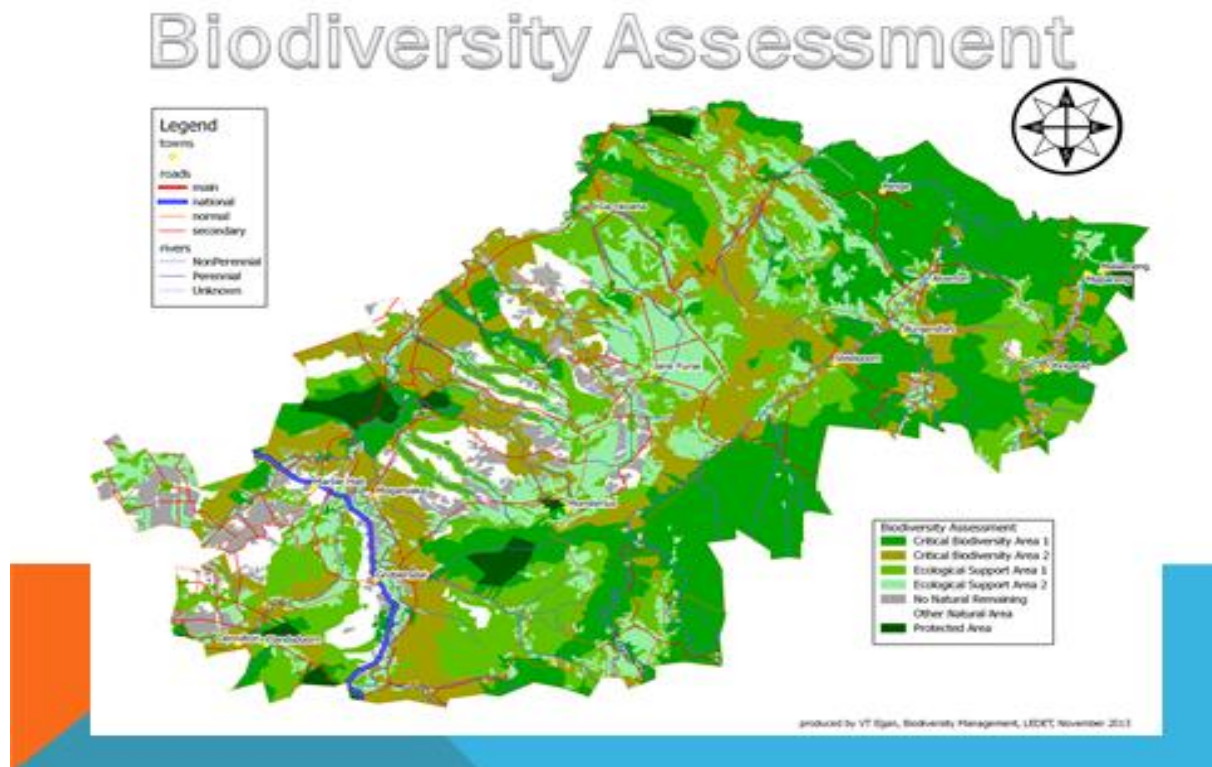


Figure 33: Biodiversity Assessment



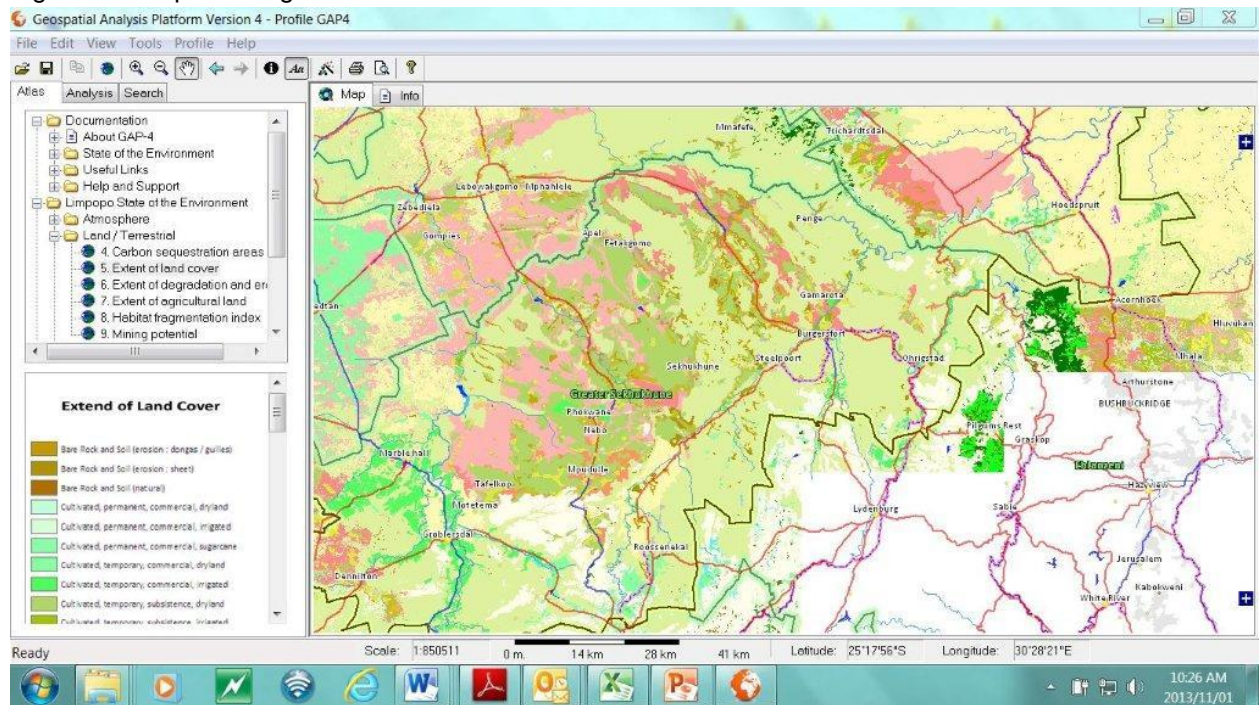
### Extent of land cover

The landcover map shows that Elias Motsoaledi Ephraim Mogale, Greater Tubatse, Makhuduthamaga, and Fetakgomo are dominated by the natural grassland thicket, bushveld, bush clumps and high fynbos.

In addition to the above mentioned extend of landcover, Ephraim Mogale is bordered by the degraded forest and woodland, cultivated, subsistence dry land and forest plantations around Motseleope (Mining).

There are also mining quarries in Fetakgomo (Atok area), Makhuduthamaga and in Greater Tubatse.

Figure 34: Map showing the extend of landcover



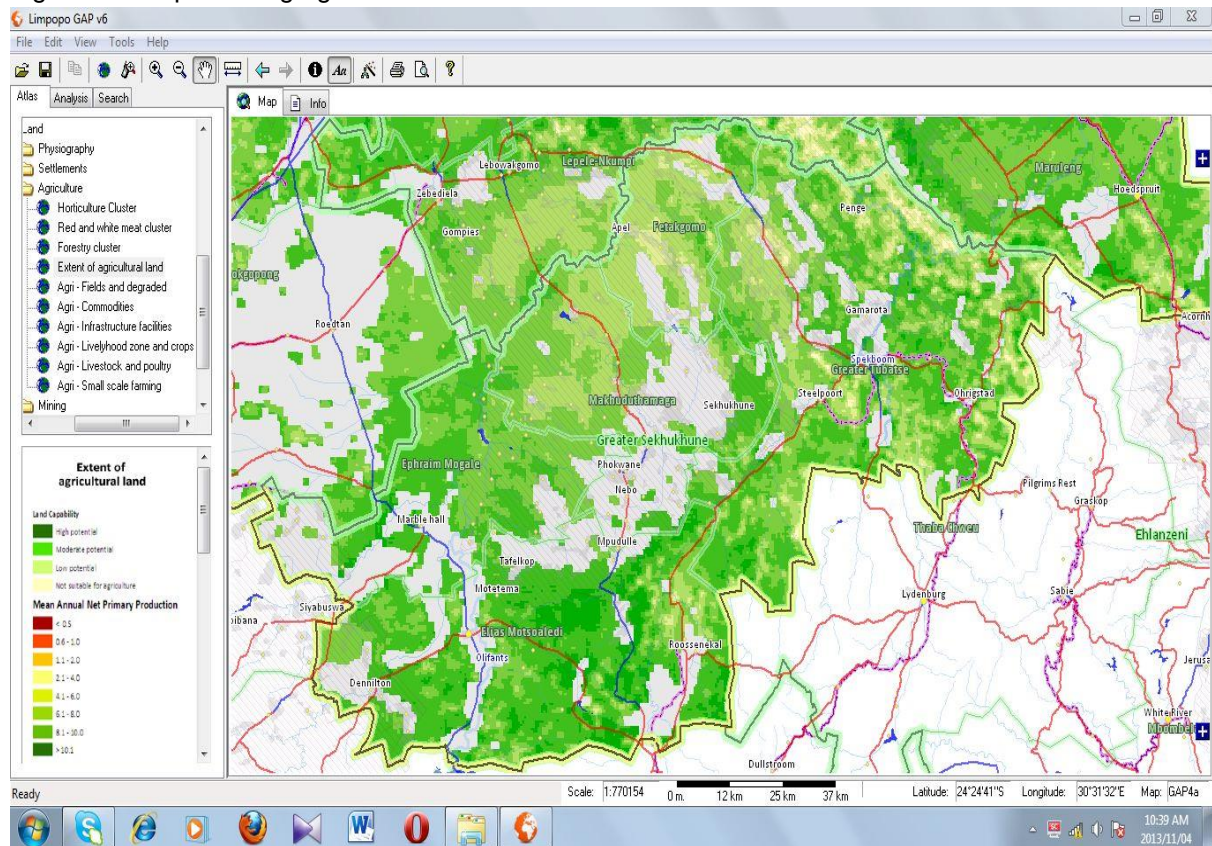
### The role of biodiversity in Sekhukhune-land

From the human viewpoint, the role of biodiversity in agricultural and natural ecosystems is to ensure food security and sustainable agricultural production through direct or indirect provision of food for humans and their livestock, provision of raw materials and services, such as fibre, fuel and pharmaceuticals and the maintenance of ecosystem functions. However, there is the risk in over-utilized (whether through overgrazing, mismanagement, increased cropping, mining etc.) systems that the provision of these natural products and services becomes compromised due to unsustainable harvesting of resources.

So far more than 2,200 species of vascular plants have been reported in the natural vegetation of the region (Siebert et al. 2002). Close to 70% of the plants in Sekhukhune-land are herbaceous species of which a large number are used directly for medicinal or cultural purposes or are edible. Because this has until recently been a botanically under-explored area, new endemic plant taxa and biogeographically important species are still being discovered regularly.



Figure 35: Map showing agricultural land cover

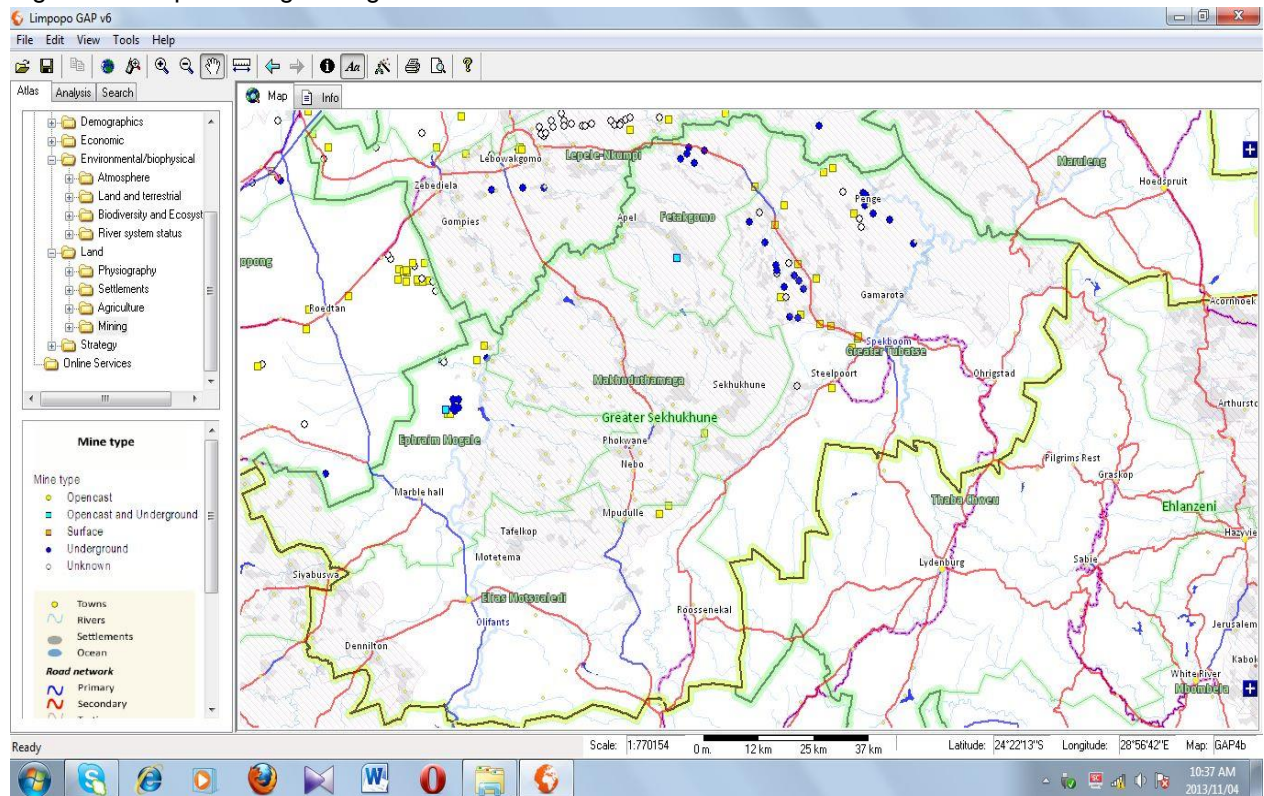


### Risks to the plant diversity in the Sekhukhune land region

The Sekhukhune-land region is rich in ultramafic-induced endemic plant species, which makes it a treasure house for biodiversity. Unfortunately, the substrate to which these plants are restricted is being used for mining. At present mining activities occupy approximately 15% of Sekhukhune-land, causing some endemic species such as *Melhania randii* (Figure 6) to be threatened with extinction. There are 58 endemic and approximately another 70 near-endemic plant taxa in Sekhukhune-land, mostly belonging to the two families Liliaceae (sensu lato) and Euphorbiaceae which have immense importance in traditional medicine.

Communal lands occupy at least 35% of Sekhukhune-land and belong to a population of mainly impoverished people, with subsistence farming and use of natural resources as their only means of survival. Cash income is predominantly from work in mines and on farms.

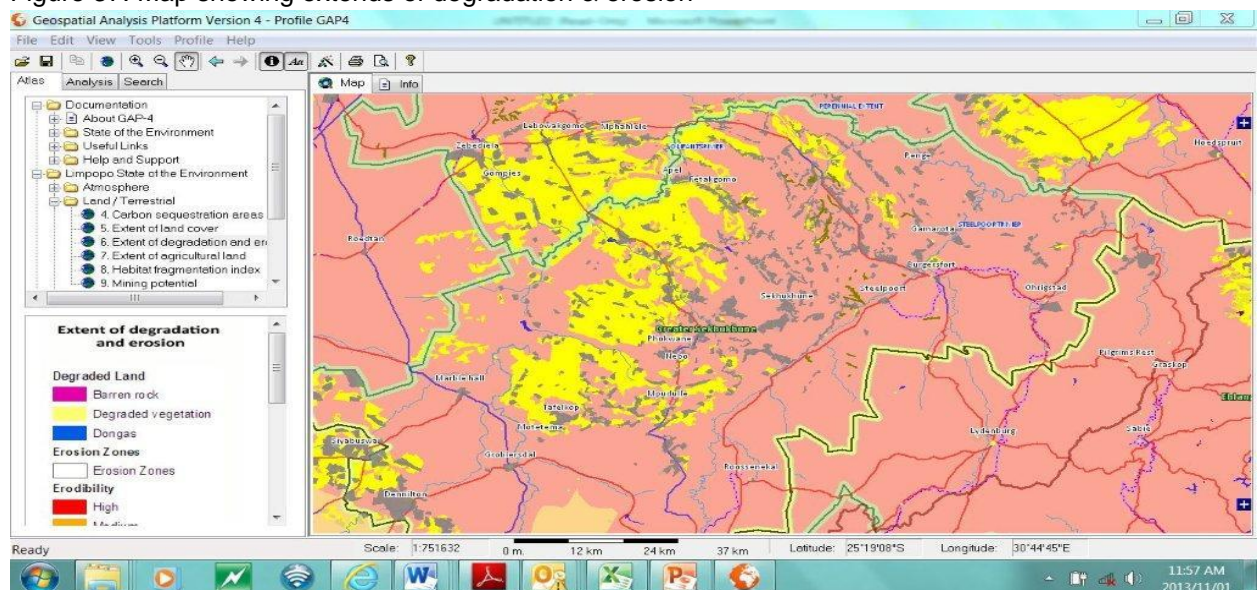
Figure 36: Map showing mining areas



Many decades of land mismanagement have caused immense erosion problems (Figure 44) and species composition changes, rendering the land under-productive relative to its potential. Heavy grazing leads to loss of palatable species and an increase in unpalatable ones e.g. *Senecio microglossus* (Figure 40). This often exacerbates erosion because the unpalatable plants tend to be dwarf shrubs which, unlike grasses, are not good soil-binders.

Map3 shows that the area of Sekhukhune District Municipality is dominated by degraded vegetation to the north of the district area. (Elias Motsoaledi).

Figure 37: Map showing extends of degradation &amp; erosion



## STRESSES ON BIODIVERSITY

### Grazing

The major source of plant production in grasslands, for grazing and grain for human consumption, is natural grasses. In many natural grasslands, biomass is attributed to relatively few species, even though many more may be present, and the identity of the dominant species affects the quality of grazing. Heavily utilized grasslands had much lower species richness than pristine grassland. There were far more grasses which had a greater aerial cover in the pristine areas, and most were of good grazing value; over-utilized areas were characterised by unpalatable grasses with lower cover.

Many grasses have good grazing value and others perform a multitude of useful ecological functions, for example to bind soil. Grass species composition is also an indicator of vegetation condition.

### Grasses found in over-utilized grassland

*Aristida adscensionis* is very unpalatable, grows in disturbed areas and is one of the commonest grasses in degraded parts of Sekhukhune-land. It performs a useful ecological function as a pioneer which colonises degraded areas thereby reducing erosion.

*Bothriochloa insculpta*- is another common grass of over-utilized acres; it is not well grazed although it has good leaf production, but its aromatic taste deters animals. It colonises open areas quickly and is therefore useful for controlling erosion but is a strongly competitive subclimax grass and an indicator of disturbance.

*Bothriochloa insculpta*- is another common grass of over-utilized acres; it is not well grazed although it has good leaf production, but its aromatic taste deters animals. It colonises open areas quickly and is therefore useful for controlling erosion but is a strongly competitive subclimax grass and an indicator of disturbance.

*Bothriochloa insculpta*- is another common grass of over-utilized acres; it is not well grazed although it has good leaf production, but its aromatic taste deters animals. It colonises open areas quickly and is therefore useful for controlling erosion but is a strongly competitive subclimax grass and an indicator of disturbance. *Eragrostis gummiflua*, or gum grass, occurs more commonly in overgrazed parts, where it increases due to excessive grazing. It produces much seed and can therefore establish rapidly on ground exposed by mining or erosion. Because of its hard culms, only donkeys graze it.

### Grasses growing in well managed or under-utilized grassland

*Brachiaria nigropedata* is an extremely valuable grazing grass which is very susceptible to overgrazing and is a good indicator of the of grassland condition.

*Digitaria eriantha* - is endemic to southern Africa where it grows in undisturbed grasslands. It is one of the best natural and cultivated pastures in southern Africa and its dominance indicates good grassland conditions. It can be grazed after the growth period as standing hay.

*Eustachys paspaloides* - is very palatable and grows in undisturbed open grassland or mixed bushveld. It is a climax grass and is one of the first grasses to disappear during overgrazing.

*Hyparrhenia hirta* - is the most popular thatching grass in South Africa. It is well grazed by livestock early in the growing season and after fires before the plants become old and hard; it is also drought resistant. It becomes dominant in under-grazed areas. When mature, it is tall and hard and can be cut for thatch, providing a well-insulated and attractive roof.

*Melinis nerviglumis* (Figure 18) is a densely tufted grass which is moderately palatable but is a good indicator of grassland condition since it grows in underutilized pastures. It is extremely common on shallow soils in rocky areas.

*Panicum maximum* (Figure 19) has high palatability, leaf production and seed production and can be used to make hay. It is an extremely valuable grazing grass in open woodland, but is very susceptible to heavy grazing, disappearing when grazing is intense.

*Setaria sphacelata* (Figure 20) is an economically important grass which is sometimes sown in pastures and used for making hay. A closely related species, *Setaria lindenberiana*, grows in shade, where it can form dominant stands. It is also a palatable grass that makes good hay. It was utilized as a famine food in the past (National Research Council 1996) and the grain has been used to make bread (Fox and Norwood Young 1982). Since it is a decreasing species, it does not survive heavy grazing and over-utilization.

*Themeda triandra* is the most important grazing grass in open grassland regions of southern Africa, its true value being that it is abundant and can form dense stands. This grass resists fire and will increase through regular burning, so long as it is not overgrazed. It is therefore probably the best indicator in the region of the health of the ecosystem in terms of grazing.

*Tristachya biseriata* is a rare grass, endemic to South Africa. It is important for sheep and goats but is well grazed by all animals early in the season, becoming less palatable later. It mostly occurs in underutilized and infrequently burnt places.

For grazing capacity to be sustained, introduction of appropriate land management practices to certain areas is required, to avoid the further loss of biodiversity and subsequently valuable grazing species. Eventual dominance of unpalatable "increaser" species as well as alien invasive plants would render more of the grassland unpalatable.

### **Traditional medicine**

In addition to decreased grazing capacity, many important plants are lost because of inappropriate management and overuse of the grassland. Traditional plant use in the "pharmacopoeia" of rural areas and its economic value, although difficult to estimate, is certainly significant and entirely dependent on natural biodiversity. Many plants used in traditional medicine are slow-growing and once lost, are unlikely to return to an area. Their presence depends on sustainable harvesting as well as on the maintenance of vegetation condition. These plants often have a low incidence of occurrence and are the component of vegetation that declines under heavy utilization. The medicinal species in degraded grasslands also occur in pristine grasslands.

## Food sources

Rural populations often rely on a small number of staple crops as their major food source which they have to supplement with indigenous plants which are harvested to provide the additional dietary requirements of a balanced intake. A large amount of biomass is harvested green and cooked for everyday requirements. Many indigenous species have potential as food, but they have to be sufficiently abundant as well as accessible to come into everyday use. Various sources indicate the number of species of plants that can be used as food and their relative abundance. The enormous natural biodiversity of the study area provides people with the opportunity to use of different species from one area to another.

Indigenous species that are a source of food were more abundant in the pristine grasslands. Although some of these are only used in times of famine, higher biodiversity provides culinary choice as well as ensuring a greater diversity of essential nutrients in the diets of the rural population (Janine Victor *et al*).

## Conclusion

Preservation of biodiversity is essential for continued utilization of the resources in traditional ways. Education about sustainable utilization needs to be promoted, to prevent plants from becoming increasingly scarce. Decline of plant populations could lead to local, or even global, extinction, resulting in irreversible loss of important grazing species, medicinally utilized species and other economically important plants.

This could in turn lead to further impoverishment of the rural people and a knock-on the economic impact on adjacent communities. However South Africa has excellent environmental legislation and a genuine commitment to preservation of biodiversity that encourages hope for the future. (Van As M 2012).

## 2.5.4. District Disaster Management and District Emergency Management Services

### 2.5.4.1. Disaster Management Services

The District Disaster Management Centre (DDMC) operates from AB Sikhosana Fire Station. The Centre is not yet constructed pending land acquisition challenges. The earmarked land for the construction will be at or around Jane Furse in the Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality, or at any other piece of land that will comply with the minimum infrastructural requirements for Disaster Management Centers Guideline version 1 of April 2017. The district, in collaboration with the Provincial Disaster Management Centre developed the District Disaster Management plan during 2019.

The district disaster management service is responsible for the following critical functional areas:

- Integrated institutional capacity.
- Disaster risk assessment.
- Disaster risk reduction
- Disaster response and recovery.

Currently awareness campaigns on prioritised hazards are being conducted in communities that are prone to disaster risk in collaboration with all sector departments, local municipalities, and other key stakeholders. The district municipality has put aside R500 000 for disaster relief materials to alleviate the plight of communities that are affected by natural disaster such as Structural fires, Floods, Drought and Heat wave.

The Disaster Risk assessment process uncovered 34 hazards that are likely to impact negatively on the lives and properties of the citizens of the district. A case in point is the sinkholes/Dolomite hazard affecting almost twelve villages in the Fetakgomo-Tubatse local municipality which requires immediate technical and financial capacity to mitigate them.

Sekhukhune District Municipality is one of the District in the Limpopo province that does not have a District Disaster Management Centre (DDMC) to cater for 1.1 million citizens. This is not complying with the Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 as amended, which states that the district should establish a DDMC.

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Lack of disaster management Centre</li> <li>➤ Budget constraints</li> <li>➤ Disaster and incident management system</li> <li>➤ Communication management system</li> <li>➤ Tools of trade</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Lobbying for land to construct the center.</li> <li>➤ Applying for MIG funds</li> <li>➤ Develop a system</li> <li>➤ Separation of emergency and switchboard line.</li> </ul>

#### 2.5.4.2. District Emergency Management Services

The district has five (5) fire stations located in the four Local Municipalities namely:

- Tubatse Fire Station (in Burgersfort) located within Fetakgomo Tubatse L.M.
- Makhuduthamaga Fire Station (in Jane Furse) located within Makhuduthamaga L.M.
- AB Sikhosana Fire Station (in Groblersdal) located within Elias Motsoaledi L.M.
- Ephraim Mogale Fire Station (in Marble Hall) located within Ephraim Mogale L.M.
- Mashilabele Fire Station (in Mashilabele) located within Fetakgomo Tubatse L.M.

Tubatse and AB Sikhosana fire stations are built to acceptable state of the art fire stations. These two stations' structural integrity needs constant maintenance and repair. Makhuduthamaga Fire Station is operating from the old Jane Furse Hospital premises and the building plans of the new district offices does need to accommodate a standard fire station building. Both Ephraim Mogale and Mashilabele fire stations need to be built to meet the standard. The required standard of fire stations would assist to protect and accommodate the fire service fleet which is constantly exposed to all weathers.

### a) Fire prevention, safety, and protection

The role of the fire service in the district has expanded far beyond fire suppression. With this expansion, fire prevention, fire safety and public education continuous to have an increased emphasis as the proactive elements of a fire service delivery system. The district communities are dependent on the fire service to ensure their protection against dangers of fire, entrapment, explosion, dangerous goods incidents, and any emergency event that may occur in the community. **Fire Safety** (plays a central role in fire risk reduction). Fire prevention and safety division is a core component of the fire service. This key component of the fire service monitor compliance to **code application** and **law enforcement** as well as safety at events. Only three officers' man this division.

### b) Training

*Education, training and innovation are central to South Africa's long-term development. They are core elements in eliminating poverty and reducing inequality, and the foundations of an equal society. Education empowers people to define their identity, take control of their lives, raise healthy families, take part confidently in developing a just society, and play an effective role in the politics and governance of their communities (NDP, 2011).*

The District Training Academy is in AB Sikhosana fire station, accredited by LGSETA unique number, **LGRS-Suykh 110223** to render Further Education and Training certificate in Fire and Rescue Operations at National Qualification Framework (NQF) four (4). The Sekhukhune District Municipality Emergency Management Services Training Academy (SDM EMS) is further accredited with Southern African Emergency Services Institute (SAESI).

Experience has demonstrated that the fire service can make the most impact in reducing vulnerability to fires by changing the behavior of those at risk through sustained education and awareness programs. It is therefore SDM EMS training academy objective to as much as possible get as many EMS personnel as empowered in fire safety education (PIER) to better empower communities.

The fire service through training continuous to provide station based continuous professional training to fire service personnel for purposes of enhancement and keeping the company abreast with the technologically advancing industry for safety reasons. Training of swift-water rescuers is still a challenge as most of previously disadvantaged communities lack the swimming skill which is a prerequisite to register as a candidate for swift-water courses. Swimming is not offered as a subject in the formal school, where SDM can take a few of its fire service personnel there for training. Other possibilities are being explored to ensure the fire service is capacitated with same rescuers. There are job market opportunities which are created by training in capacitating the youth of Sekhukhune with firefighting skills.

### c) Equipment

The fire service at all stations within the district has a variety of fire vehicles capable of engaging and/or of providing backup services at any reasonable fire engagement. However apart from the specialized vehicles all stations essentially require having other firefighting tools, to operate

effectively and efficiently, of which they do not have in this financial year. The fire service has managed to procure rescue tools for all stations in the last two financial years.

#### d) Expansion of the Service

Emergency Management Services within the district operates a 24/7 service with a five-shift system on an 8-hours duration. It is the intention of the district to have additional fire stations more in the periphery of the district to best provide a 20minutes call away service at any given time and space, and the probability depends solely on the availability of funds to recruit and appoint personnel. The fire service currently has 80 fire service personnel of which 65 thereof are dedicated shift workers. With 25 shifts throughout the district personnel is heavily stretched to work over long distances. The priority areas needing stations are Roosenekaal, Moroke, Moutse East and West, Monsterlus, Ohrigstad, Steelpoort, Masemola and Leboeng.

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The fire risk exceeds the resource (human and material) available.</li> <li>• Poor response time caused by distance travelled to emergency incidents</li> <li>• Formal placement and progression of senior officials to manage stations and units.</li> <li>• Provide communication tools to designated staff members and shifts.</li> <li>• Lack of maintenance to the district state of the art buildings</li> <li>• Lack of dedicated Human Resource staff to deal primarily with the fire service.</li> <li>• Continuous maintenance of standby generators at AB Sikhosana and Tubatse Fire stations.</li> <li>• Entry level salary versus qualification requirement <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Lack of Personal Protective Equipment to personnel</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Appointment of staff in line with the approved Organizational Structure.</li> <li>➤ Establishment of <i>Fire stations</i> or <i>Fire Houses</i> in Roosenekaal, Moroke, Moutse East and West, Monsterlus, Ohrigstad, Steelpoort and Leboeng</li> <li>➤ To officially align and appoint the existing 4 Station Officers to supervise dedicated stations.</li> <li>➤ For Fire Safety and Prevention division the service requires additional <b>5</b> Leading Firefighters at station level for Fire Safety services.</li> <li>➤ To continuously request Human Resource in its ICT division to budget for provisioning of communication gadgets to be able to access, monitor and provide guidance to responding crews by personnel in more responsible positions.</li> <li>➤ To continuously request Human Resource in its Auxiliary Services unit with the support of all supporting departments to provide their relevant services on assets.</li> <li>➤ To insource fire service personnel to collaborate with Human Resource in dealing with fire service personnel issues.</li> <li>➤ To continuously request Human Resource in its Auxiliary Services unit with the support of all supporting</li> </ul>



Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Lack of hydraulic rescue tools to stations</li> <li>➤ Shortage of staff and congestion of firefighter-1 at entry level.</li> </ul>	<p>departments to provide their relevant services on assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ To continuously request Human Resource division to consider qualifications requirements needed at entry level for fire service and adjusting the level to 11, and not level 14 /a general entry level.</li> <li>➤ To continuously request Human Resource in its EAP division to release PPE for the safety and protection of fire service personnel.</li> <li>➤ To continuously request for a budget from MIG to start resourcing for procurement of the fire service equipment.</li> <li>➤ To initiate progression system which will allow qualifying and long servicing personnel on merits to progress to more responsible positions while making way for new entries.</li> </ul>

### 2.5.5. Refuse Removal

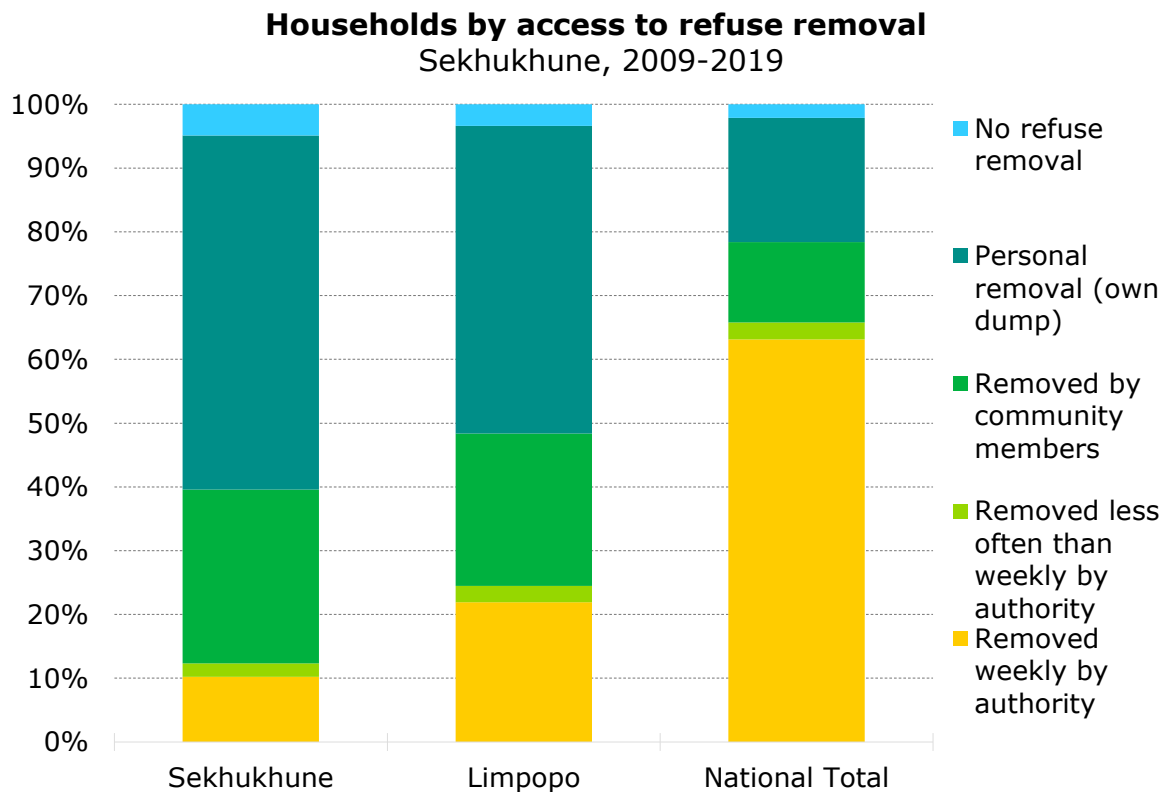
Refuse removal is being provided by local municipalities in urban centers like Marble Hall, Groblersdal, and Burgersfort. Permitted landfill sites are Marble Hall, Burgersfort, Jane Furse and recently (Malogeng and Mphanama) in Fetakgomo Tubatse. The waste disposal and collection has just started in some parts of Makhuduthamaga. There are some villages that conduct their own illegal dumping sites which could be a potential environmental and health hazard.

In many municipalities in South Africa, refuse removal is seen as a trading service. That is, municipalities provide this service and only recover the cost of providing the service without any profit. The rural nature of the district makes it impossible for the roll out of the sewer borne sanitation notwithstanding the fact that most of the rural households are currently not paying for municipal services.

A distinction is made between formal and informal refuse removal. When refuse is removed by the local authorities, it is referred to as formal refuse removal. Informal refuse removal is where either the household or the community disposes of the waste, or where there is no refuse removal at all. A further breakdown is used in terms of the frequency by which the refuse is taken away, thus leading to the following categories:

- Removed weekly by authority
- Removed less often than weekly by authority
- Removed by community members
- Personal removal / (own dump)
- No refuse removal

CHART 1. HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL - SEKHUKHUNE, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2019 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2142

Sekhukhune District Municipality had a total number of 31 200 (10.24%) households which had their refuse removed weekly by the authority, a total of 6 320 (2.08%) households had their refuse removed less often than weekly by the authority and a total number of 169 000 (55.56%) households which had to remove their refuse personally (own dump).

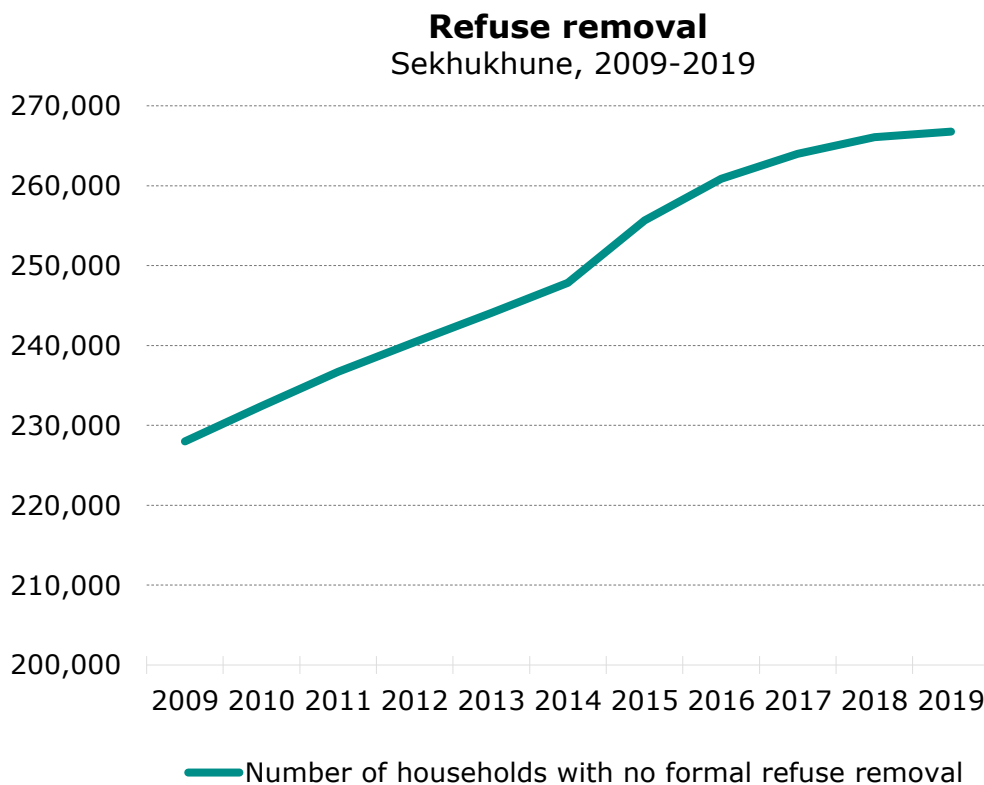
TABLE 55: HOUSEHOLDS BY REFUSE DISPOSAL - EPHRAIM MOGALE, ELIAS MOTSOLEDI, MAKHUDUTHAMAGA AND GREATER TUBATSE/FETAKGOMO LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES, 2019 [NUMBER]

Municipality	Removed weekly by authority	Removed less often than weekly by authority	Removed by community members	Personal removal (own dump)	No refuse removal	Total
Ephraim Mogale	3,447	930	13,837	15,101	1,404	34,720
Elias Motsoaledi	7,865	1,799	26,332	29,808	2,541	68,346
Makhuduthamaga	1,639	1,128	23,478	42,964	1,949	71,157
Greater Tubatse/Fetakgomo	18,205	2,467	19,252	81,150	8,948	130,022
<b>Total Sekhukhune</b>	<b>31,156</b>	<b>6,324</b>	<b>82,900</b>	<b>169,024</b>	<b>14,841</b>	<b>304,245</b>

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2142

The region within Sekhukhune with the highest number of households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority is Tubatse Fetakgomo Local Municipality with 18 200 or a share of 58.43% of the households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority within Sekhukhune. The region with the lowest number of households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority is Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality with a total of 1 640 or a share of 5.26% of the total households where the refuse is removed weekly by the authority within the district municipality.

CHART 2. REFUSE REMOVAL - SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2009-2019  
[NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS WITH NO FORMAL REFUSE REMOVAL]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2142

When looking at the number of households with no formal refuse removal, it can be seen that in 2009 the households with no formal refuse removal in Sekhukhune District Municipality was 228 000, this increased annually at 1.58% per annum to 267 000 in 2019.

The total number of households within Sekhukhune District Municipality increased at an average annual rate of 2.10% from 2009 to 2019, which is higher than the annual increase of 1.96% in the number of households in South Africa. With high in-migration into a region, the number of households increases, putting additional strain on household infrastructure. In the short to medium term this can result in an increase in the number of households not living in a formal dwelling, as the provision of household infrastructure usually takes time to deliver.

Table 56: Access to Refuse Removal

Municipality	Removed by local authority/private company			Communal refuse			No rubbish disposal		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	2 184	3 173	3 726	15 490	17 311	23 829	1 663	3 706	4 356
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	4 136	3 448	6 527	31 805	34 003	44 517	5 765	8 027	8 504
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	3 073	463	1 639	39 323	46 992	58 636	6 572	5 523	4 631
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	897	4 374	11 321	38 709	49 862	77 309	19 185	18 404	16 915
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	10 290	11 458	23 213	125 328	148 167	204 290	33 185	35 660	34 406

Source: Census 2011

In 2011, 23 213 households had access to refuse removal that is undertaken by local authorities. Most of these households are found in Fetakgomo Tubatse, followed by Elias Motsoaledi. Makhuduthamaga has the least number of households that are receiving refuse removal service.

The strategy implication is that for refuse removal work, it must be provided in tandem with other services like water, sanitation, and electricity so that an individual household is billed for the entire services provision.

### 2.5.6. Electricity

Currently, Eskom provides electricity in the Sekhukhune Area. Even though Eskom is the main provider of electricity, the Local Municipalities do sometimes implement electrification projects to assist in reducing backlogs. Ephraim Mogale Municipality provides electricity for its Marble Hall Town while Elias Motsoaledi provides electricity to both Groblersdal Town and Roosenekaal. Fetakgomo Tubatse and Makhuduthamaga Local Municipalities are not licensed to supply electricity.

The electrification backlog in 2011 was estimated at 37 124 households. Given the current electricity capacity challenges and lack of resources, it is unlikely that these backlogs will be eliminated within the coming 2 years. All the villages in Ephraim Mogale are electrified and the only backlog is for extensions (post connections).

Table 57: Electricity backlog per municipality

Local Municipality	Backlogs (Household)
Fetakgomo Tubatse	22 152
Elias Motsoaledi	5 349
Ephraim Mogale	3 357
Makhuduthamaga	6 266
<b>SDM</b>	<b>37 124</b>

Source: Census 2011

However, the table below shows areas (may consist of few villages) that have no electricity. They need new intervention of electrification.

Table 58: Areas without capacity (still without electricity)

Municipality	Areas without capacity
Fetakgomo Tubatse	7
Ephraim Mogale	-
Elias Motsoaledi	-
Makhuduthamaga	6
<b>Total</b>	<b>13</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

## HOUSEHOLDS

Table 59: Number of connections completed

Municipality	2015-2016	2016-2017	2017-2018
Fetakgomo Tubatse	473	781	1910
Ephraim Mogale	650	50	291
Elias Motsoaledi	299	584	671
Makhuduthamaga	1129	628	3930
<b>Total</b>	<b>2551</b>	<b>2043</b>	<b>6802</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

Table 60: Number of post connections done

Municipality	2016-2017	2017-2018
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	1729	1321
Ephraim Mogale	340	590
Elias Motsoaledi	968	908
Makhuduthamaga	1079	747
<b>Total</b>	<b>4116</b>	<b>3566</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

## Infills

Table 61: Number of households connected (as infills)

Local Municipality	Units Delivered (Number of houses connected)			Expenditure		
	2011/ 2012	2012/ 2013	2013/ 2014	2011/2012	2012/2013	2013/2014
Fetakgomo Tubatse	321	1 296	708	R1 807 206.39	R4 336 963.38	R3 132 155.19
Makhudutha maga	1331	676	759	R 2 578 086.89	R1 475 017.00	R1 383 972.28
Elias Motsoaledi	284	444	576	R2 139 102.06	R2 182 660.00	R2 253 443.05
Ephraim Mogale	165	281	256		R 397 029.62	R1 824 778.29

Local Municipality	Units Delivered (Number of houses connected)			Expenditure		
	<b>Total Sekhukhune</b>	<b>2101</b>	<b>2697</b>	<b>2299</b>	<b>R6 524 395.34</b>	<b>R8 391 670.00</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

### Free Basic Electricity

Most Sekhukhune households can be defined as poor indigent-where the total income is below R1, 500 per month. In 2019/2020, approximately 79% of the households in Sekhukhune fall into this category. These are the households to which Free Basic Electricity (FBE) must be supplied and to whom the Equitable Share subsidy applies.

ESKOM had planned to provide electricity to households in the district according to the following table below, a portion of these households are supposed to be indigents and qualify for FBE:

Table 62: Number of connections planned by ESKOM

Municipality	2018-2019	2019-2020	2020-2021
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	1984	1755	1624
Ephraim Mogale	500	446	187
Elias Motsoaledi	657	430	
Makhuduthamaga	962	661	
<b>Total</b>	<b>4103</b>	<b>3292</b>	<b>1811</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

Table 63: Number of households receiving Free Basic Electricity by July 2018

Municipality	Number of households who were receiving FBE by July 2018	Percentage of households in the municipality receiving FBE by July 2018 (proportion of official stats)
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	8366	2%
Ephraim Mogale	2084	2%
Elias Motsoaledi	2039	0%
Makhuduthamaga	7993	3%
<b>Total</b>	<b>20482</b>	<b>2%</b>

Source: ESKOM (2018)

The table above shows the proportion of households receiving FBE in the District. At 3% of the total households recorded in 2016 Community Survey it is not that high, which may suggest that there are more households who are not receiving the FBE but deserving of it.

The provision of electricity in most of the rural villages has assisted many households to use it for lighting. Statistics have shown that Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi Municipalities have been provided with lightning in all their rural villages which makes them meet the millennium development goal. There is still a need to provide electricity for lighting in other municipalities like Makhuduthamaga and Fetakgomo Tubatse Municipalities.

Larger percentages of villages in the rural areas do not use energy for cooking. They still depend on the collection of firewood for cooking. Smaller percentage of people use energy for cooking. It is only in towns where almost all people use energy for cooking. Perhaps, 0, 1% of people use coal for cooking if there are such people. There are also few people who use other sources of energy for cooking like gas.

Firewood remains a dominant energy source used in rural villages for heating. It should also be indicated that even in towns, firewood is used by some for heating. Smaller percentage of people in towns uses electricity for heating.

### Energy for lighting, heating, and cooking

Access to electricity has tremendously improved from 1996 compared to 2011. 226 677 households in the district have access to electricity which represents 86% of the total households in the district. Only 14% of the households in the district do not have access to electricity representing 37 124 households. Notwithstanding the above, there are settlements that have grown which will also require post electrification connections. Greater Tubatse and Makhuduthamaga municipalities have the highest number of households that still require electrification. Out of these households that require electrification, 69 Villages are in Greater Tubatse and 32 in Elias Motsoaledi.

Table 64: Energy for lighting, heating, and cooking

Municipality	Lighting			Cooking			Heating		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	10 697	19 938	28 927	4 511	6 381	15 086	4 219	8 455	13 341
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	29 505	38 906	54 902	10 495	10 398	37 830	9 624	11 402	30 433
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	12 368	32 884	58 951	5 058	8 967	32 293	4 615	8 951	23 716
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	11 380	32 445	83 898	5 239	12 032	58 576	4 991	12 158	43 722
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>63 950</b>	<b>124 173</b>	<b>226 677</b>	<b>25 303</b>	<b>37 778</b>	<b>143 786</b>	<b>23 449</b>	<b>40 966</b>	<b>111 212</b>

Source: Census (2011)

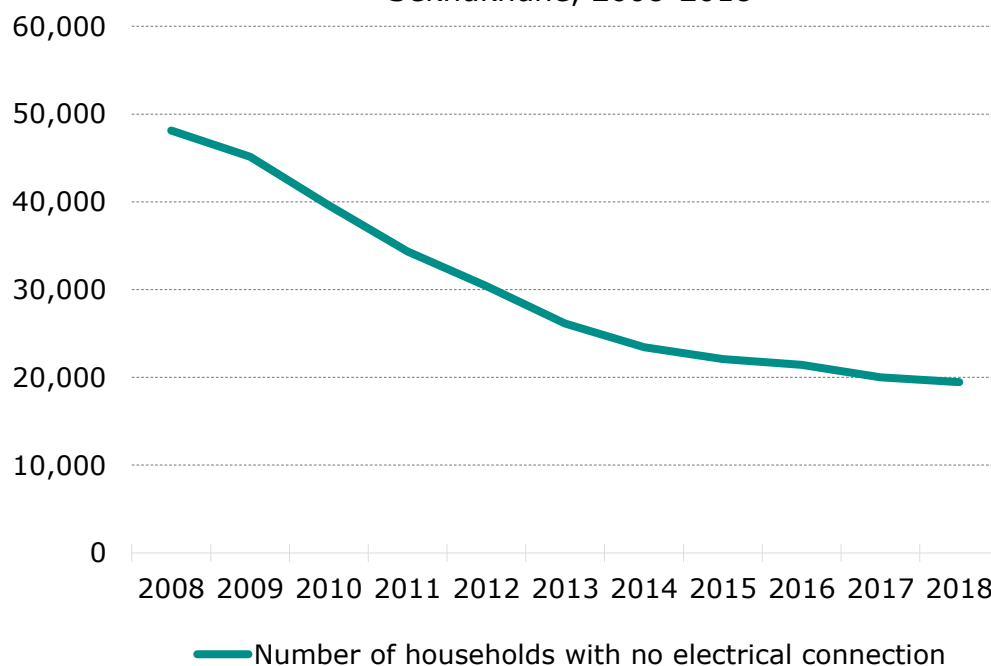
Table 65: Overall electricity access in 2016

Municipality	Access to electricity 2016	Other energy sources
Fetakgomo Tubatse	107 770	17 692
Makhuduthamaga	62 209	2 560
Ephraim Mogale	33 027	909
Elias Motsoaledi	62 463	3 895
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>265 470</b>	<b>25 057</b>

Community Survey (2016)

Figure 38: Electricity Connection

### Electricity connection Sekhukhune, 2008-2018



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

When looking at the number of households with no electrical connection over time, it can be seen that in 2008 the households without electrical connections in Sekhukhune District Municipality was 48 100, but this decreased annually at -8.66% per annum to 19 500 in 2018.

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eskom is experiencing a challenge in capacity constraints (in Fetakgomo Tubatse areas)</li> <li>• Illegal connections to households</li> <li>• Unplanned (mushrooming) of new extensions of residential sites for post connections</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of substations and prioritisation of household electrification projects</li> <li>• Implementation of by-laws and awareness campaigns</li> <li>• Planning and implementation of bulk infrastructure services (water, electricity &amp; roads) must guide the development of residential and non-residential areas</li> </ul>

#### 2.5.7. Cemeteries

The table below shows numbers about availability (access) of cemeteries in villages. 'Yes', means available, 'No' means not available.

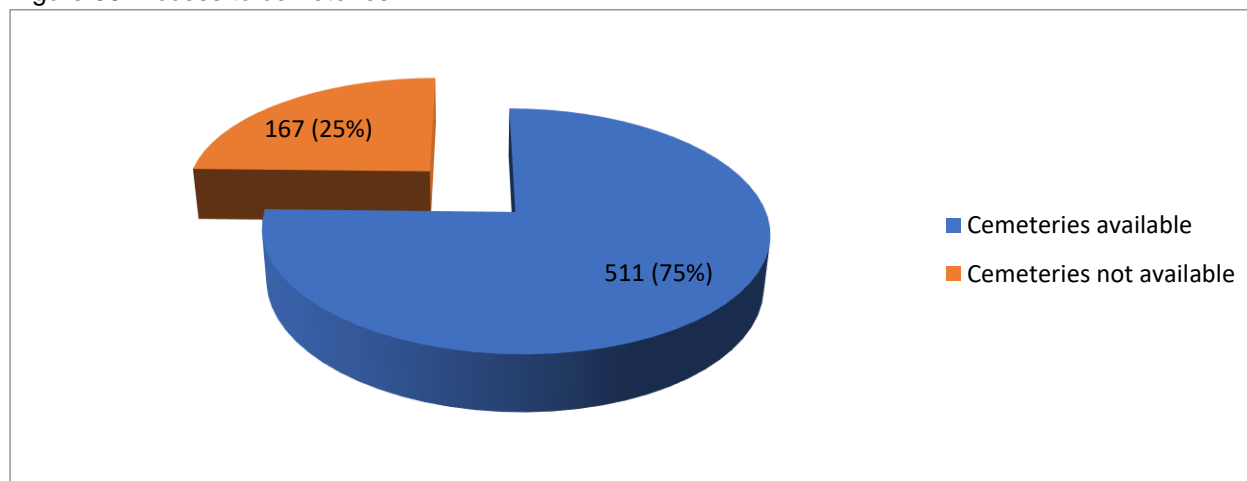


Table 66: Availability (access) of cemeteries in villages

	Makhuduth amaga	Elias Motsoaledi	Ephraim Mogale	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Total
Yes	147	78	64	222	511
No	29	60	10	68	167
<b>Total</b>	<b>176</b>	<b>138</b>	<b>74</b>	<b>290</b>	<b>678</b>

*SDM ward committees 2015-2016*

Figure 39: Access to cemeteries

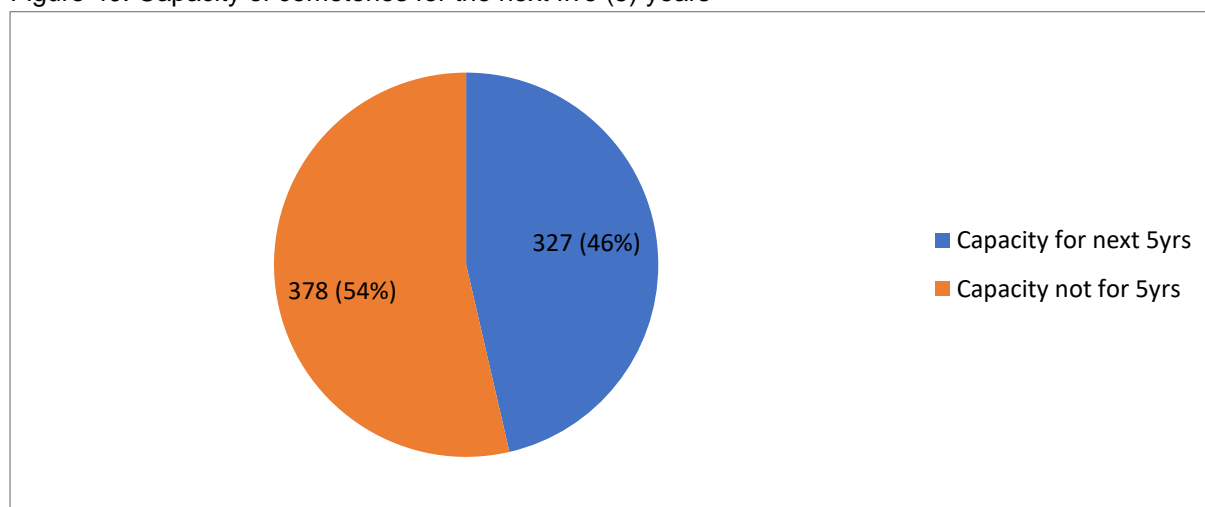


*SDM ward committees 2015-2016*

Most of the villages in the district do have access to cemeteries. 75% (511) villages/suburbs recorded that they have access to cemeteries compared to 25% (167) villages/suburbs that recorded that they have no access to cemeteries. Some of the explanations given are that some villages will bury their dead in other villages where cemeteries are available.

The Majority of villages where there is absence of cemeteries are found in Elias Motsoaledi (60), followed by Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality (68); Makhuduthamaga (29); and Ephraim Mogale (10).

Figure 40: Capacity of cemeteries for the next five (5) years



*SDM ward committees 2015-2016*

The chart shows that 54% of the cemeteries shall not have capacity to accommodate further burials beyond the next five years. This calls for some government intervention to thwart off the crisis that is beginning to appear on the horizon.

## 2.5.8. Housing

The government has made significant strides towards progressively fulfilling its constitutional obligation of ensuring that every South African has access to permanent housing that provides secure tenure, privacy, protection from the elements, and access to basic services. The national housing programme is not just about building houses but also about transforming our cities and towns and building cohesive and non-racial communities. In order to contribute to the end of apartheid spatial arrangements, government will roll out housing programme closer to places of work and amenities.

The government must continue to increase access to secure and decent housing for all through its newly adopted “Breaking New Ground” Strategy. Most Sekhukhune houses are currently cement or brick homes.

Table 67: Households in the district

MUNICIPALITIES	Population			Number of households			Average household size		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	97 597	115 682	123 648	19 666	24 189	32 284	5,0	4,8	3,8
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	218 622	213 218	249 363	42 641	45 478	60 251	5,1	4,7	4,1
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	266 845	258 246	274 358	49 798	52 978	65 217	5,4	4,9	4,2
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	324 072	355 844	429 471	59 803	72 639	106 050	5,5	4,9	4,1
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>907</b> <b>137</b>	<b>942</b> <b>993</b>	<b>1 076</b> <b>840</b>	<b>171</b> <b>908</b>	<b>195</b> <b>285</b>	<b>263</b> <b>802</b>	<b>5,3</b>	<b>4,8</b>	<b>4,1</b>

Source: Census (2011)

Since 1996, the number of households in the district has been on an upward trend. In 2011, there are 263 802 households in the district. The average household size is 4.1 in 2011 and was 5,3 in 1996. This means that the extended family set up is beginning to change on a daily basis with modern lifestyles. The provincial household average size is 3.8 which mean Sekhukhune household average size is still relatively high by comparison.

Sekhukhune District Municipality had a total number of 12 600 (4.17% of total households) very formal dwelling units, a total of 259 000 (85.87% of total households) formal dwelling units and a total number of 16 300 (5.40% of total households) informal dwelling units.

**Figure 68: Households by Dwelling Unit Type, 2018**

Municipalities	Very Formal	Formal	Informal	Traditional	Other dwelling type	Total
Ephraim Mogale	1,520	31,600	695	1,050	128	35,000
Elias Motsoaledi	4,630	57,200	2,810	2,790	469	67,900
Makhuduthamaga	1,890	61,600	2,900	3,410	246	70,000
Greater Tubatse/Fetakgomo	4,540	109,000	9,890	5,040	655	129,000
<b>Total Sekhukhune</b>	<b>12,586</b>	<b>259,382</b>	<b>16,306</b>	<b>12,294</b>	<b>1,499</b>	<b>302,066</b>

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

The Local Municipality within the Sekhukhune District Municipality with the highest number of very formal dwelling units is the Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality with 4 630 or a share of 36.80% of the total very formal dwelling units within Sekhukhune District Municipality. The Local Municipality with the lowest number of very formal dwelling units is the Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality with a total of 1 520 or a share of 12.10% of the total very formal dwelling units within Sekhukhune District Municipality.

### Household size

The households' size in the rural areas differs with the households' sizes in the urban areas. The households' size in the rural areas is 4.76% while in the urban areas is 4.22%.

### Housing type main dwelling

In 2011, 234 095 households are living in formal dwellings. There is also 10 107 households who still reside in traditional dwellings such as mud houses. Informal dwellings are also found in the district which stand at 17 861 in 2011. There is a need to formalise the informal dwellings (shacks) especially those found around main towns in the district.

Table 69: Main Dwellings

MUNICIPALITIES	Formal dwellings			Traditional dwellings			Informal dwellings		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
Ephraim Mogale	13 355	19 097	30 102	4 899	3 827	773	1 108	1 196	1 232
Elias Motsoaledi	30 803	36 137	54 503	8 705	6 902	2 274	1 995	2 356	3 141
Makhuduthamaga	33 407	41 712	58 744	13 354	8 804	2 819	2 337	2 403	3 398
Fetakgomo Tubatse	36 066	54 148	90 747	19 166	12 587	4 241	3 636	5 584	10 111
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>113 632</b>	<b>151 094</b>	<b>234 095</b>	<b>46 124</b>	<b>32 121</b>	<b>10 107</b>	<b>9 075</b>	<b>11 520</b>	<b>17 861</b>

Source: Census (2011)

### Household tenure status

The rental housing market is growing rapidly in Sekhukhune District Municipality. In 2011, 28 825 households were recorded to be living in rented houses in the district. Not surprisingly, the majority of these households are found in Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality especially with migrants

into the mining industry. Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi also recorded markedly improved numbers for rental stock.

Table 70: Household tenure status

MUNICIPALITIES	Owned and fully paid off		Owned but not yet fully paid off		Rented	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Ephraim Mogale	14 231	995	1 120	13 553	604	4 288
Elias Motsoaledi	24 627	1 440	3 153	33 324	1 658	5 828
Makhuduthamaga	30 979	2 191	1 441	44 302	2 257	3 035
Fetakgomo Tubatse	42 038	4 689	3 206	53 181	4 681	15 676
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>111 877</b>	<b>9 315</b>	<b>8 921</b>	<b>144 360</b>	<b>9 201</b>	<b>28 827</b>

Source Census (2011)

## Housing demand information

### Limpopo outcome 8 targets, priorities, and outputs

- Upgrade 31200 households in well located informal settlements with access to basic services and secure tenure
- Development of 6240 well located and affordably priced rental accommodation units
- Accreditation of one Local Municipality
- National Upgrading Support Programme expanded to 5 Municipalities.

### Housing demand analysis

According to the 2011 census data, the demand for subsidised housing as of 2011 is estimated at 123,163 as shown in table 1 below. This number excludes the demand for workers hostels dwellers.

Table 71: Estimation of subsidized housing using Census 2011 data

	No of HS in 2001	No of HS in 2007	No of HS in 2011
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure	180,243.20	87,164.80	51,179.20
Informal dwelling in backyard	17,002.40	18,871.20	25,822.40
Informal dwelling not in backyard (example in an informal/squatter settlement or on a farm)	51,927.30	39,691.80	7,290.60
Other (caravan or tent)	2,550.60	2,785.50	8,871.30
Workers' Hostel (Bedroom)		24,099.00	
<b>Total excluding provision for workers in hostels</b>	<b>251,723.50</b>	<b>172,612.30</b>	<b>123,163.50</b>
<b>Provision for workers in hostels</b>			<b>23,757</b>
<b>Total including provision for workers in hostels</b>			<b>146,921</b>

Source: COGHSTA (2013)

Table 72: Estimated subsidised housing demand in the district as 2011 census data

District	Municipality	Households CS-2007	Households 2011	Housing Need 2011	Needs as % of households	% of provincial housing demand
Sekhukhune	Elias Motsoaledi	46,840	49,416	8,161	16.5	5.25
	Fetakgomo Tubatse	88 462	98 159	18 998	19.3	12.22
	Makhuduthamaga	53,654	54,191	6,908	12.7	4.45
	Ephraim Mogale	28,215	29,231	1,729	5.9	1.11
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>230 997</b>	<b>35 796</b>	<b>15.5</b>	

Source: COGHSTA (2017)

### Impact of planned allocations on the current demand over the next five years

The projected demand over the next 5 years is as shown in table 3. The table below shows that at the planned delivery rates, the demand for subsidised housing should fall to 67,415 by the end 2017/2018 financial year. It is important to note that the planned delivery for 2013/14 was not achieved. In an effort to address the gap in the delivery, the National Department of Human Settlements is being approached to increase the allocation for 2014/15 by 100% from 12,815 to 25630. The section that follows shows the proposed allocations to Municipalities based on the subsidy allocation model approved as part of the Multi Year Housing Development Plan.

Table 73: Subsidised housing need projected until 2018

Financial year	Estimated demand at start of year	Number of units built in financial year	Estimated demand at end of year less units built
FY 12/13	123,163	12,000	115,991
FY 13/14	115,991	12,815	107,723
FY 14/15	107,723	13,000	98,945
FY 15/16	98,945	13,500	89,323
FY 16/17	89,323	14,000	78,825
FY 17/18	78,825	14,500	67,415

Source: COGHSTA (2013)

The provision of new housing is still a challenge not only in the district but the whole Limpopo province. The Multi Year Housing Plan developed by the Department of Local Government and Housing (DLGH) has identified challenges which are being faced by the department and municipalities', resulting in poor delivery of houses to beneficiaries.

This plan is aimed at addressing some of the identified key challenges which hamper housing delivery. The department carries the responsibility of providing housing in the province whereas municipalities are responsible for compiling housing waiting lists.

Most projects implemented over the years mentioned in the above table were never completed by developers. However, the department of COGHSTA is addressing blocked projects to meet

NHBRC standards. The department is liaising with the local municipalities within the district regarding progress and issues relating to blocked.

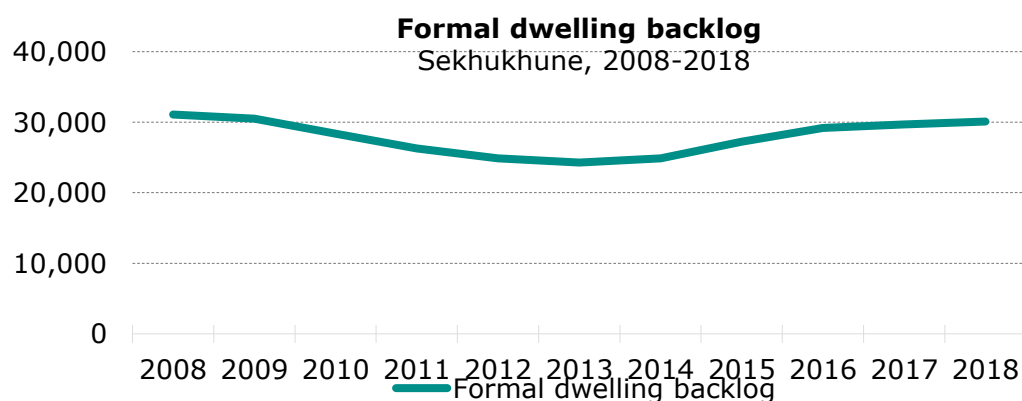
### Summarised status of housing delivery, sites demarcation, township establishment and traditional leadership by the Limpopo Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs

Table 74: Houses completed since 1994 to 2011

Municipality	Units Allocated	Completed Houses	Difference	Housing demand – Stats SA 2011
Elias Motsoaledi	6,442	5,612	830	8,161
Fetakgomo Tubatse	15,673	13,204	2,469	18,998
Ephraim Mogale	3,634	3,414	220	1,729
Makhuduthamaga	6,789	4,664	2,127	6,908
<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>	<b>32,538</b>	<b>26,892</b>	<b>5,646</b>	<b>35,796</b>

Source: COGHSTA (2017)

Figure 41: Formal Dwelling backlog



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

When it comes to the formal dwelling unit backlog (number of households not living in a formal dwelling) over time, in 2008 the number of households not living in a formal dwelling were 31 100 within Sekhukhune District Municipality. From 2008 this number decreased annually at -0.32% to 30 100 in 2018.

### Challenges and Interventions

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Untraceable beneficiaries</li> <li>• Beneficiaries whose livelihood has improved</li> <li>• Beneficiaries who are not aware that they have benefited because wrong people have unlawfully benefited on their behalf</li> <li>• Provision of houses to the needy households</li> <li>• Lack of sufficient funding to address the demand</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous verification of Data base of beneficiaries from Local Municipalities</li> <li>• Review and implementation of Indigent Registers</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lack of Bulk Infrastructure</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verification of Data base of beneficiaries from Local Municipalities</li> </ul>
---	--

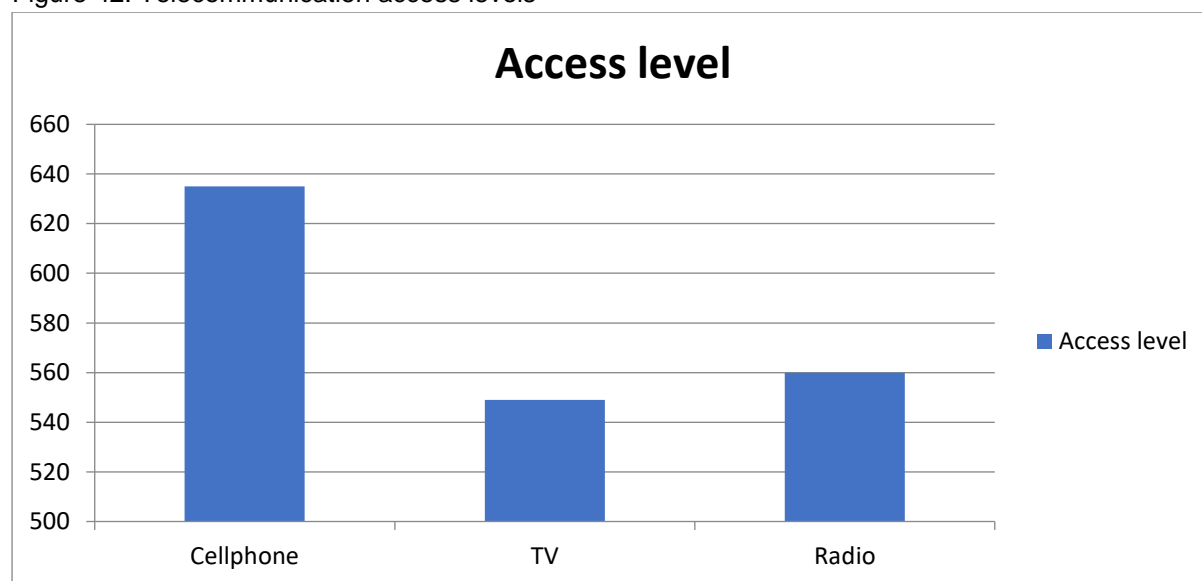
### 2.5.9. Telecommunication

Telephone facility remains a challenge in the SDM's vicinity. It is commendable that many villages in the district have access to the use of telephone and cell phones but there are these other villages where there is totally no reception for both telephones and cell phones.

Sekhukhune population experiences a clear cut from the international communities due to lack of Information Communication Technology (ICT). The State of the Province report that was presented in 2005 has shown that Sekhukhune was still lagging in comparative terms with the other Districts in the province. The population fails to take the advantage of the ever-expanding internet and e-mail telecommunication facilities especially for educational and business opportunities. This is potentially an important pathway to economic growth in the district.

In addition, there are still villages in the district that cannot get proper signals for radios and televisions because of their geographic location. This is especially true of the mountainous villages like Tswereng, Mahlabeng, Rostok, Mooihoek, India, Ga-Makopa, Pelangwe, Phahlamanoge, Tjate, Kgautswane, etc.

Figure 42: Telecommunication access levels



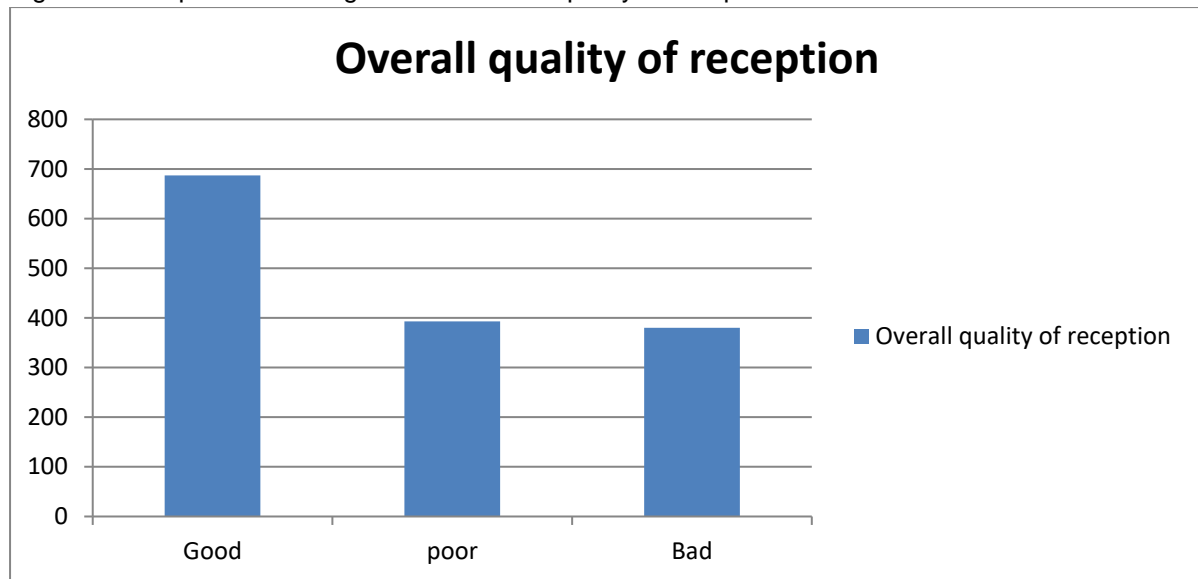
*SDM ward committees 2015-2016*

36% of the villages recorded that they access cell phone, 31% access TV and 32% access radio as a means of tele-communication.

#### Proportion of villages that recorded quality of reception as good, poor, or bad

The graph below presents the proportion of villages that recorded quality of reception on all communication (Cellular phone, TV and Radio) as either good, poor or bad.

Figure 43: Proportion of villages that recorded quality of reception



*SDM ward committees 2015-2016*

At least 380 villages recorded that the quality of cell phone reception is bad compared to 687 villages that said the reception is good. 393 villages said reception is poor.

The district municipality and its locals must develop strategies that will lead to improved coverage of telecommunication in the villages. This will be achieved if stakeholders such as SABC and Cell phone Service Providers are brought on board.

The main challenge within the district is poor access to telecommunication networks. This affects the business development and its effectiveness within the district. This can be addressed through proper planning of network alignment by the Providers.

### **2.5.10. Roads and Stormwater**

The development of the road and transport network in Sekhukhune is of vital importance given the planned economic trajectory of the district, as well as the potential offered by Dilokong Corridor. In general, the district is well connected to its surrounding areas to the East, West and South. However, geographic factors had hindered connectivity impeded road construction there. There is, in fact a stretch of approximately 150km between Lebowakgomo and the R36 through the JG Strijdom tunnel without tarred road access northwards.

Within the District itself, there is a general lack of roads – and of tarred roads in particularly – connecting the inner section of Sekhukhune, which consists largely of scattered villages with minimum economic activity at present. The district has decided however, not to encourage continued scattered development at present – and future transport routes will therefore be concentrated along the major nodes of economic activity. It is hoped that this will encourage workers from the rural areas to urban areas – a philosophy in line with the NSDP principles.

In contrast to the inner section of the district, the semi-urban areas of Sekhukhune are relatively well-served by the Provincial and National routes running through it. These routes, as will be seen later in this section, are supporting the area's main economic activities reasonably well at



present. What remains to be seen, however, is whether the planned platinum mining expansion in the area will be adequately served by current infrastructure in the district. Roads and stormwater drainage is estimated at 30 727.

## The Road Network in Sekhukhune

The Sekhukhune District has one major national road within it (the N11), as well as several provincial arterial routes including the R25, R33, R36, R37, R555, R573 and R579. There are also a limited number of tarred minor roads, such as those leading into Jane Furse. The remainders of the roads in Sekhukhune, however, are largely gravel roads that serve to connect the rural areas within the district. The following table summarizes the situation as per municipality.

Table 75: Road network in Sekhukhune (District Roads)

Local Municipality	Length (km)	% of Network
Fetakgomo Tubatse	580	39
Elias Motsoaledi	223	15
Ephraim Mogale	236	16
Makhuduthamaga	452	30
<b>Total</b>	<b>1491</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: SDM (undated) Road Master Plan

## Report of the Road Agency Limpopo (RAL) (2019) on the roads tarred and re-graveled in the past three years, and plans to tar for the next three years within Sekhukhune District Municipality

Table 76: Kilometres of roads tarred

Municipality	2016-2017	2017-2018	2018-2019
Fetakgomo	0	0	0
Greater Tubatse	0	0	27.3
Ephraim Mogale	0	10	0
Elias Motsoaledi	0	0	0
Makhuduthamaga	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>27.3</b>

Source: RAL (2019)

Table 77: Names and Kilometres of roads planned for maintenance - Provincial and National roads

Municipality	2019-2020	Km planned for rehabilitation (2019-20)	2020-2021	2021-2022
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	0	0	0	0
Ephraim Mogale	N/A	N/A	0	0
Elias Motsoaledi	P51/3	6	0	0

	D1948	5.6	0	
Makhuduthamaga	N/A	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>		<b>11.6</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: RAL (2019)

Table 78: Kilometres of roads planned for tarring

Municipality	2019-2020	Km for upgrade (2019-20)	2020-2021	Km for upgrade (2020-21)	2021-2022
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• D4190: Apel/ GaMakanya to Mmabulela to R37</li> <li>• D1392: Ga Masha to Mampuru to Tukakgomo to Makgabane</li> <li>• D4170: Melao to Maapea and D4170 to Marula Platinum Mine</li> </ul>	13.8 22.5 13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- D4166: Riba Cross to Ga Riba Village</li> <li>- D4200: Marulaneng to Maila to Mphanama to Nchabeleng</li> </ul>	11.7 19	N/A
Ephraim Mogale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• D4311, D4310 &amp; D4328 (Legolaneng to Monsterius)</li> </ul>	12.9	1. D2922 & D2919: Keerom to Doornlaagte to Tshikanoshi	10.6	N/A
Elias Motsoaledi	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Makhuduthamaga	1. D4370 (TOMPI Seleksa to Magaladi to Phokwane)	22.6	4. D4253: Ga Masemola	5	N/A
<b>Total</b>		<b>84.8</b>		<b>45.3</b>	<b>N/A</b>

Source: RAL (2019)

### The railway networks

The Sekhukhune district has **three railway lines**, originally developed to serve mining activity in the area. These are:

- The railway line entering Sekhukhune in the south next to Stoffberg, which continues northwards for 30kms (it leads to an abandoned mine near the Mapochs mine).
- The line entering Sekhukhune in the west near Nutfield, which continues eastwards to Marble Hall.
- The line entering Sekhukhune in the east, passes near Ohrigstad and Burgersfort (past abandoned mine) and ends near Steelpoort (near the Tubatse Mine).

It became obvious that these lines, originally developed to serve past mining and agricultural activities in Sekhukhune, have not been re-routed to serve new (or future) mines in the area.

If this continues, the results will be that mining expansion in Sekhukhune will place additional burden on the road network in the area. Beyond commercial usage, a commuter rail link between Pretoria and south-west part of Sekhukhune (along the Moloto Road) will clearly be useful, given the high levels of male migrancy.

### **Limpopo's Development Corridors and Sekhukhune Roads**

The LGDP identified four development corridors, which will drive future economic development in the province. Of these, the Dilokong and Phalaborwa Corridors travel through the Sekhukhune District and are of immediate economic relevance for the area.

The Dilokong Corridor includes some important roads that fall within the Sekhukhune area. These are:

- Polokwane to Burgersfort (P33/1 and P33/2 via Mafefe)
- Flag Boshielo Dam through Lebowakgomo and Mafefe, linking the Sekhukhune District with the Phalaborwa and Kruger National Park.
- Chueniespoort via Boyne to Mankweng
- The Phalaborwa Corridor connects Hazyview (Mpumalanga) with Phalaborwa and Tzaneen through a number of small towns on the western side of the Kruger National Park. It includes two roads sections that fall within the Sekhukhune area:
  - Route section P17/3-5, D726, P112/1-3, P43/2, D1308 and P54/1.
  - Road section P146/1 from Klaserie to Blyde River, P116/1 from Hoedspruit to Ohrigstad via the Strijdom Tunnel and P181/1 from the Oaks to Burgersfort

### **Challenges and Interventions**

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor conditions of corridors roads owned by provincial/national roads in the SDM jurisdiction include R555 (Steelpoort to Stoffberg), R579, N11, R37 (Burgersfort to Polokwane), R33 (Stoffberg) etc.</li> <li>• Lack of coordination among the municipalities, Sector departments, RAL and SANRAL</li> <li>• Inadequate implementation of budgeted road projects</li> <li>• Insufficient construction of bridges</li> <li>• Lack of railway network in mining areas (Shortage of alternative mode of transport)</li> <li>• Traffic congestion (Heavy vehicles)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• District Infrastructure Technical team to engage sector departments, RAL and SANRAL to ensure they conduct routine maintenance, rehabilitation and upgrading.</li> <li>• Request all stakeholder to attend District meeting to ensure adequate flow of information.</li> <li>• Implementation of Rural Roads Assets Management Plans and prioritise critical projects</li> <li>• Involvement of Private Sector (mining houses) in the development of bridges and tarring of roads.</li> <li>• Introduction of railway line to reduce the volume of heavy vehicles.</li> <li>• Introduction of weighbridges</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inadequate stormwater control system</li> <li>• Lack of facilities for heavy vehicles (e.g., weighbridges)</li> <li>• Inadequate re-graveling of the district and local access roads</li> <li>• Potholes existing on some of the roads</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Full implementation of road and stormwater master plan</li> <li>• Prioritisation of gravel roads that are frequently used and access to local amenities</li> </ul>
--	---

### 2.5.11. Transportation

For goods and services to be transported throughout the district, organized transport system is required. The main transport systems are the following: busses, taxis and trucks. There are two types of bus companies which are private and public. Private are those that are owned by individuals not related to government and public are those that are owned by an organ of state or government itself.

#### Road Safety & Law Enforcement

Sekhukhune District consists of one hundred and fifty one (151) Law Enforcement officers whilst the local municipalities have 75 traffic officers which gives the total of 226. The district consists of seven (7) National Rods; N11 which is between Roedan and Stoffberg, R37-Lebowakgomo to Burgersfort, 573-Molto Road to Moteti, R555-Ohrigstart to Stoffberg, R579-Apel Cross to Groblersdal and R25-Groblersdal to Verena. Sekhukhune is sharing boundaries with one province which is Mpumalanga, as well as at an exit and entry for neighbouring countries such as Mozambique and Swaziland.

#### Traffic Infrastructures

The district has three (3) Provincial Traffic Stations and one (1) Provincial Traffic Control Centres.

#### Level of Development

- **Dilokong Traffic Station:** The station has Registration and Licensing facility and Law Enforcement. It also provides services to mining industrial area; example Marula and Dilokong Mines to name few.
- **Moutse Traffic Station:** The station has Registration and Licensing facility and Law Enforcement. It provides services to local villages and three national roads.
- **Nebo Traffic Station:** The institution provide law enforcement and it is without Registering Authority facility.
- **Rathoke Traffic Control Centre:** The station provides services for overload control in support of road maintenance and reduction of accident. It also provides test for light motor vehicles in all categories of vehicles and ordinary Law enforcement.

All local Municipalities within the district are providing law enforcement, registration licensing and roadworthy tests and driving license test services, which is overseen by the district, there are also 2 private vehicle testing centres in Sekhukhune district, of which the role of the department is to monitor them.

### Air Transport

There are no commercial airports or air transportation in the district. Present, there are only two registered airfields in the towns of Groblersdal and Marble Hall. They are used as emergency airfields. They are utilized mainly by the business and tourism sectors, as well as local farmers wishing to spray their cultivated fields. There is also an air strip in Elandsdraal in the Ephraim Mogale Municipality, which is not maintained. The table below summarizes status of landing strips in the district.

Table 79: Landing strips

Municipality	2020-2021
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	Steelpoort Area
Ephraim Mogale	Marble Hall
Elias Motsoaledi	Rassblaar lodge
Makhuduthamaga	None
<b>Total</b>	<b>8</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2018)

### Public Transport

Transport operation in the district provide public passenger transport services such as issuing of operating licenses for buses and mini-buses conduct monitoring of bus subsidised for the routes granted. Public Transport Services have been decentralised to local municipalities for easy access, at Dilokong and Groblersdal cost centre.

According to the District's integrated Transport Plan, the most common forms of public passenger transport are the buses and taxis. The taxi industry determines its routes largely by looking at factors like the location of towns and villages, dominant economic activities in the area and employed status within the district.

Transport routes in Sekhukhune are often limited by deteriorating roads conditions as well as local storm water problems caused by rainy season. The following are the findings of the review of the Sekhukhune District Current Public Transport Record (CPTA) and Integrated Transport Plan (ITP) in 2007. The report covered an overview of what is involved in public transport in the Sekhukhune District Municipality regarding facilities, the capacity utilization of ranks and routes, the waiting times of passengers and vehicles, the operational vehicle and the number of trips made per operational vehicle. The facility surveys were conducted at taxi ranks, bus terminals and train stations. The survey indicated that the Sekhukhune District Municipality does not have commuter rail services.

In 2018/2019, there were three bus terminals in the Sekhukhune District Municipality and have a total of 82 taxi facilities of which more than 75 per cent are informal. The 190 (approximately 50% outwards-bound) taxi routes in the SDM are as follows:

- 15% in the Elias Motsoaledi LM,
- 3% in Fetakgomo LM,
- 17% in Ephraim Mogale LM,
- 43% in the Greater Tubatse LM
- 22% in Makhuduthamaga LM.

Of the subsidized bus routes in the SDM, 57% are in the Elias Motsoaledi LM and 43% in the Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality.

The main findings obtained from the analysis of the route utilization are that there is a vast oversupply of taxis on most routes in the SDM. The route utilization survey noted 1462 taxis in the SDM area. Furthermore 1372 taxis were noted in the Elias Motsoaledi LM, 287 in Fetakgomo LM, 530 in Greater Tubatse LM and 1083 in Makhuduthamaga LM.

There are 28 buses in operation on the subsidized routes in the SDM area. There are metered-taxi activities in the Greater Tubatse LM, Light Delivery Vehicle (LDVs) are utilized for learners' trips as well as the areas where the quality of the road is not good.

## Bus Industry

There are two different types of bus operators in the Sekhukhune District, namely:

- Subsidized operators
- Non-subsidized operators

## Subsidized Bus Routes

Table 80: Existing subsidized bus routes in the Sekhukhune District

Municipality	2020-2021
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	None
Ephraim Mogale	GNT Ephraim Mogale in the Eastern site
Elias Motsoaledi	GNT Elias Motsoaledi in the Eastern site
Makhuduthamaga	None
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

## Existing Non-Subsidized Operators

Table 81: Existing Non-Subsidized Bus Routes in the Sekhukhune District Municipal Area

Municipality	2020-2021
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	7 Contracted services to mines, 1 GNT Bapedi
Ephraim Mogale	None

Elias Motsoaledi	None
Makhuduthamaga	None
<b>Total</b>	<b>8</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

### Taxi ranks and bus terminals

Table 82: Number of taxi ranks and bus terminals - 2021/2022

Municipality	Number of taxi ranks	Number of bus terminals
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	10	0
Ephraim Mogale	4	0
Elias Motsoaledi	6	1
Makhuduthamaga	6	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>1</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

Table 83: Train stations (rail services)

Municipality	Total number of train stations
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	None
Ephraim Mogale	None
Elias Motsoaledi	None
Makhuduthamaga	None
<b>Total</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

### Transport Regulation

Table 84: Accident Statistics

Districts	COMPARISON OF ACCIDENT STATISTICS: APRIL – JUNE 2020 VERSUS APRIL-JUNE 2021			
	Accident Reports		Fatalities or P4	
	Apr – Jun 2020	Apr – Jun 2021	Apr – Jun 2020 P4	Apr – Jun 2020 P4
Capricorn	59	118	27	60
Mopani	82	141	24	61
Sekhukhune	31	78	18	62

<b>Vhembe</b>	32	78	20	72
<b>Waterberg</b>	51	87	25	64
<b>Total</b>	<b>255</b>	<b>502</b>	<b>114</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>NB: P4 = Fatal</b>				

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

Table 85: Possible Causes of Accidents

<b>TIME WHEN ACCIDENTS USUALY HAPPEN</b>	<b>POSSIBLE CAUSES OF ACCIDENTS</b>
Fridays to Mondays and Public holidays from 16h00 to 06h00	Speeding/Driver lost control
	Following distance
	Pedestrian in roadway
	Animal in roadway
	Reckless driving/sideswipe
	Head on collision
	Overtaking
	Fatigue

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

Table 86: Accident Hotspots

<b>MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>HAZADIOUS LOCATIONS/ACCIDENT HOTSPOTS</b>
Tubatse Fetakgomo	R37 Mecklenburg
	R555 Steelpoort
	R574/R579 Jane Furse Road
Makhuduthamaga	Nil for quarter 1
Ephraim Mogale	R573 Marble Road
	N11 Roedan
Elias Motsoaledi	Nil for quarter 1

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Transport (2021)

### **Status of Integrated Transport Plan:**

- Sekhukhune: Developed an ITP in 2004, reviewed in 2007 on old guideline.
- Elias Motsoaledi: Developed an ITP in 2008 on old guideline.
- Ephraim Mogale & Makhuduthamaga: No ITPs
- Fetakgomo Tubatse: Developed an ITP in 2004 on old guidelines. The ITP was reviewed in 2015 in conjunction with the department but was not submitted to MEC for approval. Fetakgomo Tubatse has commenced with the review of their ITP to include the former Fetakgomo Municipality area.

### **Provincial Secretariat for Police Service**

#### **1. Background**

The district office has 3x officials who are responsible for doing oversight on the police service. Their oversight role is mainly done through the National Monitoring Tool to monitor the Police Stations and different tools developed by the province to monitor the specialised units and garages.



## 2. Components monitored and evaluated by the district:

8 specialised Units broken down as follows:

- Employee Health and Wellness (EHW): = 2
- Family violence, child, and sexual offenses (FCS): = 2
- K9 (Dog Unit): =3
- Local Criminal record Centre (LCRC): = 1
- Rapid Response Services (10111 and flying squad): =0

Provincial Secretariat for Police Service

- The district has no Police stations linked to the 10111-call centre.
- Stock theft and Endangered species : 1
- Vehicle Crime Investigation (VCI) : 1 Satellite
- Water Policing and diving : 0
- SAPS garages : 0
- Police stations : 21

### Challenges

- Increasing of unregistered mini taxis due to lawlessness
- Damage to the road network due to increase on heavy vehicles
- Increase on road traffic fatalities due to lawlessness
- Narrow roads due to none upgrading of roads
- Stray animals due to lack of fencing.
- Taxi conflict due to non-compliance to operating licenses
- Illegal transportation of workers (e.g., farm workers/School children) due to inadequate bus routes subsidy.
- Lack of alternative routes for trucks
- Inadequate signage

## STRATEGIC CHALLENGES & INTERVENTION

### Strategic Challenges:

- High fatality rate
- Increase on illegal public transport operators

### Strategic Interventions:

- Deployment of law enforcement traffic officers for 24/7 on strategic routes.
- Deployment of public transport unit in strategic locations
- Deployment of unmarked traffic vehicles to deal with moving violations
- Deployment of speed enforcement on strategic locations
- Upgrading of the main roads (e.g., R37, R579, etc.)
- The province will monitor implementation of average speed over a distance on the N1.

- Manage traffic contravention management system which will enforce compliance to traffic offenders.
- The province will also implement pillars approved by the National Road Safety Strategy 2016-2030 (NRSS), as follows:
  - **Pillar 1: Road Safety Management:** strengthening relationship with stakeholders, eliminate fraud & corruption.
  - **Pillar 2: Safer roads & mobility:** Identify & address high road safety risk & hazardous location. Have a system to coordinate lack of road signage & road markings with affected authorities.
  - **Pillar 3: Safer Vehicles:** Increase traffic enforcement around vehicle roadworthiness. Enhance visibility through “Lights –on” programme.
  - **Pillar 4: Safer Road users:** Improve Road users’ behavior & implement 24/7 Law enforcement in critical routes.
  - **Pillar 5: Post-crash Response:** Strengthening relationship with Road Accident Fund (RAF) at district level through Road Incident Management System (RIMS).
- Urge Municipalities, as planning authorities, to develop and implement Integrated Transport Plans.
- Establishment and resuscitation of Transport Forums
- Continue with Passenger Subsidy Programme

## 2.5.12. Sport, Arts and Culture

Sport, Arts and Culture play an important role in the physical, psychological, social, technical and tactical development of young and matured people. Sekhukhune District Municipality plays an advocacy role/ function whereby most of the programmes are driven by the provincial department of Sport, Arts and Culture. The communities within the district participate in various sport, arts and culture programmes that are meant to promote a healthy lifestyle in the society.

Table 87: Norms and Standards

PROGRAMMES	NORMS AND STANDARDS	BACKLOGS
1. Recreation sport	1 Sport and Recreation facility per ward	Identification process in progress
2. Arts and culture centres	1 arts and culture centre per municipality	5 Arts and culture centre
3. Library infrastructures	1 library per 10 000 household	14

Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

## MANDATE OF THE DEPARTMENT

### STRATEGIC OUTCOMES:

**Increased social cohesion and national identity through:**

Cultural Affairs: Arts and Culture

- Promote culture, conserve and manage the cultural, historical assets and resources of the province (district) by rendering various services

#### Museums and Heritage Services

- Heritage and Museums and resource management in the province.
- Preservation of heritage site

#### Language Services

- Preservation and promotion of languages

#### Library and Information Services

- Assist local authorities in rendering of public library services and providing of an archive service in the province

#### Sport Development, Recreation and School Sport

- Provide assistance to provincial sport associations and other relevant bodies to stimulate the development of sport. Facilitate development of facilities with a view to improving life of the disadvantaged and promote and develop sport tourism through major events.

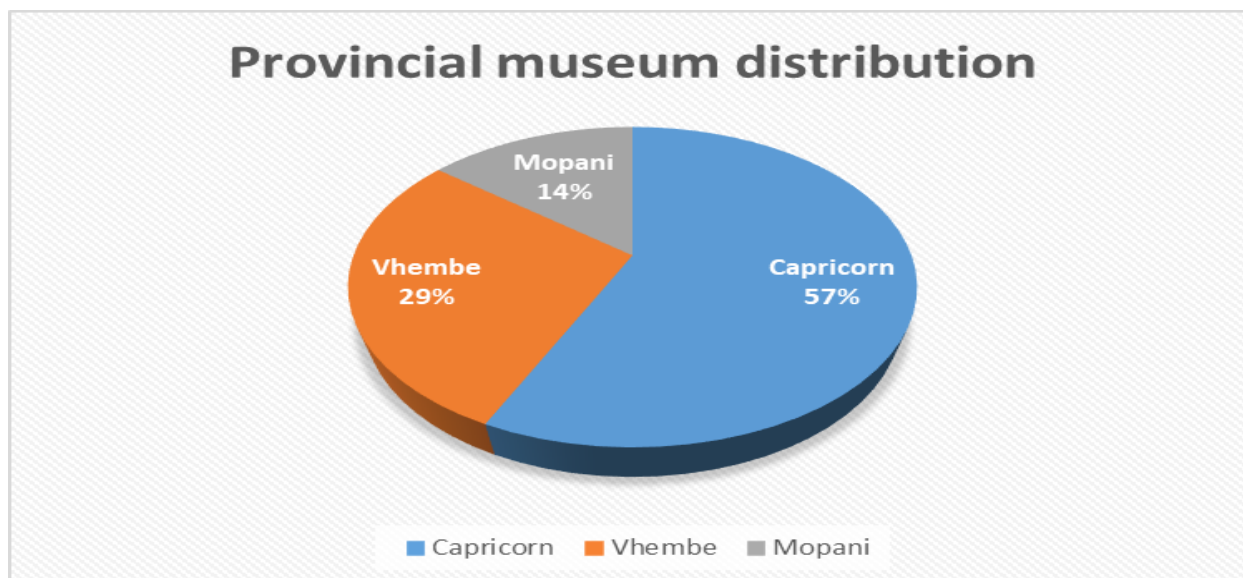
**TABLE 88: BRIEF ANALYSIS OF PROGRAMME INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISIONING BY SPORT, ARTS AND CULTURE SECTOR IN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICTS**

MANDATE	ANALYSIS	STATUS	WHAT BENEFITS COULD BE DERIVED	STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS
Arts and Culture Industry	No art centres	No art centres	Contribution to the Mzansi Golden	Public – private Partnerships in the provisioning of Art Centres
			Economy Contribution to the Creative Industry	Joint Budget provisioning with local municipality and district
			Job Creation in the Creative Industry	Identification and Confirmation of External donors
Museums and Heritage Services	No Museum in Sekhukhune only Tjate Heritage Site	TJATE HERITAGE SITE has been recognized by the Department and the district however there is no budget allocation of the site due to budget	Contribution to Job Creation	There is no budget allocation
			Promote culture and heritage	Advocate for funding for development and support of museums and heritage sites in Sekhukhune District
			Contribute to social cohesion	Advocate for funding of identification of

MANDATE	ANALYSIS	STATUS	WHAT BENEFITS COULD BE DERIVED	STRATEGIC INTERVENTIONS
		constraints of the Department	Contribute to the Revenue enhancement strategy of the province	more heritage sites and museums in the district

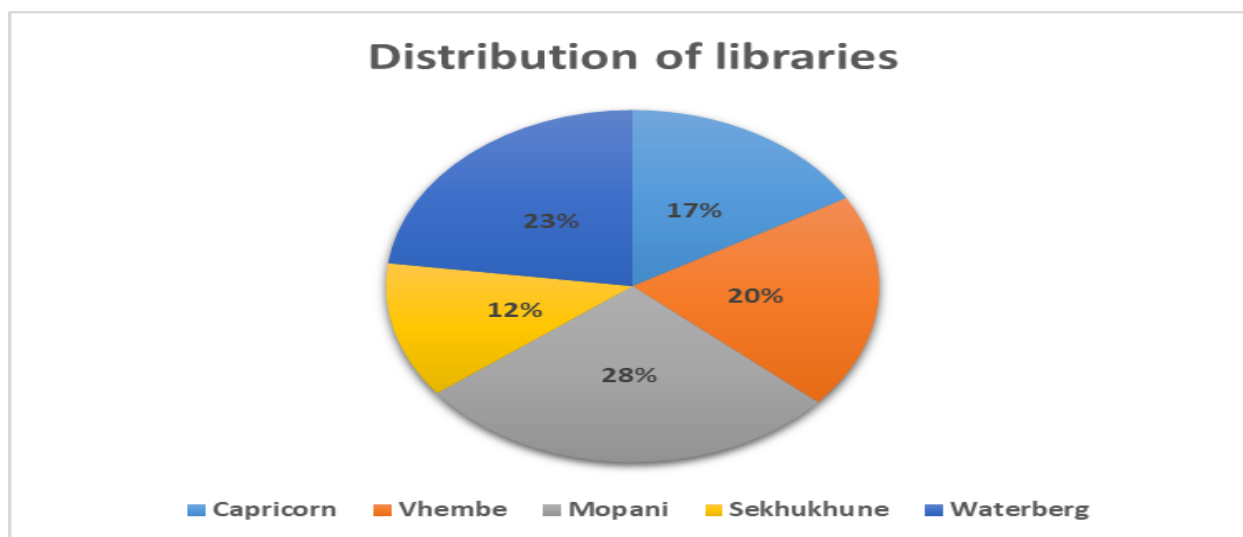
Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

### MUSEUMS AND HERITAGE SITES: MUSEUMS AND HERITAGE SITES ARE ONLY IN 3 DISTRICTS OF THE PROVINCE



Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

### LIBRARY SERVICES:

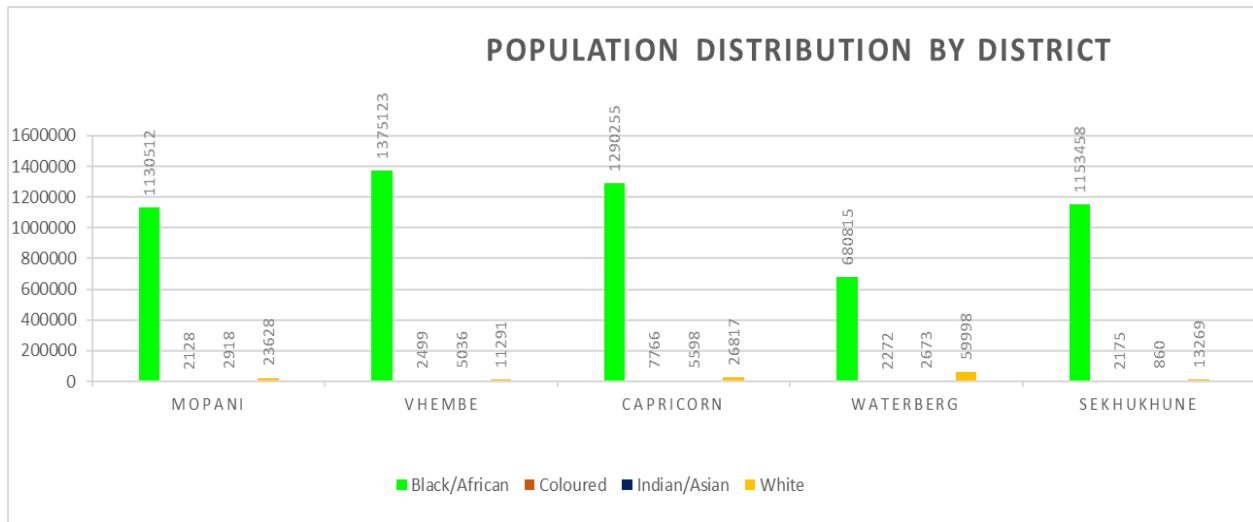


Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

### SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS OF INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISIONING BY SPORT, LIBRARY SERVICES IN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICTS

- The distribution of libraries indicated in the graph does not reflect the demography of the province.

- There are only 12 libraries in Sekhukhune District which does not match the population of the districts.
- There is a great need for equity in the provision of libraries in Sekhukhune district in all municipalities.
- The whole province has an estimated backlog of 220 new libraries if every ward has to have a fully functional library.
- The 1,1 million people in the district need libraries.
- The following is the demographics of all districts that are backing up the provision of libraries in Sekhukhune:



Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

### STATUS OF ALL LIBRARIES: IN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT

In terms of norms and standards there should be 1 library per 10 000 households. Currently there are 11 libraries in the district and there is a need for 14 libraries.

Table 89: Number of Libraries and Backlogs

NAME OF THE MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF LIBRARIES	BACKLOGS
Ephraim Mogale	1	2
Fetakgomo Tubatse	4	6
Makhuduthamaga	3	3
Elias Motsoaledi	3	3
<b>Sekhukhune District</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>14</b>

Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

**Table 90: Sekhukhune Libraries**

<b>NAME OF LIBRARY</b>	<b>AREA</b>	<b>MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>NUMBER OF PERSONNEL AND DESIGNATIONS</b>	<b>STATUS OF THE LIBRARY</b>	<b>CHALLENGES</b>	<b>RECOMMENDATIONS</b>
Ga-Phaahla library	Ga-Phaahla	Makhudutham aga Municipality	1 librarian 2 library assistants	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Phokwane	Phokwane	Makhudutham aga	1 librarian 1 library assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Jane Furse	Jane Furse	Makhudutham aga Municipality	1 librarian 2 library assistants	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Patantswana	Patantswana	Makhudutham aga	1 librarian 1 library assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Groblerdal	Groblerdal	Elias Motsoaledi	2 librarians	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Vlakfontein	Sephaku	Elias Motsoaledi	1 librarian 1 library assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Roosenekal	Roosenekal	Elias Motsoaledi	1 librarian	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner, General Worker and Library Assistant a	Appoint Cleaner, General Worker and Library Assistant
Marble Hall	Marble Hall	Ephraim Mogale	2 library assistants	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner	One cleaner needed
Mapodile	Mapodile	Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	1 librarian 1 Library Assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Ohrigstad	Ohrigstad	Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	1 librarian 1 library assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker
Sekhukhune District	Lebowakgomo	Lepelle Nkumpi	24 librarians 2 Library Assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Cleaner and General Worker

NAME OF LIBRARY	AREA	MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF PERSONNEL AND DESIGNATIONS	STATUS OF THE LIBRARY	CHALLENGES	RECOMMENDATIONS
Burgersfort	Burgersfort	Fetakgomo /Tubatse	2 library Assistant	Library is functioning	Shortage of Librarian, cleaner and General Worker	Appoint Librarian, Cleaner and General Worker

Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

**Table 91: Sekhukhune Sport Situational Analysis: including community grounds**

Name	District	Population	Number of facilities
Elias Motsoaledi Local Municipality	Sekhukhune	268,256	49
Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality	Sekhukhune	127,168	11
Fetakgomo/Greater Tubatse Local Municipality	Sekhukhune	489,902	85
Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality	Sekhukhune	284,435	46

- ***There are no major Sport Stadia in Sekhukhune that can host both national and international matches***
- ***No stadiums that can host PSL matches***
- ***There is a great need of at least 1 Sport Stadium in Sekhukhune District that has the capacity to host national and international matches***

Sources: Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture: Limpopo (2022)

## SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS OF SPORT INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISIONING IN SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT

- Given the situational analysis above, the Department, in collaboration with the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture at a National level consulted with Sekhukhune District and its local municipalities for the provision of sport infrastructure since 2017/18.
- The Provincial Department does not have Budget for Sport Infrastructure.
- Its role is to advocate for funding for municipalities in the area of sport infrastructure.
- The following slides gives a report and analysis of what has been done so far in the district:

### Challenges:

- Poor maintenance of existing sport, arts, and culture facilities.
- Under-funding of sport, arts, and culture development programmes.
- Insufficient professional support for sport, arts, and culture programme by local municipalities.
- Inadequate capacity-building programmes
- Lack of professional facilities within the local municipalities.
- Lack of personnel at Sekhukhune Satellite Academy of Sport (Maleoskop)
- Lack of Arts and Culture Centers
- Lack of service level agreements between provincial department and municipalities

### 2.5.13. Health

South Africa has huge health care resources compared with many middle-income countries, yet the bulk of these resources are in the private sector and serve a minority of the population thereby undermining the country's ability to produce quality care and improve healthcare outcomes. Many of the public facilities, especially hospitals and clinics need to be revitalized. National government should expand on progress made in upgrading facilities in many public hospitals and clinics as part of a physical infrastructure programme. The government is determined to end the huge inequalities that exist in the public and private sectors by making sure that these sectors work together.

As promulgated in the Constitution, Schedule 4-part A, health service is a functional area of National and Provincial legislative competence. In terms of section 155 (6) (a) the Provincial government must provide for the monitoring and support of local government in the province, albeit can be assigned to a municipality in terms of Section 156 of Constitution.

The government has identified the following priorities that must inform a major improvement in the health care system:

- Increasing bursaries of the health care professionals, including increasing the employment of community health workers, which will be linked to the improvement of the district health system.
- Improving working conditions and the provision of decent wages for health workers.
- Reduce the impact of HIV/AIDS on individuals, families, communities, and society by expanding access to appropriate treatment, care and support.
- Strengthen the fight against AIDS through collaboration with partners at all levels of society and accelerate implementation of the HIV and AIDS and STI plans.
- Strengthen the formal partnership against AIDS at all levels of our society including the strengthening the South African National AIDS Council (SANAC).
- Improve quality of health services and physical infrastructure revitalization.

Health services are critical in nurturing human development and tend to have important economic spin-offs as well. Countries that have invested significantly in primary health care (PHC), in particular, generally produce a healthier, and therefore more productive, workforce. There is also significant international evidence to illustrate that early investments in PHC result in less strain on the health budget (and, consequently, on social spending) in later years. This is an important debate for municipalities which are now largely responsible for PHC in South Africa.

Within Limpopo province, the provision of health facilities is generally inadequate in comparison with other provinces. More specifically, access to health facilities within Sekhukhune District Municipality itself is fairly poor. On average, there is 1 clinic for every 17,000 people within the district and approximately 97,500 people per hospital.

A better health is central to the well-being of the people within the district. It also makes an important contribution to economic development as healthy people live longer and are more productive. There are various diseases that affect the wellbeing of the communities within the district and these include HIV/AIDS, diabetes, Hypertension, Tuberculosis, etc.



## Sekhukhune District Analysis

The district is sub-divided into four local municipalities; namely, Elias Motsoaledi (population: 277 864), Ephraim Mogale (population: 149 488), Fetakgomo-Tubatse (population: 556 422) and Makhuduthamaga (population: 283 154). Health facilities: 7 hospitals (2x regional and 5x district) and PHC = 89 (86 clinics and 3 health centers).

The first line of referrals from the clinics and CHCs goes to district hospitals while district hospitals refer their patients to regional hospitals. Service delivery is driven through the following health programmes: TB & HIV, MCWH & N, Hospitals & PHC) in partnership with the Community Based Home Carers attached to clinics. Of the total district adjusted population of 1 229 286, 94% is uninsured. The unemployment rate is at 50.9% which is higher than the national average of 25.5%.

The district management team is operating with the acting District Executive Manager, 2/7 permanent appointed directors, 4/7 CEOs appointed, 4/7 senior clinical managers appointed, 6/7 nurse managers appointed and 0/5 sub-district managers appointed. In addition, the district is having a vast shortage of professional nurses and support staff (particularly the cleaners and grounds men). There is a high vacancy rate of health professionals, especially medical officers (70%) and specialists (93%) and this is attributed to the ruralness of the district.

The district is experiencing vast shortage of ambulances which is at 1:29 729 instead of 1:10 000. The district terrain contributes to the shortage of ambulances as 90% of the roads are not tarred. The condition of the roads contributes to the repeated break down of ambulances which results in most of them being in and out of merchandise.

The district has high economic development activities because of the mining industry (producing platinum) and the business sector. It also has a high MVA rate due to the high traffic on the R37 and R555 roads. The high economic activities around the district, have resulted in a complete shift from the traditional housing structures to the modernised houses as an indication of improved socio-economic status. The district is unable to recruit and retain skilled Health Professionals because of geographical location. The high staff turnover rate amongst professionals, impacts negatively on service delivery because of the rural environment.

Economy is driven by agriculture, mining & tourism activities. The budget allocated for **2017/2018** was R2 018 158 000, for **2018/2019** was R2 135 925 000 and for **2020/2021** is **R2 139 782 000**. The growth percentage for **2018 /2019** was 5.5% and for **2019 /2020** is 0.002 %. The growth is only on Personnel budget. Goods and services budget is always adjusted down by around 30%.

Despite the insufficient budget allocated for both personnel and material resources, the district is still delivering comprehensive and integrated services to the communities.

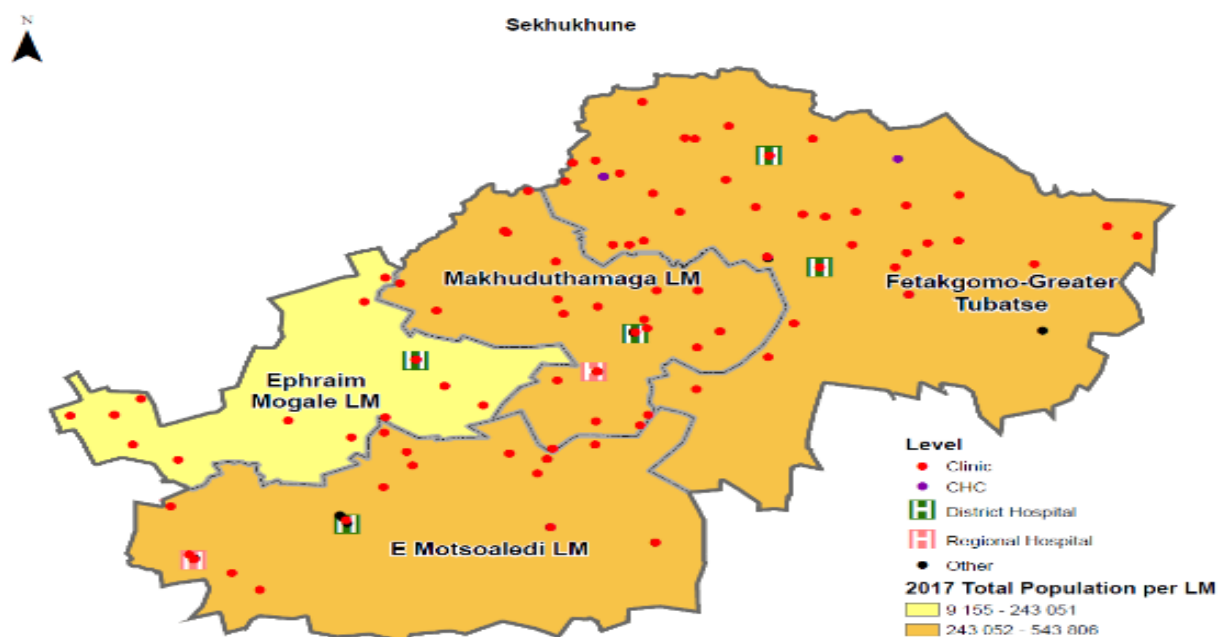
### 3.2.2 Number of Health Facilities in Sekhukhune District

When it comes to access to healthcare facilities, there is an insignificant number of health facilities within the Limpopo province. Especially in Sekhukhune district, where on average there is 1 clinic for every 17 000 people and approximately 97 500 persons per hospital.

The map below shows how these health facilities are spatially located across the district. There are specific areas within the district without health facilities whereby the residents from those areas are served by mobile clinic weekly or Bi-weekly. However, coverage of health services alone is not sufficient to guarantee health outcomes. It is required that services are of a sufficient level of quality to be effective in reducing morbidity and mortality.

### Spatial location of health services within SDM

Map 14: Spatial location of health services within SDM



Source: Department of Health, Limpopo, 2022

The Fetakgomo Tubatse Municipality which has the highest population in the district has a total of 38 clinics and 2 hospitals.

Table 92: Sekhukhune Health facilities

MUNICIPALITY	Ward based outreach teams	Clinic	CHC	District Hospital	Regional Hospital	On call	Night duty
Elias Motsoaledi	1	15	0	1	1	0	2
Ephraim Mogale	1	15	0	1	0	0	0
Fetakgomo Tubatse	2	35	3	2	0	0	5
Makhuduthamaga	1	21	0	1	1	2	0
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>7</b>

Source: Dept. of Health: Limpopo (2022)

Table 93: Specific areas without health facilities and how they are being catered for

Municipality	
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	Shubushubung, Rostock, Tsebeng, Mahlabeng and Mooilek- served by mobile clinic weekly
Ephraim Mogale	Serithing/Mabitsi, Ngwalemong, Hlopha - served by mobile clinic weekly
Elias Motsoaledi	Sterkfontein A&B, Luckau and Ramogwerane - served by mobile clinic biweekly
Makhuduthamaga	Leolo Mountains served by Mobile clinic weekly

Source: Dept. of Health: Limpopo (2018)

Table 94: Availability of mobile clinics and their frequency of visits

Municipality	Number of mobile clinics	Frequency of visits/availability
Fetakgomo/Tubatse	108	Weekly and Bi-weekly
Ephraim Mogale	65	Weekly and Monthly
Elias Motsoaledi	59	Weekly and Bi- weekly
Makhuduthamaga	59	Weekly Leolo Area and Bi-weekly on others
<b>Total</b>	<b>291</b>	

Source: Dept. of Health: Limpopo (2018)

Table 95: Access to clinics

Municipality	Percentage within 5Km radius to clinics.
Fetakgomo Tubatse	48%
Elias Motsoaledi	64%
Makhuduthamaga	48%
Ephraim Mogale	47%

Source: Department of Health: Limpopo 2018

The table and map above show that the district should pay attention to Fetakgomo Tubatse Municipality when allocating the district resources as this Municipality has the highest population in the district with only 2 hospitals servicing the area. This requires that more health facilities be planned for the Municipality.

### Backlog and construction of clinics

Table 96: Latest backlogs of clinics and hospitals in terms of norms and standards

Municipality	Backlogs
Fetakgomo Tubatse	Kgopaneng- New clinic
	Mmutlane- Upgrade Staff Accommodation
Ephraim Mogale	1 Gareagopola- New clinic
	Witfontein clinic- upgrade
Elias Motsoaledi	0
Makhuduthamaga	1 Ga- Molepane, Tjabadi- New clinic

Total	3 New clinics 1 Upgrade staff accommodation 1 Clinic Upgrade
-------	--

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Health (2018)

### Number of clinics constructed

Table 97: Number of clinics constructed

Municipality	2017-2018
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	1(Sterkspruit-Phiring)
Ephraim Mogale	1(Makeepsvlei- Rathoke)
Elias Motsoaledi	0
Makhuduthamaga	0
Total	2

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Health (2018)

### Burden of diseases – Leading causes of death in the district

Table 98: Causes of Mortality 2020/2021

DISTRICT	No.	TOP 10 CAUSES OF DEATHS	NUMBER
<b>SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT</b>	1	Covid 19	301
	2	Retroviral Disease	274
	3	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection	141
	4	Acute Renal Failure	135
	5	Hypertension	107
	6	Diabetic M	121
	7	Congested Cardiac Failure	107
	8	Cerebro Vascular Accident	130
	9	Tuberculosis	137
	10	Gastroenteritis	96

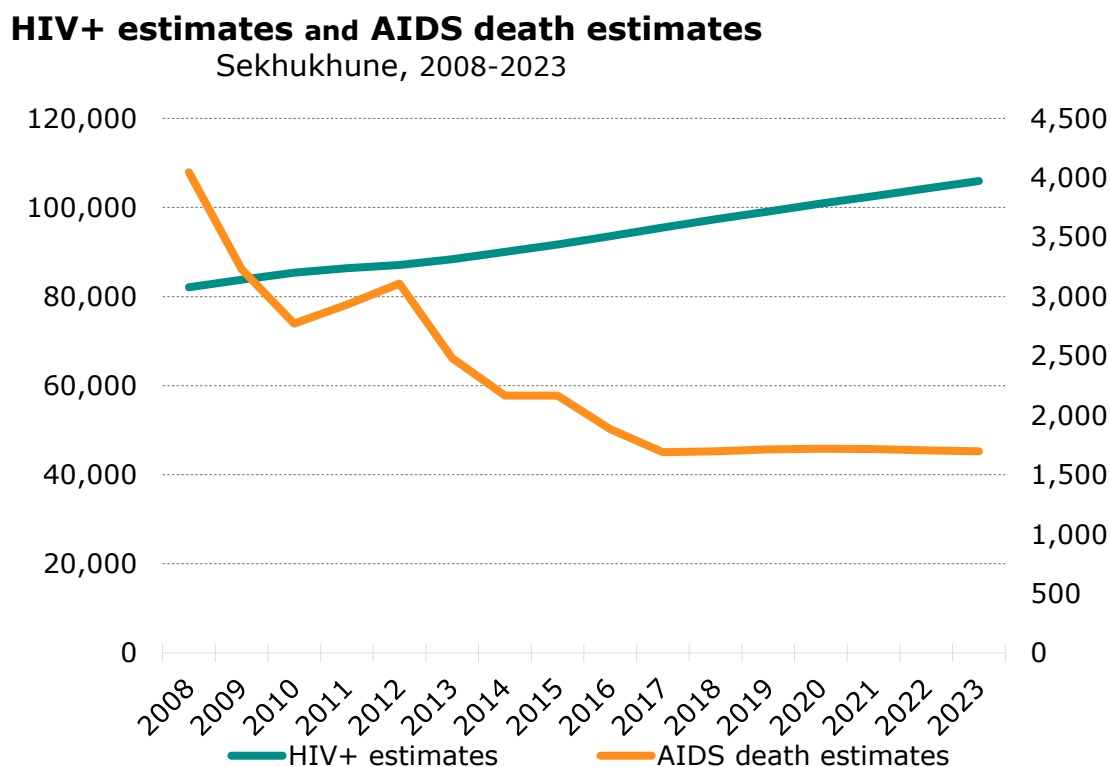
Source: Limpopo Dept. of Health (2022)

### HIV/AIDS Prevalence

In 2018, 97 300 people in the Sekhukhune District were infected with HIV/AIDS. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 1.72% since 2008, and in 2018 represented 8.14% of the district municipality's total population. The Limpopo Province had an average annual growth rate of 1.18% from 2008 to 2018 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Sekhukhune District Municipality. When looking at South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2008 to 2018 with an average annual

growth rate of 2.00%. The District HIV/AIDS council has been established. This will strengthen the capacity of the district to bring awareness to communities.

Figure 44: HIV + Estimates and AIDS death estimates



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 4050 in 2008 and 1700 for 2018. This number denotes a decrease from 2008 to 2018 with a high average annual rate of -8.33% (or -2350 people). For the year 2018, they represented 0.14% of the total population of the entire District Municipality.

According to Dept. of Health (2018), there is a comprehensive system of testing, administering of treatment and counseling servicing the district. The main challenge facing the department is that testing is voluntary. As a result, more effort is needed to convince people to come to the fore and be tested. This should be accompanied by prior counseling to enable people who will be diagnosed HIV/AIDS to live with themselves. The Treatment Plan which seems to be effective, should be communicated adequately to strengthen its effectiveness. Sekhukhune District should implement its HIV/AIDS strategy to guide public interventions in the area. The district also launched the Sekhukhune HIV/AIDS Council in 2018/19, and the key focus areas are education and awareness raising, support for people living with HIV/AIDS and care for children in distress.

## TUBERCULOSIS (TB) CONTROL

Table 99: TB Treatment and death rate

INDICATOR	2017	2018	2019	2020	AVERAGE
All DS-TB client treatment success rate	85,3	80,6	76,3	77,2	79,9
New DS-TB client start treatment rate	94,1	94	92,7	90,5	92,6
New DS-TB client treatment success rate	85,4	80,8	76,8	77,4	80,1
Retreatment DS-TB client lost to follow-up rate	10,5	23,6	21,2	11,3	16,7
Retreatment DS-TB client treatment success rate	100	100	100	100	100,0
Retreatment DS-TB start treatment rate	3,3	2,5	2,5	4	3,3
All DS-TB client death rate	7,2	11,6	13,9	12,8	11,4
All DS-TB client lost to follow-up rate	6,4	7	8,8	9,1	7,8
New DS-TB client death rate	7,1	11,9	14	13,3	11,6
New DS-TB client lost to follow-up rate	6,6	6,5	8,4	8,7	7,6

Source: Limpopo Department of Health (2022)

Table 100: TB Control 2019/2020 Outcomes

INDICATOR	Elias Motsoaledi		Ephraim Mogale		Fetakgomo Tubatse		Makhuduthamaga		Sekhukhune	
	2019	2020	2019	2020	2019	2020	2019	2020	2019	2020
		Target 8%		Target 8%		Target 8%		Target 8%		Target 8%
All DS-TB client lost to follow-up rate	8.8%	9%	7.9%	5.9%	7.6%	8.4%	11.8%	13.1%	8.8%	9.1%
		Target 79%		Target 79%		Target 79%		Target 79%		Target 79%
All DS-TB client treatment success rate	79.6%	76.9%	75.5%	79.7%	78.4%	80%	68.3%	69.3%	76.3%	77.2%
		Target 63%		Target 63%		Target 63%		Target 63%		Target 63%
TB Rifampicin resistant/MDR/Pre-XDR treatment success rate	100%	71.4%	90.9%	69.2%	56.3%	50%	53.8%	85.7%	64.8%	75.7%
		Target 10%		Target 10%		Target 10%		Target 10%		Target 10%
All DS-TB client death rate	11.5%	13.4%	15.8%	14.4%	12.7%	11.1%	18.3%	14.6%	13.9%	12.8%

Source: Limpopo Department of Health (2022)

TB treatment success rate has improved to 77.2% in 2020 compared to 76% in 2019 however a target of 79% was not reached due a high defaulter rate; of which 13% is in Makhuduthamaga sub-district and 9% in Elias Motsoaledi. Fetakgomo-Tubatse has obtained 80% of treatment success rate and Ephraim Mogale 79.7% and they are the only sub-districts that have reached the target of 79%.

All sub-districts are having high TB death rate with Makhuduthamaga at 14,6% and Ephraim Mogale at 14.4% and the latter sub-districts being the highest and Elias Motsoaledi at 13.4% and Fetakgomo-Tubatse at 11.1% against the target of 10%.

#### **Challenges relating to health service within the district:**

- Improvement of health services in terms of Customer Care (i.e., the turnaround time, treatment, Batho Pele principles and safety)
- Lack of more funding for primary Health Care.
- Inadequate health infrastructure,
- Inaccessibility of health due to poor roads and inadequate transportation
- Insufficient health professionals in clinics and hospitals.
- Insufficient medication at clinics and mobile clinics.
- Stigma attached to the HIV/AIDS disease by communities.
- Awareness campaign to educate the community about the normality of living with the Virus.

#### **2.5.14. Education**

Education is one of the basic human rights in South Africa and among the important socioeconomic indicators for development. In this section, the levels of educations and number of schools will be profiled using the data from Community Survey 2016 and IHS Markit. In this section, the education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older.

The LEGDP indicates that Sekhukhune has the least of highly skilled individuals in the total province. The low skills reduce the ability of the district to be innovative and economically productive. While there has been an improvement, this has been far below that of the other DMs in the Limpopo Province. The lack of skills is frustrating the current and future development of the area. It is also the high percentages of persons with no schooling which require a buoyant entrepreneurial class to establish industries that those with low skills levels could be absorbed in.

The low percentage of the population having managed to obtain tertiary education qualification bear witness to the infrastructure that is available in schools. Most of the schools in the district do not have facilities like Sanitation, Water and Electricity. Shortage of infrastructure impacts much on future educational development of this district.

The following tables provide the history of education within the district. The tables include Census 2011, Community Survey 2016 and IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750 for 2018.

Table 101: Education status in Sekhukhune District

<b>STATUS</b>	<b>1996</b>	<b>2001</b>	<b>2011</b>
No schooling	165 384	185 760	117 139
Some Primary	39 986	52 840	63 546
Completed primary	19 904	19 897	22 510
Some secondary	91 228	107 671	204 571
Grade 12	43 307	48 873	119 344

Higher	11 665	20 482	32 757
--------	--------	--------	--------

Source: Census (2011)

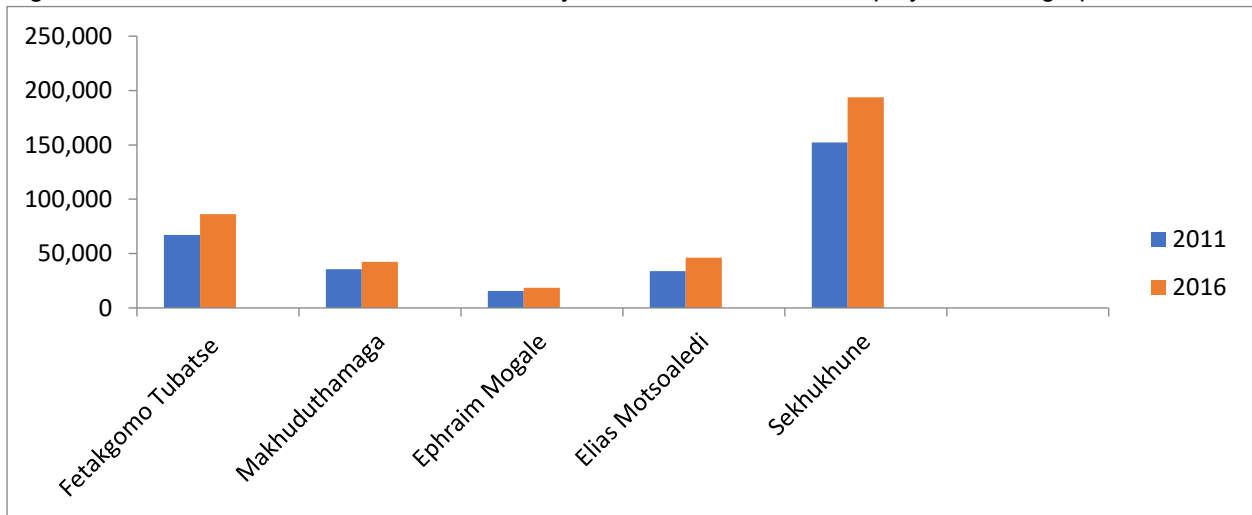
Majority of people within Sekhukhune District Municipality have some secondary school. It is also equally noticeable that 117 139 persons have no schooling in 2011. This is concerning because those who cannot read and write will not be able to access better job opportunities in the market as in most training programmes there is a need to have basic writing and reading skills. There are also very insignificant numbers of the persons that have higher education in the district.

Table 102: Persons above 20 years with Grade 12

MUNICIPALITY	2011	2016
Fetakgomo Tubatse	67 008	86 340
Makhuduthamaga	35 635	42 263
Ephraim Mogale	15 587	18 656
Elias Motsoaledi	33 872	46 373
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>152 101</b>	<b>193 632</b>

Source: Census (2011) and Community Survey (2016)

Figure 45: The above table 'Persons above 20 years with Grade 12' is displayed on the graph below:



Source: Census (2011) and Community Survey (2016)

Table 103: Education profile per Local Municipality (2011)

	Elias Motsoaledi	Ephraim Mogale	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Makhuduth amaga	Grand Total SDM
No Schooling	31 118	14 815	39 388	31 818	117 139
Some Primary Education	15 031	9 084	23 416	16 014	63 546
Completed Primary	5 550	3 510	8 393	5 056	22 510
Some Secondary Education	43 059	22 151	91 956	47 406	204 571
Grade 12	25 904	12 277	51 723	27 838	117 742
Higher	7 968	3 310	15 285	7 796	34 359
<b>Grant Total</b>	<b>128 629</b>	<b>65 147</b>	<b>185 532</b>	<b>135 927</b>	<b>559 866</b>

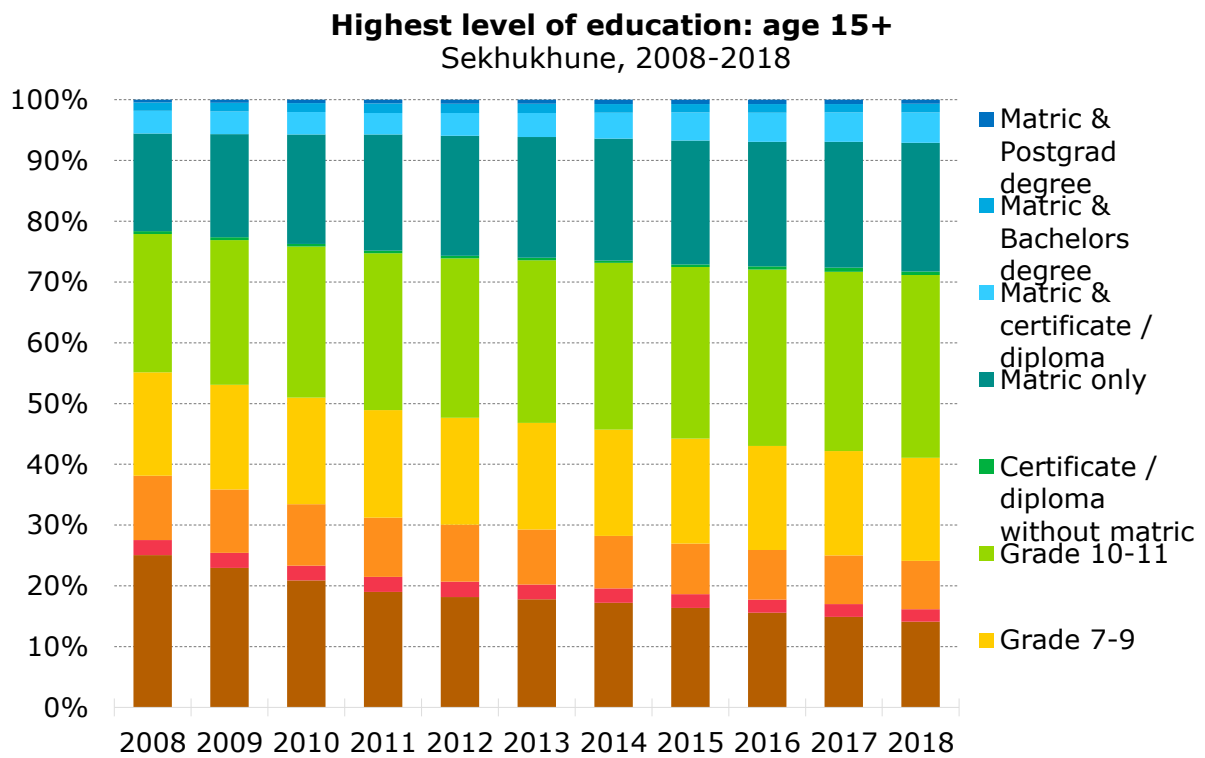


Source: Census (2011)

As indicated in the tables above, the district has a relatively high illiteracy level, with almost 28% of the population having no formal school education whatsoever. Only 1% of the population has obtained tertiary educational qualifications.

The Limpopo Provincial Growth and Development Strategy indicate that Sekhukhune has the least of highly skilled individuals in the province. The low skills reduce the ability of the district to be innovative and economically productive.

Figure 46: Highest level of Education



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

The graph shows that the number of people without any schooling in Sekhukhune District decreased from 2008 to 2018 with an average annual rate of -3.42%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 84,700 to 140,000 in the past 10 years. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 5.25%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 2.61%. The above figures show an improvement in the level of education with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

However, the education levels in the district are lower than the comparative levels for Limpopo province. The literacy rate is one of the main development indicators of the economic status as the increased literacy rate results enhancement of country's human capital development. According to the Limpopo Provincial Growth and Development Strategy, Sekhukhune District has the least of highly skilled persons in the province.

There are approximately 187 161 people 20 years or older in the district who have no schooling. Only 4 % of the population have higher education. This will likely constrain the ability of the district to improve its socio-economic conditions significantly in the short to medium term. Given the development framework of the district to industrialize, the district is likely to decline on the requisite skills to support its industrialization and growth path (National Treasury, 2019).

When it comes to schools in the district, there is a total of 924 with 04 TVET Colleges which total to 928 schools in the district. The table below show the numbers per each local municipality. Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality has the highest number of schools in the district with 377 and Ephraim Mogale has the lowest number with 82.

#### Number of Schools in Sekhukhune District

Table 104: Number of Schools in Sekhukhune District

Municipality	Number of Primary Schools	Number of Secondary Schools	Number of Combined Schools	Number of Special Schools	TVET Colleges	Number of Private Schools	TOTAL
Fetakgomo Tubatse	106	129	9	1	2	11	<b>377</b>
Ephraim Mogale	49	29	2	0	1	3	<b>82</b>
Elias Motsoaledi	99	63	32	3	1	10	<b>205</b>
Makhuduthamaga	100	98	4	2	0	3	<b>264</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>414</b>	<b>319</b>	<b>47</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>37</b>	<b>928</b>

Source: Department of Education, Limpopo (2022)

There are very few special schools in the district, with Ephraim Mogale Municipality not having even a single Special School. There is a need to ensure that Special Schools are accessible to all the learners with special needs.

#### Teacher: Learner Ratio

Table 105: Number of Teachers and Learners

Municipality	Total number of Schools	Total Number of Teachers	Total Number of Learners	Student-Teacher Ratio
Fetakgomo Tubatse	375	4575	14521	32:1
Ephraim Mogale	81	1161	36059	31:1
Elias Motsoaledi	204	3258	97139	30:1
Makhuduthamaga	264	3637	91349	25:1
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>924</b>	<b>12631</b>	<b>239 068</b>	<b>5:18</b>

Source: Department of Education, Limpopo (2018)

One of the factors that contribute to low quality of education in the district is the learner/teacher ratio and class size. According to Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development

(OECD), smaller classes are beneficial as they allow teachers to pay attention and meet the needs of individual learners.

The learner/teacher ratio for public schools is higher than that of private schools. There has been an increase in learner/teacher ratio in public schools from 2016 to 2018. It is reported that public schools, particularly the ones in rural areas, lack educators. However, when it comes to student-teacher ratio in Sekhukhune district, a more rural local municipality Makhuduthamaga has a better student-teacher ratio when compared to the other locals. The table below shows that Makhuduthamaga also had a high school infrastructure backlog in the district.

### Number of classrooms constructed between 2016-2018

Table 106: Number of classrooms constructed

Municipality	2016-2017	2017-2018
Fetakgomo Tubatse	16	16
Ephraim Mogale	5	5
Elias Motsoaledi	3	3
Makhuduthamaga	5	5
<b>Total</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>29</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2018)

The above table shows that a total of 29 school classrooms were constructed in 2 consecutive financial years and this brings the constructed classrooms to a total of 58 classrooms for the said period. A high number of classrooms were constructed in Fetakgomo Tubatse and the least number of classrooms were constructed in Elias Motsoaledi. There is a need for the Department of Education to construct more classrooms within the district to address the existing backlogs.

### Number of classrooms planned for construction

Table 107: Number of classrooms planned for construction

Municipality	2019-2020	2020-2021	2021-2022
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	102	22	88
Ephraim Mogale	16	18	57
Elias Motsoaledi	188	0	88
Makhuduthamaga	168	62	99
<b>Total</b>	<b>474</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>332</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2019)

Table 108: Current condition of road access to schools

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Good, fair or bad (choose)</b>
Fetakgomo Tubatse	Fair
Ephraim Mogale	Fair
Elias Motsoaledi	Fair
Makhuduthamaga	Fair

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2018)

Table 109: Current backlogs to school infrastructure (buildings)

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>2018/2019</b>
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	14
Ephraim Mogale	10
Elias Motsoaledi	9
Makhuduthamaga	21
<b>Total</b>	<b>54</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2018)

## SCHOOLS INFRASTRUCTURE

Table 110: Current provision of basic services to schools (Water, sanitation, electricity)

District Municipalities	Local Municipalities	Total Schools per Local Municipality	No. of schools with water supply (municipal services)	No. of schools with alternative water supply (borehole, JoJo tank, etc)	No. of school without any water supply	No. of schools with electricity (municipal services)	No. of schools with Alternative Electricity (Backlog)	No. of school without any electricity supply (Backlog)	No. of schools with Sanitation	No. of schools with alternative sanitation (Backlog)	No. of school without any access to sanitation (Backlog)
SEKHUKHUNE	Elias Motsoaledi	173	166	6	1	167	6	0	42	131	0
	Ephraim Mogale	112	106	6	0	105	7	0	26	86	
	Fetakgomo Tubatse	361	355	3	3	357	1	3	50	311	
	Makhuduthamaga	282	278	4	0	280	2	0	42	240	
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>928</b>	<b>905</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>04</b>	<b>909</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>03</b>	<b>160</b>	<b>768</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2022)

Despite an attempt to provide good infrastructure in schools, there are still schools without proper school infrastructure, especially sanitation. Most of the schools in the district are using pit toilets. In some schools the toilets have collapsed because they are full and learners relieve themselves in the bushes. Sanitation has been a serious challenge in LDoE which sadly claimed the life of a learner. LDoE focused on eradication of pit latrines during this cycle to ensure that no learner will ever lose life in this manner.

Most of the schools are very old and needs renovations, replacement, upgrades and additions time and again.

Most of the schools have water system in the form boreholes which were drilled through norms and standards. The Department implements its infrastructure plans through Limpopo Department of Public Works, Roads, and Infrastructure (LDPWRI) to implement the infrastructure projects. In an attempt to enhance its capacity, the LDoE has also contracted the following entities as implement agents:

- ⌚ The Independent Development Trust (IDT)
- ⌚ The Mvula Trust, and
- ⌚ The Council for Science and Industrial Research (CSIR)

Table 111: Rationalisation of schools

DISTRICT	TARGET FOR THE DISTRICT	MERGED
SEKHUKHUNE EAST	51	26
SEKHUKHUNE SOUTH	77	26
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>128</b>	<b>52</b>

Source: Limpopo Dept. of Education (2022)

## SCHOLAR TRANSPORT

Table 112: Sekhukhune District Scholar Transport

DISTRICT	NUMBER OF SCHOOLS BENEFITING	NUMBER OF LEARNERS BENEFITING
Sekhukhune East	32	3456
Sekhukhune South	49	3188
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>6644</b>

## Early Childhood Development (ECD)

Table 113: Number of Early Childhood Development (ECD) centers

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF ECDs	REGISTERED ECDs	UNREGISTERED ECDs	FUNDED ECDs
Elias Motsoaledi	131	91	40	76
Makhuduthamaga	201	155	46	105
Ephraim Mogale	96	68	28	49
Fetakgomo Tubatse	300	269	31	186
<b>Total</b>	<b>728</b>	<b>583</b>	<b>145</b>	<b>416</b>

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2016*

Fetakgomo Tubatse has the highest number of ECDs (300) while Ephraim Mogale has the lowest ECDs. This is attributed to the fact that Ephraim Mogale is the Smallest Municipality within the district. Attention should be given to the unregistered ECDs so that they can be fully registered.

The below tables indicate the existing facilities for vulnerable groups, old age home, aged service centres, substance abuse centres, disability centres and stimulation centres.

### Summary of Education Challenges

- Lack of tertiary institutions within the district makes percentage of people with post matric qualifications very low.
- Lack of support (Finance and capacity) to Early Childhood Development (ECD) in terms of unregistered and community-initiated NGOs.
- Mushrooming of ECD Sites
- Poor delivery of basic services like water, sanitation, and electricity to school.
- Lack of effective literacy campaigns and ABET Centers to reduce illiteracy level.
- Lack of learnership, internship and bursary schemes for students.

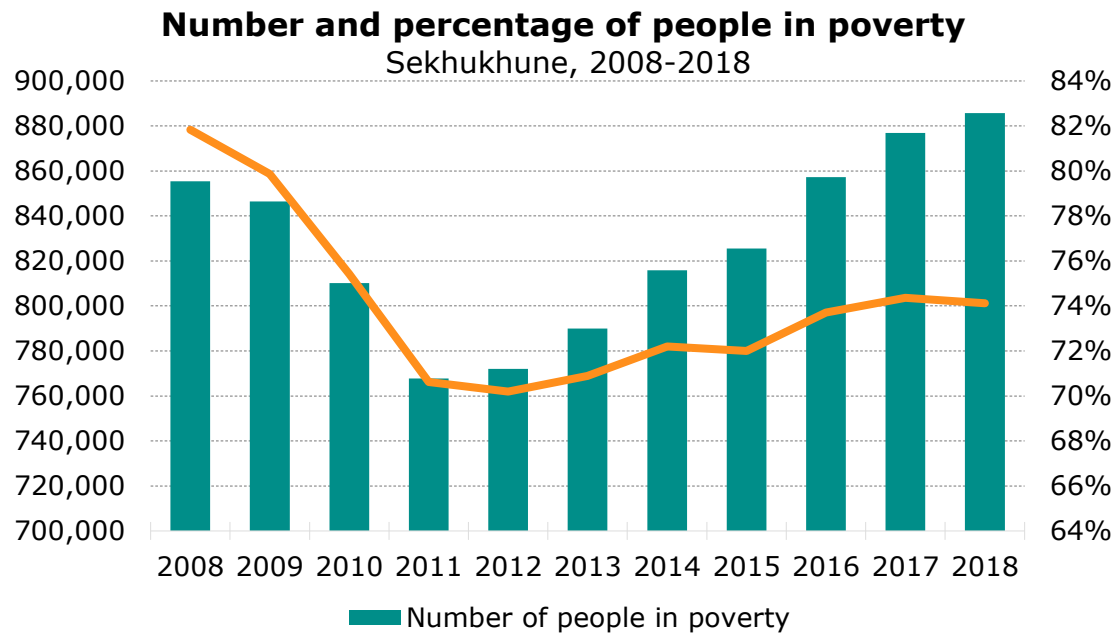
### 2.5.15. Social Development (Welfare)

The provision of social services is a competence of concurrent National and Provincial governments, as promulgated in schedule 4 Part A of the Constitution. Social development systems form the backbone of assistance to the vulnerable in most advanced societies. Most countries acknowledge that whilst they strive towards full economic and social development, the more vulnerable members of society – especially children and the elderly – would require some form of state assistance.

Social development systems are particularly important in Sekhukhune District due to its predominantly rural in nature and have high poverty levels. The majority of Sekhukhune population is young, unemployment is rife, and the district consequently exhibits an extremely high dependency ratio. Most of this population is dependent on government grants in order to survive.

## Poverty

Figure 47: Number and Percentage of People Living in Poverty - Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2008-2018



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

In 2018, there were 886 000 people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition, across Sekhukhune District Municipality - this is 3.55% higher than the 855 000 in 2008. The percentage of people living in poverty has decreased from 81.83% in 2008 to 74.12% in 2018, which indicates a decrease of 7.71 percentage points. The table below, shows the percentage of people living in poverty by population group.

Table 114: Percentage of People Living in Poverty by Population Group - Sekhukhune, 2008-2018

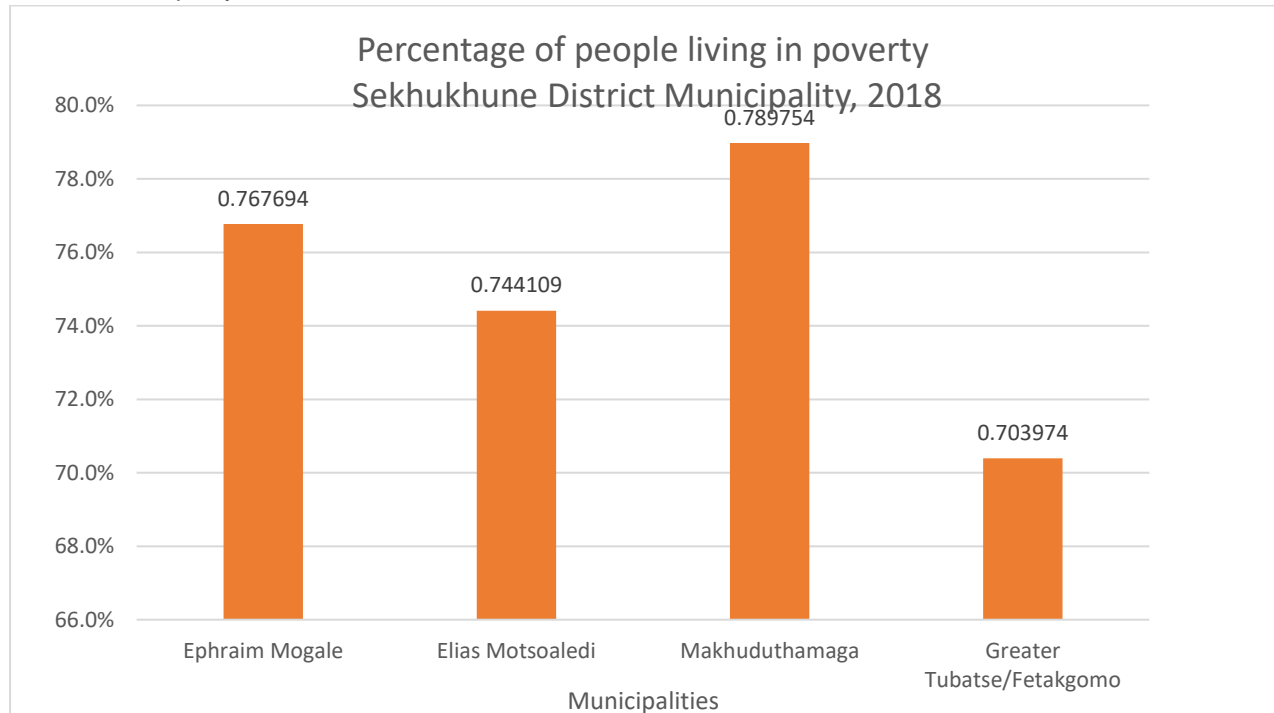
	African	White	Coloured	Asian
<b>2008</b>	82.6%	2.6%	51.3%	15.5%
<b>2009</b>	80.7%	2.9%	50.2%	13.0%
<b>2010</b>	76.2%	2.1%	47.4%	9.8%
<b>2011</b>	71.4%	1.3%	43.2%	6.9%
<b>2012</b>	71.0%	1.3%	45.0%	7.2%
<b>2013</b>	71.7%	1.3%	47.5%	7.7%
<b>2014</b>	73.0%	1.4%	50.5%	8.1%
<b>2015</b>	72.8%	1.9%	52.4%	8.4%
<b>2016</b>	74.5%	2.8%	55.7%	10.8%
<b>2017</b>	75.2%	3.6%	57.1%	13.5%
<b>2018</b>	74.9%	3.8%	57.7%	15.9%

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750



In 2018, the population group with the highest percentage of people living in poverty was the African population group with a total of 82.6% people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition. The proportion of the African population group, living in poverty, decreased by 7.66 percentage points, as can be seen by the change from 82.60% in 2008 to 74.93% in 2018. In 2018 15.93% of the Asian population group lived in poverty, as compared to the 15.47% in 2008. The White and the Coloured population group saw a decrease in the percentage of people living in poverty, with a decrease of -1.25 and -6.41 percentage points respectively. The graph below shows figures of people living in poverty per each local municipality.

Figure 47: Percentage of People Living in Poverty - Local Municipalities and The Rest of Sekhukhune District Municipality, 2018



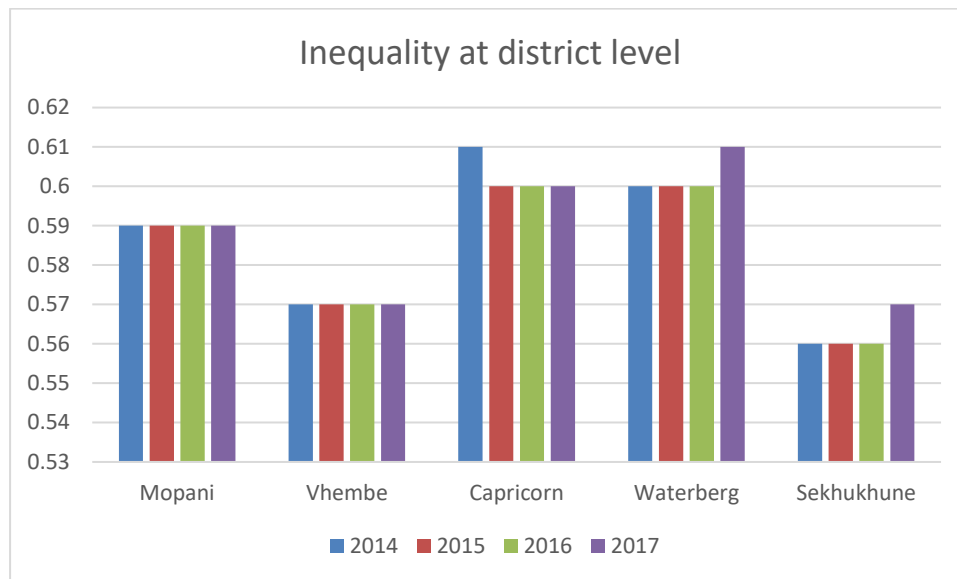
In terms of the percentage of people living in poverty for each of the locals within the Sekhukhune District Municipality, Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality has the highest percentage of people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition, with a total of 79.0%. This is due to fact that there is no formal town in the Municipal area for many years. However, with the growth of Jane Furse as the District Growth Point and the relocation of District offices from Lebowakgomo to Jane Furse it is expected that the economic activities will boom, and job creation will benefit local residents.

The lowest percentage of people living in poverty can be observed in the Fetakgomo Tubatse Local Municipality with a total of 70.4% living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition.

### Inequality

Based on the outcomes of the Gini coefficient, if the outcome is equal to zero, it means that income is distributed in an equal manner within the defined area and there is no variance between the high and low-income earners. In contrast, if the Gini coefficient equals 1, income is completely inequitable, meaning that one or few individuals in the population earns all the income and the rest has no income.

Figure 49: Inequality at District Level



Source: HIS Markit Regional Explorer 2018.

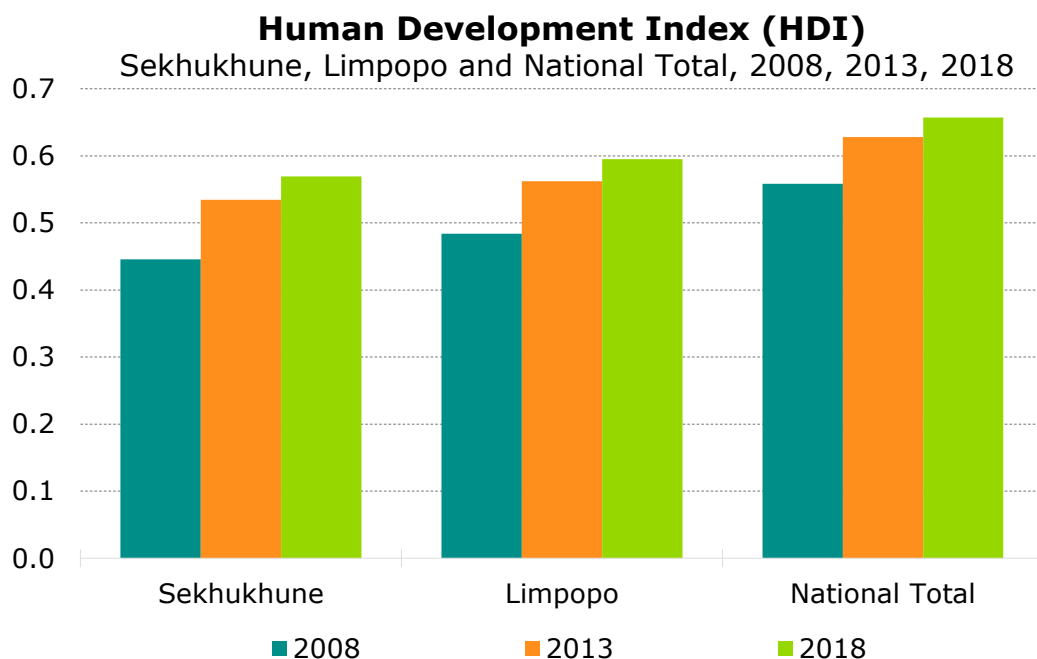
Sekhukhune and Vhembe District has the lowest Gini coefficient in the province of 0.57 in 2018 when compared to the other district municipalities. The Sekhukhune's Gini coefficient has increased by a 0.01 when compared to 2016, meaning that the income inequality in the district increased marginally. The income inequality in Sekhukhune is lower than that of the Limpopo Province and South Africa which recorded a Gini coefficient of 0.593 and 0.63 respectively. The district should develop relevant Policies that promote equalities in order to ensure that people have same share of power and wealth within the district.

### Human Development Index

The Human Development Index (HDI) is a combination of three basic dimensions of human development: A long and healthy life, knowledge, as well as a decent standard of living. In order to gauge a decent standard of living, the GDP per capita level is also utilised. Consequently, the HDI can have a maximum value of 1, indicating a very high level of human development, while the minimum value is 0, indicating no human development.

In 2018 Sekhukhune District Municipality had an HDI of 0.569 compared to the Limpopo with a HDI of 0.595 and 0.657 of National Total as a whole. Seeing that South Africa recorded a higher HDI in 2018 when compared to Sekhukhune District Municipality which translates to worse human development for Sekhukhune District Municipality compared to South Africa. South Africa's HDI increased at an average annual growth rate of 1.65% and this increase is lower than that of Sekhukhune District Municipality (2.48%).

Figure 50: Human Development Index



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 1750

### Pension pay points

Table 115: Status of pension pay points in each municipality in 2019-2020

Municipality	Status of pension pay points (functional, having a building or not)	
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	45 Functional	Open pay points=16
Ephraim Mogale	16 Functional	Open pay points=11
Elias Motsoaledi	15 Functional	Open pay points=8
Makhuduthamaga	20 Functional	Open pay points=7
<b>Total</b>	<b>96 Functional</b>	<b>42</b>

Source: South African Social Security Agency (SASSA) (2019)

Fetakgomo Tubatse has the highest number of functional pay points (45) within the district, and it is followed by Makhuduthamaga (20). The total number of functional pay points within the district is 96. It is important for the Department of Social Development to evaluate the necessity of providing further pay points as many people use banking facilities to access their grants.

### Planned Pay-points

Table 116: Number of planned pay-points

Municipality	2019-2020	2020-2021	2021-2022
Fetakgomo/ Tubatse	45	45	45
Ephraim Mogale	16	16	16
Elias Motsoaledi	15	15	15
Makhuduthamaga	20	20	20
<b>Total</b>	<b>96</b>	<b>96</b>	<b>96</b>

Source: South African Social Security Agency (SASSA) (2019)

## Number of social grants beneficiaries

Table 117: Number of social grants beneficiaries

Municipality	Number of people benefiting from child support grants			Number of people benefiting from old age grant			Number of people benefiting from foster care			Number of people benefiting from institutional care		
	2016-2017	2017-2018	2018-2019	2016-2017	2017-2018	2018-2019	2016-2017	2017-2018	2018-2019	2016-17	2017-18	2018-19
Fetakgomo	299928	350332	41773	64293	10705	15965	9054	1055	1198	0	0	0
Greater Tubatse	176234	201983	233475	309561	39674	44466	4408	5173	5592	0	0	0
Ephraim Mogale	375486	453764	539762	80442	11303	16284	8149	1023	1298	0	0	0
Elias Motsoaledi	697332	814365	979498	18267	23609	27497	1864	2271	2854	0	0	0
Makhuduthamaga	464099	153987	168879	24822	319906	39369	1769	2867	3951	0	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>2013079</b>	<b>1974431</b>	<b>1963387</b>	<b>497385</b>	<b>405197</b>	<b>143581</b>	<b>25244</b>	<b>12389</b>	<b>14893</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>

Source: SASSA (2019)

The table above presents the statistics on grants beneficiaries are obtained from the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA). The figures indicated in the table change every month due to new approvals, births and deaths. The SASSA shows that the state resources are spend in the form of child grants in the areas that are predominantly rural. Many of these beneficiaries are either fostered, old aged, depended, need support one way or the other hence they receive different forms of grants. Issues contributing to high dependency rate on grants range from amongst others, orphans resulting from HIV/AIDS related deaths, child-headed households.

## Disability

95.88% do not have disability, which means that most of the population does not need any disability related care in both public and private buildings. 1.34% has physical disability followed by sight at 0.68%, emotional at 0.63%, deaf at 0.55 and multiple disabilities at 0.17%. The table below illustrates the types of disabilities found in the district:

Table 118: Disability Types

Disability	Elias Motsoaledi	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Ephraim Mogale	Makhuduth amaga	Grand Total
Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)	3.10	7.25	1.62	6.39	<b>18.36</b>
Hearing (Deaf)	2.01	3.72	1.42	1.83	<b>8.98</b>
Communication (speech Impairment)	1.42	2.23	0.21	1.94	<b>5.79</b>
Physical (need wheelchair)	9.69	10.09	4.54	11.60	<b>35.91</b>
Intellectual (serious difficulty in learning)	1.01	3.37	1.73	3.14	<b>9.24</b>
Emotional (Behavior)	5.63	5.9	1.87	3.66	<b>17.06</b>
Multiple Disabilities	0.38	1.86	0.18	2.24	<b>4.65</b>
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>23.23</b>	<b>34.42</b>	<b>11.56</b>	<b>30.80</b>	<b>100.00</b>

Source : Community Survey 2007

## Disability Development Programmes in Sekhukhune District Municipality

The Office of the Executive Mayor supports disabled persons community through celebrations of important calendar days covering a variety of disabilities and workshops:

- Support to District Disability Forum
- Deaf Awareness Campaign
- Eye Care Awareness Campaign
- Albinism Awareness Campaign

## Disability Challenges

- Ineffective Disability Forums
- Lack of clear Policies on advancement of disabled people's needs and aspirations
- Insufficient budget to implement awareness programs
- Public places not accessible and user-friendly for people living with disability.

## Female Headed Households

In the year 2011, 139 593 households in Sekhukhune District Municipality are headed by females. This represents 52.9% of the total households in the district. The provincial average is 50.4% and therefore the district one is slightly higher. Targeted social programmes that benefit women in particular, are required to alleviate challenges in these households. The highest number of these households is found in Makhuduthamaga, Elias Motsoaledi and Fetakgomo municipalities.

Table 119: Female Headed Households

Municipality	Female Headed Households			Number of households			% of female headed households		
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	10 020	13 254	16 550	19 664	24 189	32 284	51,0	54,8	51,3
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	24 048	26 794	32 061	42 605	45 478	60 251	56,4	58,9	53,2
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	30 932	34 334	39 217	49 782	52 978	65 217	62,1	64,8	60,1
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	34 641	42 011	51 765	59 775	72 639	106 050	59,25	58,9	51,4
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>99 641</b>	<b>116 393</b>	<b>139 593</b>	<b>171 827</b>	<b>195 285</b>	<b>263 802</b>	<b>58,0</b>	<b>59,6</b>	<b>52,9</b>

Source: Census (2011)

These figures on the other end challenges the LED unit, together with its key stakeholders to derive and develop programs that seek to empower women as they are burdened with the responsibility of ensuring that families are taken care of.

## Child Headed Households

In 2011, 2 949 child headed households were recorded in Sekhukhune District Municipality. This represents 1,1% of the households in the entire district. Ephraim Mogale and Elias Motsoaledi have recorded highest numbers of child headed households in the district. Makhuduthamaga also scored 1,1% of the households headed by children. Programmes to deal with this issue need to focus on the municipalities with the highest need.

Table 120: Child Headed Households

MUNICIPALITY	1996			2001			2011		
	Households headed by children	Total house holds	% of child headed househ olds	Househ olds headed by children	Total house holds	% of child headed househo lds	Househ olds headed by children	Total hh	% of child headed hh
<b>Ephraim Mogale</b>	761	19 664	3,9	514	42 701	1,2	464	32 284	1,4
<b>Elias Motsoaledi</b>	1 872	42 605	4,4	1 007	80 719	1,2	800	60 251	1,3
<b>Makhuduthamaga</b>	1 794	49 782	3,6	917	95 710	1,0	737	65 217	1,1
<b>Fetakgomo Tubatse</b>	2 692	59 775	4,4	1 376	131 233	1,0	949	106 050	0,85
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	7 119	171 908	4,1	3 814	195 285	2,0	2 949	263 802	1,1

Source: Census (2011)

## Dependency Ratio<sup>1</sup>

Table 121: Dependency Ratio

Municipality	1996	2001	2011
Ephraim Mogale	91,7	82,8	73,7
Elias Motsoaledi	92,5	86,5	76,0
Makhuduthamaga	105,9	94,8	85,4
Fetakgomo Tubatse	101,8	89,8	71,35
<b>Sekhukhune</b>	<b>99,6</b>	<b>89,2</b>	<b>74,7</b>

Source: Census (2011)

In 2011, the dependency ratio in Sekhukhune District Municipality stands at 74.7%. It is relatively higher compared to the provincial dependency ratio of 67.3. Waterberg has a dependency ratio of 55.5% and Thabazimbi has the lowest at 30.8%. It will be important to check the underlying factors that make Thabazimbi achieve such a low dependency ratio in Limpopo Province.

Within the district however, Makhuduthamaga Local Municipality has the highest dependency ratio at 85.4 way above the district and provincial ratio. This is followed by Elias Motsoaledi at 76.0 and Fetakgomo Tubatse at 71.35. There is marked improvement in Fetakgomo Tubatse dependency ratio from 101.8 in 1996 to 71.35 in 2011.

It is very indispensable that the municipalities with higher dependency ratio receive much attention with regard to poverty alleviation programmes and also programmes that will lead to income generation. Makhuduthamaga, Elias Motsoaledi and Fetakgomo should therefore be prioritised for poverty alleviation programmes.

Table 122: number of facilities for vulnerable groups

Municipality	Number of old age homes	Number of drop-in centres	Number of children's homes (CYCC)	Number of disability centres	Number of women safe house centres	Number of home based carers
Fetakgomo Tubatse		34	01 Child and youth care worker for 30 children	09	00	13
Ephraim Mogale	01	06		05	00	13
Elias Motsoaledi		10		04	00	09
Makhuduthamaga		07		03	00	05
<b>Total</b>	<b>01</b>	<b>57</b>		<b>21</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>40</b>

Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2015

<sup>1</sup> Dependency ratio tells us how many young people under the age of 16 and older people over 64 years who are not working that have to depend on those who are working age and paying taxes. The higher the dependency ratio, the more people that need looking after

Table 123: Old Age Home

No	Name of the organisation	Municipality	Physical address	Number of beneficiaries	NPO compliance	Funded or not funded
1	Loskopvallei Russord	Ephraim Mogale	Japonica Street 900	71	Yes	Funded

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2015*

Table 124: Aged service centres

NO	NAME OF THE ORGANISATION	MUNICIPALITY	PHYSICAL ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES	NPO COMPLIANCE	FUNDED OR NOT FUNDED
1	Kgakgabejane Luncheon Group	Elias Motsoaledi	Zaaiplaas Next to Clinic	36	Yes	Funded
2	Kodumela Moepathuse Aged	Elias Motsoaledi	Hlogotlou Monstrlus Unit A	72	Yes	Funded
3	Moriri O Mosweu Aged Club	Elias Motsoaledi	219 Majakaneng Sec	19	Yes	Funded
4	Motetema Old Age	Elias Motsoaledi	motetema nxt to Lutheren	75	Yes	Funded
5	Mpheleng Serv Centre	Elias Motsoaledi	Mpheleng Village	56	Yes	Funded
6	Ratanang Serv Centre	Elias Motsoaledi	Elansdoorn next to Traffic Office	58	Yes	Funded
7	Hlabologang Aged	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Sekopung Village	28	Yes	Funded
8	Itsosheng Aged		Magakala Madifahlane		Yes	Funded
9	Maupa Aged Club		Ga-Mokobola Mabocho	22	Yes	Funded
10	Phakisa Aged		Mabocho Marulaneng Villa	22	Yes	Funded
11	Rethabile Diphale Aged		Diphale-Dijaneng ville Ga-Mohlala	26	Yes	Funded
12	Gaogelang Aged		Strydkraal A	65	Yes	Funded
13	Lapa La Hunadi Aged Club		Strydkraal A	49	Yes	Funded
14	Motswadibe Aged Care Group		Ga-Phasha	50	Yes	Funded
15	Lethabong Aged	Ephraim Mogale	Elandskraal	41	Yes	Funded
16	Leeufontein Comm Serv Centre	Ephraim Mogale	Leewfontein	45	Yes	Funded
17	Mohlakamotala Aged	Makhuduthamaga	Marulaneng	34	Yes	Funded

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2013*



Table 125: Substance Abuse Centre

NO	NAME OF THE ORGANISATION	MUNICIPALITY	PHYSICAL ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES	NPO COMPLAINE	FUNDED OR NOT FUNDED
	Tsogang le phele drugs & Substance Abuse	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Praktiseer one stop		YES	FUNDED

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2013*

Table 126: Disability Centres

NO	NAME OF THE ORGANISATION	MUNICIPALITY	PHYSICAL ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES	NPO COMPLAINE	FUNDED OR NOT FUNDED
1	Leratong Disability Centre	Ephraim Mogale	Next to Elandskraal admin office	31	Yes	Funded
2	Bakone Disability Centre	Ephraim Mogale	Next to Thari a ngoana Crèche	19	Yes	Funded
3	Bosele Handcraft Centre	Elias Motsoaledi	No 1 Hlogotlou	40	Yes	Funded
4	Epilepsy Protective Workshop	Elias Motsoaledi	01 Hoof Street Next to Magistrate Court	13	Yes	Funded
5	Leseding Protective Workshop	Makhuduthamaga	N0 1 Vergeleegen C	55	Yes	Funded
6	Arekgotleleleng Disability Project	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Sehunyane next to Moutse River	31	Yes	Funded
7	Alverton Self Help Group	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Alverton village	21	Yes	Funded
8	Dilokong Protective Workshop	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Moroke Village	31	Yes	Funded
9	Lehlaba Protective Workshop	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Ga-Riba Village	109	Yes	Funded
10	Mohlalese Disabled Group	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Mohlaleste	51	Yes	Funded
11	Ramodikoe protective workshop	Ephraim Mogale	Mamphokgo	34	Yes	Not Funded
12	Mabaledi Protective	Ephraim Mogale	Moomane next to 216primary school	25	Yes	Funded
13	Tswaraganang	Elias Mogale	Tshikanoshi	35	Yes	Funded

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2013*

Table 127: Stimulation Centre

NO	NAME OF THE ORGANISATION	MUNICIPALITY	PHYSICAL ADDRESS	NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES	NPO COMPLAINTS	FUNDED OR NOT FUNDED
1	Leratong Stimulation Centre	Ephraim Mogale	Elandskraal	16	Yes	Funded
2	Phaphamani Stimulation Centre	Elias Motsoaledi	858 Monsterlus Unit B	15	Yes	Funded
3	Khayalsethu Stimulation	Elias Motsoaledi	Sephaku Village	14	Yes	Funded
4	Makgalaborwa Centre	Makhuduthamaga	Tshehlwaneng	27	Yes	Funded
5	Le rena reka kgona Centre	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Ga Nchabeleng	41	Yes	Funded
6	Imologa Dicep	Fetakgomo Tubatse	Ga Phasha	19	Yes	Funded

*Limpopo Dept. of Social Development: 2013*

## Challenges

- Low supply of basic services to service centres
- High level of grant dependence
- High level of poverty

### 2.5.16. Safety and Security

Combating crime forms one of the governmental strategic priorities within the medium-term period. Safety and security issues remain critical in crime prevention measures in the district. Communities lack policing facilities that would assist in either reporting or combating crimes in their areas. It means the responsibility of the state to make sure that police Stations are well equipped to deal with any type of crime that might be experience among communities.

Legal recourse is an important element of justice for those who suffered crime and other violations. There are six magistrate courts in Sekhukhune District. These are Magistrate Praktiseer (next to Burgersfort), Magistrate Sekhukhune (in Schoonoord), magistrate Nebo in Phokwane), Magistrate Moutse, Magistrate Sempupuru and Magistrate Groblersdal (Groblersdal). These magistrate courts serve a population of 1,169, 762 people.

When researching Sekhukhune's tourism potential as part of its 2025 Strategy, the District found that crime was a weakness that could potentially undermine tourism efforts in the area (G Steyn and Associates, 2006). More recently, the District's IDP consultations with communities found that the issue of crime was a recurring theme. The most important issue raised by communities and stakeholder groups (such as business, farmers, traditional leaders, and civil society organizations) concern:

- The presence of gangs in some communities.
- The lack of electricity and proper lighting exacerbated the problem of crime.
- There should be more police stations in the area as people sometimes have trouble accessing distant stations.

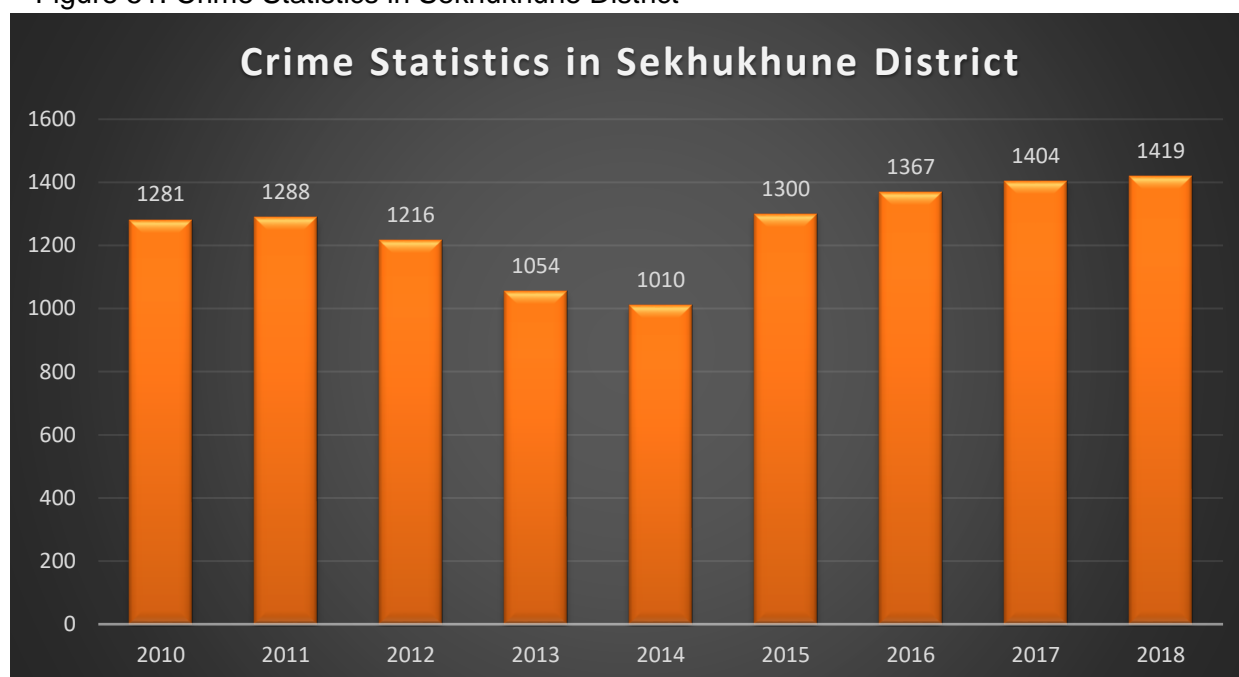
- Lack of satellite Police Stations.

### Crime statistics

The National Development Plan (NDP) states that the high crime levels have slowed South Africa's social and economic development. The NDP further states that an integrated approach to safety and security will require coordinated activity across a variety of departments, the private sector and community bodies.

The figure below shows the crime statistics in Sekhukhune District between 2010 and 2018. The graph shows that the lowest figure recorded was in 2014. However, crime has since risen from 1010 in 2014 to 1419 in 2018.

Figure 51: Crime Statistics in Sekhukhune District



Source: SAPS, 2018

According to SAPS (2018), there are 21 Police Stations in Sekhukhune District. There are certain norms and standards on police services. Part of the said norms and standards are the 4km, 8km, 16km and 24km buffers between service points. According to the said norms and standards, the police station should be within a 4km radius, the next station should be 8km away, then another one 16km away, and lastly 24km away.

Table 128: Across various police stations, the crimes cut across many categories such as the following:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Community reported serious crimes</li> <li>• Arson</li> <li>• Assault with intent to inflict grievous bodily harm</li> <li>• Attempted murder</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact sexual offences</li> <li>• Contact related crimes</li> <li>• Crime detected as a result of police action</li> <li>• Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sexual assault and sexual offences</li> <li>• Sexual offences detected as a result of police action</li> <li>• Shoplifting</li> <li>• Stock-theft</li> </ul>
---	---	---

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Attempted sexual offences</li> <li>• Bank robbery</li> <li>• Burglary at non-residential premises</li> <li>• Burglary at residential premises</li> <li>• Carjacking</li> <li>• Commercial crime</li> <li>• Common assault</li> <li>• Common robbery</li> <li>• Contact crimes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drug related crime</li> <li>• Illegal possession of firearms and ammunition</li> <li>• Malicious damage to property</li> <li>• Murder</li> <li>• Property related crimes</li> <li>• Rape</li> <li>• Robbery at residential premises</li> <li>• Robbery with aggravating circumstances</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Theft of motor vehicle and motorcycle</li> <li>• Theft out of or from motor vehicle</li> <li>• TRIO crimes</li> <li>• Truck hijacking</li> <li>• Robbery of cash in transit</li> <li>• Robbery at non-residential premises</li> </ul>
---	---	--

Source: SAPS (2018)

There are only six (06) magistrate courts in servicing the entire district. These are Magistrate Praktiseer (next to Burgersfort), Magistrate Sekhukhune (in Schoonoord), Magistrate Nebo (in Phokwane), Magistrate Moutse, Magistrate Sempupuru and Magistrate Groblersdal (in Groblersdal).

The reality is that the challenge of lack of adequate resources of dealing with crime has a potential to cripple the growth of the area. The recent IDP stakeholder engagements also revealed that crime was one of the concerns affecting the locals. The following issues were raised during the said engagements:

- The presence of gangs in some communities.
- The lack of electricity and proper lighting exacerbated the problem of crime.
- There should be more police stations in the area as people sometimes have trouble accessing distant stations.
- Lack of satellite Police Stations.

It is thus important for SAPS and other stakeholders to put more efforts in addressing the aforementioned issues by adding more Police Stations or Satellite Stations. The district should also in collaboration with other Stakeholders (including relevant sector Depts.) develop a Community Safety Plan and be able to conduct safety audits.

**Current police stations are 21 in number (SAPS, 2018), listed below:**

1. Burgesfort
2. Leboeng
3. Mecklenburg
4. Apel
5. Masemola
6. Ohrigstad
7. Sekhukhune
8. Tubatse
9. Roosenekal

10. Rakgoadi
11. Driekop
12. Dennilton
13. Groblersdal
14. Hlogotlou
15. Marble Hall
16. Motetema
17. Nebo
18. Elandskraal
19. Matlerekeng
20. Zaaiplaas
21. Jane furse

**Current approved satellite police stations are 2 in number (SAPS, 2018):**

1. Eerstegeluk and
2. Penge.

However, the buildings do not belong to SAPS and as a result, SAPS is unable to control the operating hours on those buildings as they belong to other departments.

**There are 14 police contact points in the district of Sekhukhune (SAPS, 2018):**

1. Kgautswane
2. Manganeng Kgwana Project
3. New Horizon
4. Ngwaabe Old Clinic
5. Phiring
6. Steelpoort
7. Luckau
8. Magagamatala
9. Masoing
10. Taung
11. RDP Leeufontein
12. Atok
13. Mohlaletsi
14. Mphanama

**Backlog on police stations is in two areas (SAPS, 2018):**

- Driekop Police Station: is operating 24 hours but the building is not according to a standard of a police station.
- Penge Police Station: operating through the use of a building belonging to Penge Mine. SAPS is unable to control operating hours on that building as it belongs to another institution.
- Apel police station needs a building.

**Norms and standards on SAPS services (SAPS, 2018)**

Buffers were created around existing service points on 4km, 8km, 16km and 24km to give a basic indication of the distances that people need to travel. These buffers were created on the international norm that an average person can walk 4,5km in an hour. The areas served by stations (precincts) were clearly demarcated on maps.

Buffers of 4km, 8km, 16km and 24km were generated around existing service points, namely police stations; satellite police stations; fixed and mobile contact points.

Geographical set-up in terms of the map of the stations were used to generate the buffers.

What does it all mean? Based on the centre of an existing police service station, an ideal desired situation is that the next station should be 8km away, then another one 16km away, and lastly 24km away. But the next service station from the first should never be more than 24km away. The first 4km radius is just for walking distance purposes. The distances were also calculated taking into consideration the reaction time by police to reach affected area after community calls for service.

### **Proposed new satellite and fixed contact stations are 7 in number (SAPS, 2018)**

- De Hoop Dam
- Leeufontein
- Lehlaba Centre (Riba Cross Lehlaba)
- Manotwane
- Phatantswane Clinic
- Tafelkop
- Ntwane

Manotwane satellite police station building was donated by the Department of Health, but due to financial constraints SAPS is unable to renovate it.

### **Challenges**

- Revival and capacitating of Community Policing Forums (CPFs)
- Establishment of additional satellite police stations in the Municipalities
- Conducting crime prevention and awareness campaigns

## **2.6. INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND ORGANISATIONAL TRANSFORMATION**

### **2.6.1. Institutional Capacity Analysis**

#### **Mandate**

The mandate of the municipality authorised by the Minister of Corporative Governance, Housing and Traditional affairs are as follows:

- Provide water and sanitation services
- Provide emergency services
- Provide municipal health services

- Coordinate municipal planning and land use management
- Provide disaster management services

### Service delivery Priorities

- Improve the quality of water and wastewater (Compliance to blue and green drop)
- Stabilize water supply provision
- Extension of water and sanitation infrastructure to areas without;
- Promote health and prevent diseases
- Save lives, protect property and the environment
- Provide proactive protection to major centres of economic infrastructure in the municipality from fire.
- Prevent and mitigate on incidents of disaster in nature
- Effective land use management and spatial redress
- Economic growth and job creation
- Enhanced municipal planning capacity and Implementation of SPLUMA

### Analysis of the staff establishment

The analysis was done with departments guided by the steps in the organisational design review plan for 2022/2023 financial year.

Table 129: Staff establishment for 2022/2023

Department	Number of posts	Number of vacancies	Number of newly created	Number of filled positions
Budget & Treasury	100	38	6	54
Corporate Services	169	24	5	140
Planning & Economic Development	14	4	2	8
Community Services	277	117	51	103
Infrastructure & Water Services	734	163	95	476
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>1 294</b>	<b>346</b>	<b>159</b>	<b>781</b>

### Methodology used in analysis

The analysis considered the organisational design (OD) and job evaluation (JE) principles that emphasise the need to ensure that functional relationships between divisions have been taken into account to avoid duplication and overlap of functions across the municipality, financial implications, functional location, principles on the establishment of the division to ensure that each functional area has properly defined tasks, particularly with regard to the principle of equal pay for work of equal value, span of control, clear lines of reporting to avoid dual reporting and the need to ensure effective use of existing capacity, as well as the promotion of efficient and economic use of resources.

## Strength

In terms of financial management, the municipality has a pool of officials with good accounting skills. Adequate capacity for institutional social development assisting in calming community unrest and protest.

The office of the Municipal Manager is strengthened with performance management and legal services. Council Secretary and Deputy Director in the Executive Mayor's Office are reporting to Administration.

The current staff establishment have signed job descriptions for all positions. For the newly created posts the job descriptions were developed in the first quarter based on the work-study investigation, job analysis, information from departments and more inputs from respective divisional heads and job experts. The jobs are subjected to job evaluation process to determine appropriate level of the post based on the relative size and value of the job.

## Weaknesses

- The current staff establishment lack adequate support for LED, e.g. economic research and unfunded vacant positions in the division.
- Consistency in terms of retaining the CFO.
- Inadequate process control capacity to deal with water and wastewater, issues of blue & green drop coordination.
- Inadequate budget to fill vacant critical positions in some divisions
- Inability to provide tools of trades to staff members.

**Operate within constraints**-Various constraints put limits on the municipality and its design, change in legislations, prototypes structures, government priorities & regulations, stakeholders, technological systems, complex processes, finances, and other resources that constraints the strategy.

## Plans to improve the Human Capital

To enhance capacity there is a need to continuously train employees to keep up with the trends in the labour market. Furthermore, there is a need to re-skill, retrain, job rotation, and job enrichment (vertical), job enlargement (horizontal) on- boarding of new employees, managing diversity, career development counselling, coaching, and mentoring. The other aspect will be placement only in cases of request to enhance productivity and career pathing. Above all, conduct employee satisfaction survey to diagnose the underlying issue in order to enhance employee's morale.

## 2.6.2. Organizational Development (OD)

### Introduction

Organisational development is a long term plan effort to assist with the development of organisation change and learning capacity. In order to assist with the promotion of efficiency, effectiveness that led to improved productivity. Organisational development strives for



appropriate models for organisational standards and benchmarks. It further enhances the organisation by aligning organisational strategy with organisational design to improve service delivery model

### Legislative framework used

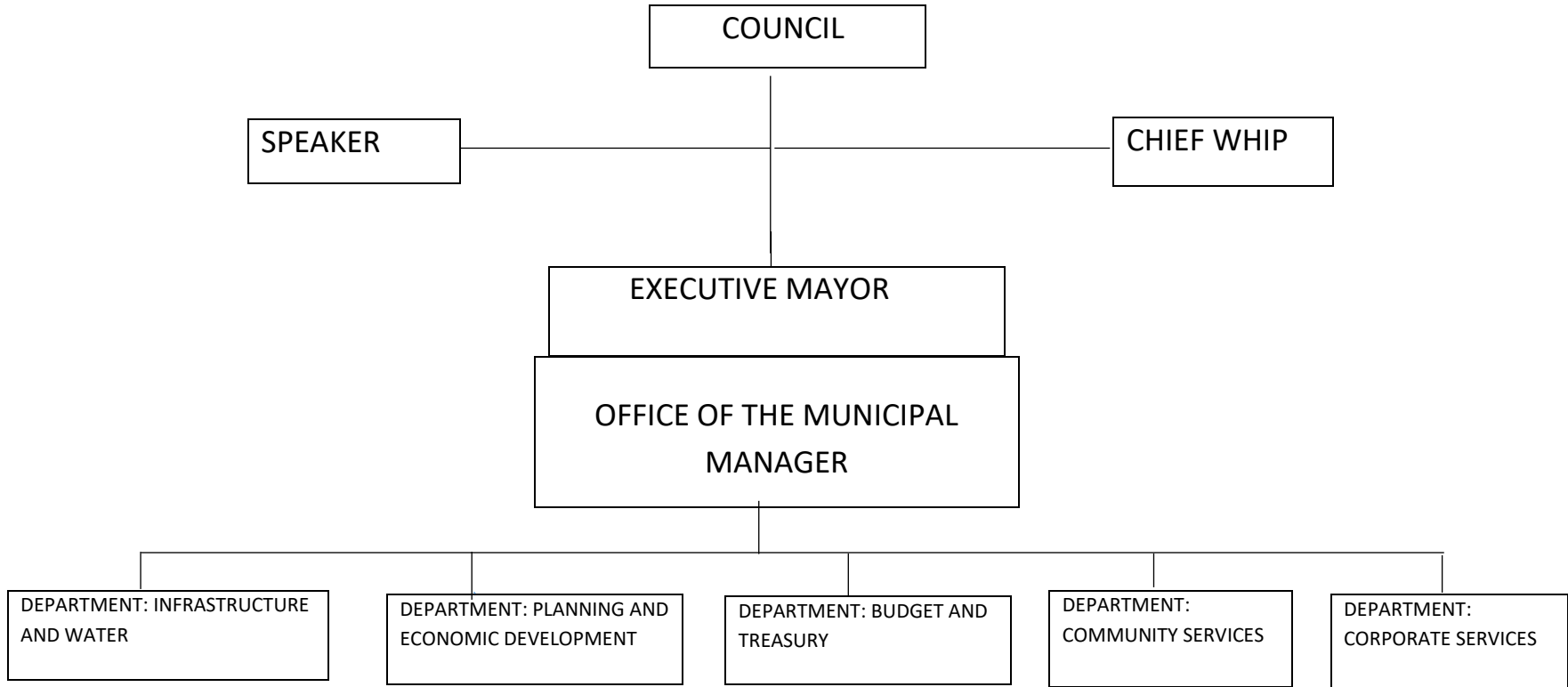
- The Constitution of the Republic of SA, 1996
- National Development Plan Chapter 13
- White paper on Human Resource Management
- Public service Regulation 2001 as amended chapter 1 part 3(b)(2)
- White Paper on transformation of Public Service chapter 9
- White Paper on Transformation of Service Delivery
- Medium Term Strategic Framework Outcome 12
- Municipal systems Act no 32 of 2000
- Municipal Structures act no 32 of 2000

<b>FUNCTIONS</b>	<b>STATUS QUO</b>	<b>CHALLENGES</b>
Organisational design /structure	The Org structure is reviewed and adopted annually	Unfunded posts
	Organisational structure assessment conducted and analysis	It is not effective as such and as a pillar of the organisation, line managers do not respond to the call to assess the structure quarterly
Change Management	Change management champions re-appointed, Areas of change identified	Lack of funds

### Challenges to be addressed by the OD Unit

- Change management processes
- Continuous diagnoses of respective departments
- Implement OD interventions

### Organizational Structure



### 2.6.3. Human Resources Administration (HRA)

#### Introduction

The White paper on HRA requires Human resources within the public sector (including Local Government) to be managed, utilized, and maintained efficiently and effectively. In the context of people management, the Human Resources Administration deals mainly with the following; namely, recruitment (talent attraction), staff retention and terminations, Leave administration, Employee benefits, implementation of *Employment Equity Act 55 of 1998*, human resources policy development, implementation, and review as well as authorization of overtime and emergency work.

Functions	Status quo	Challenges
Recruitment and Selection	Recruitment: Currently three (3) out of seven (7) essential and critical posts at senior management level are filled. The position of Director IWS, Director Corporate Services, Chief Finance Officer, and Chief Audit Executive position remains vacant. The main challenge facing the Division in recruitment is that appropriate candidates in certain rare skills are difficult to find in the market, especially during selection process (interviews). Those the Municipality manages to get don't stay long. They leave the organization. The Municipality has the vacancy rate below 17%	Difficulty in recruiting skilled employees on rare and critical skills
Leave Administration	All types of leaves are currently administered well. The systems used are ESS (electronic) and manual administration. Handicaps include managers/directors not approving leave requests on time.	Non-compliance to Leave of absence policy
Staff retention and terminations	There are turnover/resignations in the SDM which is less than 5%. The staff retention strategy needs to be implemented more effectively.	Re-advertisement of the same Post because of turnover becomes a costly exercise
Employee benefits	Newly appointed employees as per their specific salary levels, have access to service benefits, like medical aid, pension funds, housing, and car allowance	Difficulty in getting benefits from Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF) within a reasonable time after a turnover
Employment Equity	The Division will submit employment equity electronic report on or before the 15 <sup>th</sup> January 2022. As a result, SDM will appear on the Employment Equity Register for 2022 that will be published by the Minister of Labour in terms of <i>Section 41 of the Act</i> . A	The main challenge is to factor in women in top and senior management as well as disabled people.

Functions	Status quo	Challenges
	four (4) year Employment Equity Plan expired on the 30 June 2020; therefore, a new five (5) year plan is being drafted.	
Human Resources Policies	These are purely HR Operational policies that are designed to simplify management of human capital in the context of achieving the vision of the Organization	Non-compliance
Approval of Overtime and Emergency work	Overtime and Emergency work from the Department of Infrastructure and Water services, and Community Services Department are processed and authorized monthly for Payroll division to pay, this is largely informed by Overtime Policy	Some employees in Infrastructure and Water Services exceed the limit of 30% as stipulated in the Policy, and this constitutes an Audit query. Therefore, the Department needs personnel in the form of General workers to limit excessive overtime.

Human Resources Administration is informed by the following statutory and legal framework:

- Public Services Act, 1994
- Employment Equity Act, 1998
- Basic Conditions of Employment, 1997
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000
- Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011
- White paper on HRM

#### 2.6.4. Human Resources Development (HRD)

##### Introduction

The Human Resources Development division is comprised of a Senior Training Officer and one Admin Clerk.

Functions of the Unit:

- Administration of Municipal Training Committee
- Administration of Council Bursary scheme
- Development and implementation of workplace skills plan  
Administration of the Municipal Policy and Education, Training and Development
- Coordination of District Skills Development Facilitators Forum
- Coordination of Employees Capacity Building Programmes
- Coordination and Management of Internship, Learnership, Apprenticeship, Experiential Learning Programmes
- Skills Audit
- Promoting Youth employability and sustainable livelihood through skills development.

- Liase with LGSETA and other stakeholders on issues related to training.

Functions of HRD division	Status quo of each function	Challenges regarding each function
1.The division manages issues relating to workplace skills planning (WSP) and 2. Facilitates skills development for the community through a variety of interventions such as: 2.1 Internships 2.2 learnership 2.3 Experiential Learning 2.4.AET 2.5 RPL 3. The division also manages the Bursary Scheme of the Council of Sekhukhune District Municipality such as 3.1 Internal Bursaries	151 employees and 123 unemployed learners were capacitated through different training interventions.  1.102 employees are trained in RPL for Plumbing.  2. 25 Employees have been awarded Bursaries in different fields. 3. 5 employees are trained in RPL Electrical.  4.19 employees were enrolled for CPMD. 5. 61 Unemployed learners are in the Internship Programme. 6.08 Unemployed learners have been registered for CPMD.  7.54 Experiential Learners were given the opportunity.	Inadequate funding for Human Resources Development

### Status Quo: Human Resource Development

The division manages issues relating to workplace skills planning and facilitates skills development for the community through a variety of interventions such as Internships, Learnership and Work Integrated Learning The division also manages the Bursary Scheme of the Council of Sekhukhune District Municipality. Currently only Internal Bursaries.

### Skills needs within the municipal council

The inception of Local Government sphere has **de-facto** opened a life-long unnoticed challenge of capacity among the public service and municipal employees. The passing of the Skills Development Act no.97 of 1998 is aimed at capacitating the above-mentioned employees through training to redress legacies of the past.

The Sekhukhune District Municipality develops the Workplace Skills Plan annually in consultation with its employees and councilors to analyze the skills needs. This exercise is done in the form of a questionnaire that is distributed among the stakeholders and consultative meetings and through the Gap-Skill System. The following are the critical skills among the staff members:

- Engineering
- IT
- Legal
- Municipal Finance

The councilors need capacity building in the fields that are much related to areas of oversight responsibility. Those areas or fields are the following:

- Supply Chain Management
- Executive Leadership Management
- Municipal Governance
- Public Policy
- Project Management
- Service delivery.
- Water Infrastructure Development and Maintenance.

These needs are consolidated and form part of the WSP that should be approved by council. They are then submitted to LGSETA that will assist in training to address the scarce skills challenge.

### **Challenges to be addressed by the Human Resource Development**

- Development of a credible workplace skills plan to guide training in the district.
- Development of a skills development programme for unemployed members of the community.
- The need to do comprehensive skills audit of the entire workforce

In terms of the Systems Act of 2000 as amended sec 68 states that (1) a Municipality must develop its human resource capacity to a level that enables it to perform its functions and exercise its powers in an economical, effective, efficient, and accountable way, and for this purpose must comply with the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act No.81 of 1998), and Skills Development Levies Act (Act No. 28 of 1999).

#### **2.6.5. Employee Assistance Programme (EAP)**

##### **Introduction**

The main purpose of EAP is to assist employees with personal and work - related problems and health (physical, psychological, emotional, and social) related problems. The aim thereof is to enhance performance as well as production of employees in the workplace. The focus is also on reactive and proactive wellness programs. Reactive wellness programs focus on existing

problems of employees. Proactive wellness programs are preventative programs that prevent problems from occurring in future.

The main purpose of Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) is management of health and safety measures affecting employees working conditions in the workplace in relation to compliance to Occupational Health and Safety Act. This is done in order to ensure that employees work in a healthy and safe working environment.

OHS deals with the identification, investigations and assessment of injuries on duty and occupational disease and facilitation of compensation, implementation of medical surveillance/checkups programme, buildings and workplace inspections, municipal project audits, risk assessment (planned task observations), provision of personal protective equipment, facilitation of safety committees, conducting health and safety awareness programmes, servicing of fire equipment's such as fire extinguishers and fire hose reels and so on.

FUNCTIONS OF EAP	STATUS QUO OF EACH FUNCTION	CHALLENGES REGARDING EACH FUNCTION
<b>EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAMME</b>		
Assist employees with personal and work-related problems and health problems	Render counselling to employees, conduct home, workplace, hospital and institutional visits.	Clients' inability to disclose their problems and to express their feelings
Substance abuse programme	Attend employees who have alcoholism and drug problem, there by rendering counselling to them and their families, referral to Rehabilitation centres for treatment of alcoholism and or/ drugs, and reintegration into their work and family environment after rehabilitation. Facilitate monthly substance abuse program - alcohol and drug anonymous group (group counselling for substance abusers) to support substance abusers and to enable them to support and assist each other as they are having the similar problems.	Relapse on the part of substance abusers after rehabilitation.

FUNCTIONS OF EAP	STATUS QUO OF EACH FUNCTION	CHALLENGES REGARDING EACH FUNCTION
Stress and Trauma Management programme (Debriefings)	This programme is done as and when requested. Emergency Management Services employees are assisted through this programme by EAP to enable them to deal with their traumatic experiences, individually and in a form of group. Employees from other Departments who suffer from trauma are also assisted. Employees who suffer from severe trauma are referred to Psychologist for treatment	Managers and Supervisors' inability to attend the programme.
Wellness day	This programme is done annually, and it focuses on improving health status of employees. The following are activities conducted during this event: Education on health and mental health programmes (substance abuse, HIV Aids, optometry and so on) HIV Aids testing and Counselling Physical health - Fun Walk Illness screening, cholesterol, sugar diabetics and high blood Optometry Services and employees' sports games	Employees from Regional offices and Depots' attendance of the programme is not satisfactorily due to transport problems
Wellness awareness programmes	Employees are educated on Wellness issues to enhance their health status. Employees are educated on the following: HIV-Aids, TB, Sugar diabetics, high blood, Cancer, Substance abuse, mental health and so on.	None
Employee Sports	Facilitating sports activities to enable employees to participate in sports codes such as soccer, netball, volleyball,	None



FUNCTIONS OF EAP	STATUS QUO OF EACH FUNCTION	CHALLENGES REGARDING EACH FUNCTION
	snooker/pool, darts, and fishing to enhance their physical, psychological, emotional and social status. Facilitate employees' participation in Inter Municipal Sports of South Africa Association (IMSSA) - Employee National Physical Wellness programme. and /or South African Inter Municipal Sports of South Africa - Employee National Physical Wellness programme	
<b>OHS</b>		
Workplace (buildings and tools) inspections.	SDM workplaces (building and tools) as well as safe work procedures are inspected to check compliance to OHS Act.	Limited measures are undertaken by Management to ensure that SDM workplaces comply with OHS Act.
Medical surveillance programme.	Employees whom their work activities expose them to health (sewage and purification plants, drivers, water reticulation and maintenance, emergency management services artisans, emergency management etc.) undergo medical – check-ups annually to examine their health status and assist them if they are suffering from illness conditions.	Lack of Management buy - in
COIDA	Employees' injuries and Occupational Diseases are reported to Department of Employment and labour- Compensation Commissioner for facilitation of compensation	Injuries and occupational diseases are not reported within a period of seven (7) days which is a requirement by Department of Employment Labour. Department of Employment and Labour turnaround time in reporting incidents/ accidents and occupational diseases.

FUNCTIONS OF EAP	STATUS QUO OF EACH FUNCTION	CHALLENGES REGARDING EACH FUNCTION
Provision of Personal Protective Equipment	Provision of PPE to employees. is a requirement in terms of OHS Act so that employees are protected from injuries and occupational diseases in the workplace.	Incompetence on the part of Service Providers who provide employees with PPE
Servicing of fire extinguishers and fire hose reels.	Servicing Municipal fire extinguishers and fire hose reels is a requirement as per OHS Act	Limited resources (financial and human capacity) to perform the function
OHS Awareness campaigns.	Rendering awareness campaigns to employees to educate them on health and safety measures as per OHS Act, and OHS policy, PPE policy, medical surveillance programme, Health, and Safety Plan and so on	None
Safety Committees	Facilitate establishment and management of Safety committees as per OHS Act regulations	None
Project Audits	Conduct inspection of Infrastructure and Water Services projects to ensure that compliance to Occupational Health and Safety Act regulations	The projects do not comply with OHS Act regulations

### Challenges facing the unit

- Insufficient budget
- Lack of Training
- Lack of Staff

## 2.6.6. Information and Communication Technology (ICT)

### Introduction

The ICT Unit strives to be the backbone and business driver of the Sekhukhune District Municipality by providing and enhancing a virtual interactive organization where Information and Communication Technology are utilized to provide services to our communities.

### Legislative Framework

- The Constitution.
- Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000).
- Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998).
- State Information Technology Agency Act 88 of 1998
- Electronic Communication Act 36 of 2005
- Supply Chain Regulations.
- King III 2009: King Code of Corporate Governance.
- ISO 38500: 2008:9
- ISO/IEC 27000
- ISMS
- Cobit
- ITIL
- Promotion of Access to Information Act.

<b>FUNCTIONS</b>	<b>STATUS QUO</b>	<b>CHALLENGES</b>
Monitoring and Evaluation of Systems	Systems are monitored daily Network is monitored manually E-mails and Telephones are monitored manually and systematically	None
Provide User support and Maintenance	Users are supported via a centralized Help Desk System	Best practice dictates that there should be 1 technician for 30 end-users when the infrastructure is decentralized.
To provide a conducive and sustainable environment for Information and Communication Technology	Systems, Internet, and E-mails are in place to enable and provide a conducive and sustainable environment for ICT	None
Research and Innovation Services	Research and innovations are done continuously to improve the ICT environment	Lack of backup-test server-room.
Implementation of Network and Communication	Network and Communication platform provided via Domain, E-mails, and Internet access	Poor network connectivity at 19 remote sites (16 Water depots and 3 Fire Stations)
Management of Information System	Service Level Agreements with external Service Providers are monitored and in place	None

## **GENERAL ANALYSIS**

### **System Maintenance**

- Six (6) systems are monitored and maintained.
- User account revision schedule is developed and in place. SOLAR & VIP User accounts were revised.
- System reports developed quarterly, and service providers monitored.
- Patch Management and Change Management Procedures developed.

### **Security Upgrade of Server Rooms**

- Air conditioners in good condition.
- Access registers are in place.
- Biometric Access installed
- Response alarm installed
- Fire Suppression Systems and Cooling System
- Environmental controls in the server rooms need to be installed.
- Risk Management in process to acquire security cameras.

### **Business Continuity**

- Back-up Policy and Procedures in place and revised.
- Back-ups are still done manually.
- Monthly back-up reports, logs and registers in place.

### **Wireless**

- 90% of network is always available and downtimes kept under an hour and need to be upgraded to make provision for an Intranet.
- Poor wireless connectivity at 19 remote sites (16 Water depots and 3 Fire Stations).
- Monthly and Quarterly reports are in place.
- Network Monitoring Report Developed.

### **Risk Management**

- ICT Risk Register Revised and in place

### **ICT Policy Compliance**

- ICT Policy compliance report in place.
- Policy compliance monitored and the following policies were tabled to Management for approval and recommendation by Council.
- ICT Governance Framework.
- Help Desk Policy
- Server room access policy

- ICT Steering Committee Terms of Reference
- ICT User access management policy
- ICT steering committee charter
- ICT Cloud Policy
- ICT Firewall policy
- ICT Security policy
- ICT telecommunication policy
- Incident Management Policy
- Back-up Procedures.
- Change Management Policy and Procedures.

### **Challenges to be addressed by the ICT Unit**

- Sekhukhune District Municipality is a vast area and many residents still do not have access to basic ICT functions like e-mails and internet. To bridge the digital divide and empower the Sekhukhune Community, the ICT Unit needs to investigate and research on ways and means to improve this situation.
- There are a few systems utilized for various reasons in the Sekhukhune District Municipality. Some of these systems do not fully integrate with each other which are either causing loopholes or duplication of efforts. Sekhukhune District Municipality is therefore operating on a flat file system and systems are disintegrated.
- Various risks were identified by the Risk Unit i.e., Security Risks in the safeguarding of SDM information. These risks need to be revised and addressed as soon as possible. To improve information security an End-user Computing policy was developed and tabled to management for further consideration.
- The ICT Unit received quite a number of both Internal and External Audit Queries which should be resolved to ensure proper ICT Governance is applied. The ICT Unit improved tremendously on Governance and attend to queries diligently.
- The current ICT Disaster Recovery need to be revised and the infrastructure to execute the Plan is being developed. The back-ups are still being done manually and this process needs to be automated to increase reliability. Over and above that, the ICT Unit need to also secure the testing environment where back-ups, patches, upgrades, and system changes can be tested before it is rolled out into the live environment. Discussion took place around options available, and a Shared Services Approach was decided on.
- There are several redundant hardware that needs to be replaced.
- Upgrading of network in all District municipal Depots and Satellites offices.
- Installation of technological access security system in all municipal offices and depots
- A proper ICT Strategy together with a proper Procurement Plan is needed to ensure that projects can be completed.
- A proper Disaster Recovery Plan must be developed.

### **2.6.7. Auxiliary Services (AS)**

#### **Introduction**

Auxiliary Services is one of the eight units within Corporate Services Department in Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM); the functions of Auxiliary Services include:

- Records Management
- Fleet Management
- Facility Management

### Records Management

The purpose of records management is to ensure safe storage of records, easy retrieval, filing, archiving of information, record disposal. Other functions within records management are messenger services, photocopying and printing services.

Records Management is regulated by National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act No 43 of 1996, The Promotion of Access to information Act (Act.No.2 of 2000, The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act No.3 of 2000 and The Electronic Communication and Transaction Act No 25 of 2002).

FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
Postal Services	Postage services is operational Registry post 2000 mail monthly	None
Messenger services	80% messenger services operational	No dedicated personnel to perform the duties.
Disposal of records	500 project documents inspected and disposed	None
Archiving	More than 20 000 project documents are archived at different repository	None
Printing and copying services	Coping and printing more than 100000 per month	None

Documents stored at Registry

- Tender documents
- Personnel files
- Voucher files (Budget & Treasury)
- Project Files in PIU

### Fleet Management

The main purpose is to ensure that municipal fleet is properly managed which includes kilometer, fuel and tracking of the vehicles.

Fleet management is regulated by traffic management Act of 1998 and municipal developed policy.

The services provided within fleet management are indicated below:

FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
Management of all fleet	- SDM owned vehicle	None

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Leased water services operation vehicles.</li> <li>- Leased emergency services vehicles.</li> <li>- Settlement of Emergency vehicles</li> </ul>	
Rental payment	Leased vehicles are paid monthly	Late payment to service providers and as delays in maintenance.
Fuel management	Fuel and kilometres are monitored weekly and monthly.	Misuse of fuel card though control measures are in place
Licencing of vehicles	Licencing is done on SDM owned vehicles. In the case of leased vehicles, the service provider is responsible for licencing.	None
Tracking system management	Tracking of vehicle is monitored and paid monthly	None

### Facility Management

- Facility Management is provided in all five regions of the district, the main function is to manage the municipal property at different regions and depots.
- The mandate of the municipality with regards to Facility management is derived from the following legislation.
  - Occupational Health and Safety Act, of 2000 amended.
  - The municipal Finance Management Act of 2003
  - Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000 amended
  - Government Immovable and movable Asset Management Act no 19 of 2007
  - National Building and regulations
- The following documents are relevant, and were used as key inputs for this policy:
  - (a) MFMA Local Government Capital Asset Management Guideline published by the National Treasury Department (2008)
  - (b) DPLG "Guidelines for Infrastructure Asset Management in Local Government" (2007)
  - (c) NIMS, approved by the National Cabinet (2006).
  - (d) International Infrastructure Management Manual co-authored by Institute of Municipal Engineering of Southern Africa IMESA (2006).
  - (e) The Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993

The Act requires the employer to provide and maintain as far as reasonable and practical a work that is safe and without risk to the health of employees. This means the employer must ensure that the workplace is free of hazardous ergonomics and substances, microorganisms etc, which may cause injury or diseases where this is not possible, the employer has to inform the employees of the risks and dangers, and how the se may be prevented. The SDM is legally obliged and committed to create a healthy and safe working environment for all its employees.

FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
Rental	Rent of 4 building is done and monitored monthly	None

Maintenance	Maintenance of 56 facilities is done as an when	Most of the building are not for SDM and it's difficult to maintain them.
TV and DSTV	Subscriptions of TV licences and DSTV are paid and monitored monthly	None

## 2.6.8. Legal Services

### Introduction

The Legal Services Unit currently comprises of three Legal Officials responsible for Legal administration issues.

Functions of Legal Services division	Status quo on the function	Challenges regarding the function
Litigation Management which includes Updating all court matters and review all progress on outstanding litigation and liaise with and manage external lawyers	10 pending court matters	Non-cooperation from User department especially Infrastructure and Water Services when information regarding cases is required which impacts on time management issues in handling court cases.
Legislative review updates. Function involves review and update management on new legislations and advice management on legal implications on internal policies and procedures.	4 legislative review reports produced.	None

## 2.6.9. Labour Relations

### Introduction

Labour Relations Division is governed by different legislations i.e., Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995, South African Local Government Bargaining Council Main Collective Agreement, SDM Labour Relations Strategy approved by Council on 21 June 2012, Basic Conditions of Employment Act, Employment Equity Act etc.

FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
Investigate misconduct and grievances	The institution operates under several legislative prescripts which direct the investigation of misconduct and grievances. For example, Disciplinary Procedure and Code Collective	Reluctance to deal or assist with labour related matters



FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
	Agreement which deals with disciplinary related matters, Main Collective Agreement which provides for grievance procedure and other prescripts like Basic Conditions Employment Act, Code of Conduct for municipal employees.	
Represent the municipality at disciplinary hearings	Representation of the municipality during disciplinary hearings is provided for in the Disciplinary Procedure and Code Collective Agreement. The policies of the municipality also provide a direction on how disciplinary matters are supposed to be handled.	None.
Facilitate settlement of disputes	Disputes are dealt with in terms of the Labour Relations Act and South African Local Government Bargaining Council (SALGBC) rules. Other chapters of the Main Collective Agreement also provide for resolution of disputes within the local government sector.	None
Facilitate Local Labour Forum (LLF)	Local Labour Forum is facilitated in terms of Section 23 (5) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa which provides for Collective Bargaining. Chapter V of the Labour Relations Act, 66 of 1995 provides for Workplace Forums. To give effect to the mentioned legislative provisions, parties to South African Local Government Bargaining Council (SALGBC) agreed to establish the Local Labour Forum in terms of Clause 2.8 of the Main Collective Agreement and how it supposed to administer its business. Parties to SALGBC are South African Local Government Association (SALGA), South African Municipal Workers Union (SAMWU) and Independent Municipal and Allied Trade Union (IMATU).	Failure to quorate and to comply with the annual scheduled meetings per calendar is a challenge that we must deal with as members of the committee.
Coordinate labour related trainings or workshops	Coordination of training and or workshops flows from the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) which provides for the training of employees as and when necessary, especially newly employed staff. The training and or workshops minimize	None

FUNCTION	STATUS	CHALLENGES
	misconduct, conflict, grievances within the institution.	
Liaise with organised labour (unions) on labour related matters	Communication between management and organized labour (unions) lead to harmony within the institution. Meetings are held outside Local Labour Forum where parties can address their differences without necessarily resorting to industrial actions.	None
Advise management and employees on labour matters	Advice to management and employees is done as and when necessary, especially on labour matters. Managers / supervisors are mostly encouraged to apply progressive discipline especially on less serious issues.	None
Deal with industrial actions (strikes)	Strikes are handled in terms of the South African Local Government Association (SALGA) rules. Picketing rules approved by SALGA also give direction on how strikes should be dealt with. As the institution provides essential services, procedures of the Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995 are taken into consideration when dealing with strikes.	None

## Labour Relations Strategy

The Labour Relations Strategy aims to maintain relationships between the employer and its employees. It deals with issues such as the following:

- Discipline.
- Misconduct.
- Grievances.
- Collective bargaining.
- Strikes.
- Picketing.
- Management of labour relationship.
- Conflict resolution.
- Dispute Resolution.
- Awareness training workshops on Labour legislation.

## 2.7. FINANCIAL VIABILITY

### 2.7.1. Introduction

The financial objective of the SDM is to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of the district and to assist the five local municipalities within the SDM to be financially viable. The Audit reports as issued by the Auditor General for the past years have indicated a lot of financial challenges ranging from disclaimer audit reports, low revenue collection, inadequate asset management and internal controls. Recently the Audit Opinions were more favourable as they were unqualified.

### **Compliance with MFMA and Budget for 2022-2023**

#### **Section 63 – Assets and Liability Management**

The municipality has a GRAP compliant asset register which is updated on a quarterly basis.

#### **Section 64 – Revenue Management**

The municipality has credit control and debt management policy and the tariff policy which are reviewed annually. The municipality derives its revenue from government grants and billing of water consumption. Billing is done on the 25<sup>th</sup> of every month through the SOLAR financial system. Draft revenue enhancement strategy is being developed awaiting council approval.

#### **Section 82 – Delegations**

Compiles reviews and approved a Register of Delegated Powers and Functions annually.

#### **Section 83 – Competency Levels of professional Financial Officials**

Municipality offer supports personnel to improve competency levels

#### **Section 111 – Supply Chain Management**

Supply Chain Management Policy was first adopted by Council in 2005 and is reviewed annually with the adoption of the budget. The municipality has established a three-part bid committee system.

#### **Section 165 – Internal Audit Unit**

An internal audit unit has been established and functional with sufficient officials. The unit has an audit charter which was approved and adopted by council in 2008 and is reviewed annually.

#### **Section 166 – Audit Committee**

Audit committee has been established and effective. It is scheduled to meet at least four times in a year. The audit committee has an audit committee charter which was approved and adopted by committee and noted by council in 2008 and reviewed annually.

### **Conformity exists within the following stipulations on report and reportable matters:**

Section 71 – Monthly budget statement to Provincial and National treasury (xx

Municipality to sign off monthly reports to PT & NT for full compliance.

Section 72 – Midyear budget and performance assessment by accounting Officer.

Section 75 – Prescribed information placed on official website.

### **Section 121 and 127 – Annual Report that includes:**

- The annual financial statements
- The annual report

Table 130: The AFS has been compiled in terms of GAMAP/GRAP

<b>Financial Year</b>	<b>Audit Report</b>
2014/15	Unqualified
2015/16	Unqualified
2016/17	Unqualified
2017/18	Unqualified
2018/19	Qualified
2019/20	Qualified
2020/21	Qualified
2021/22	Qualified

### **Section 129 – Oversight reports on Annual Reports**

The Municipality has established an oversight Committee which considers the adoption of the annual report.

### **Section 131 – Issues raised by the Auditor-General in Audit Report for year ending on 30 June 2021**

- SCM: Appointment of SCM officials without relevant qualifications
- The position of ICT manager was still filled by an acting incumbent
- ICT policies and procedure manuals were not reviewed
- The suppliers' payment file was not encrypted
- Commitments - Incorrectly disclosed

- Revenue from non-exchange transactions - MIG - Cut – Off
- Quality deficiencies (Nebo Plateau Bulk Water Supply Carbonatites to Zaaiplaas)
- Expenditure overstated by inventory issued to sub-stores
- Completeness - Assets selected from floor could not be traced to the fixed assets register Trucks
- Internal audit plan was not approved prior to the start of the financial year
- Statement of Comparison of Budget and Actual Amounts
- Communication of audit findings- Cash book balance as per GL and AFS not agreeing
- Cash Flow Statement
- AFS: Operational Commitments - Differences between schedules and AFS
- Commitments - Operational commitment register incompletely disclosed
- Operating lease Commitments – Contract not included
- High level review - Contingent liabilities
- High level review - Difference noted between GL and Annual Financial Statements
- Employee related cost - Leave not approved on time
- Employee related cost – Non-compliance
- Employee related cost – Overstatement of basic salary (Performance Bonus).
- Employee related cost-Limitation of scope-Appointment letters
- Workstations configuration settings of inactivity timeout is inadequate
- Inadequate IT Security awareness training
- Disaster recovery and business continuity plan had not been developed
- User Account Management policy not approved
- VIP System limitation
- Deficiencies in the management of user access to the VIP system
- Program Change Management policy not approved
- Inadequate change management process
- Backup policy and procedure was not approved
- ICT Security policy was not approved and comprehensive
- ICT Firewall policy not approved and comprehensive
- Outdated Antivirus Software Installed
- Firewall was not made redundant or backed up
- Firewall administrative activities and traffic rules logs were not reviewed
- Inadequate Incident Management
- Inadequate patch management
- SCM policy not aligned to SCM regulation
- Council adopted PMS policy after commencement of the process of setting KPIs and targets in accordance with its IDP.
- Audit Committee only has 4 Members
- Strategic Planning and Budgeting - Deviations exceeded the percentage of approved annual budget
- Audit committee did not advise management on matters relating to accounting policies
- Audit Committee was not involved in the development and approval of the combined assurance plan.

The municipality developed an action plan to deal with issues raised by the Auditor-General, which is monitored on a monthly basis by management to track progress. It is located at the end of this section.

## Financial system

The installation of a comprehensive financial system is complete. The system will ensure:

- Improved control and management of Supply Chain Management processes
- Accurate expenditure reporting
- Accurate and up to date cash flow monitoring
- More stringent financial controls
- A reliable picture of the state of the district municipality's finances

## Underlying Budget principles for 2022/2023

- To eliminate budget deficit and ensure that the budget is cash backed
- Prioritise key services for provision of water and sanitation as well as funding contractual obligations
- Only critical posts to be filled in order to manage and stabilise personnel costs and keep the costs at less than 41% to total operating expenditure
- Implement cost reflective tariffs in order to reduce reliance on government subsidies and grants
- Take into account national imperatives such as mSCOA and budgeting for asset maintenance and refurbishment
- Reduce spending on non-priority spending including overtime, travelling costs, catering, security and fleet management.

Table 131: Capital Expenditure 2022/2023

Description	2020/2021	2022/2023 Allocation	%
MIG	371 960 000	477 577 000	49%
RRAMS	2 341 000	2 451 000	0%
	4 800 000	0	
<b>TOTAL CAPITAL GRANTS</b>	<b>379 101 000</b>	<b>480 028 000</b>	
OWN FUNDED	18 296 708	8 380 000	1%
<b>TOTAL CAPEX</b>	<b>776 498 708</b>	<b>968 436 000</b>	<b>100%</b>

## Tariffs for 2022-2023

- Sekhukhune District Municipality uses block tariff approach where the more services you use, the more you pay
- For Indigent households the municipality proposes that the first 6 kilolitres (6000 litres) be free and if indigent households consume more than 6kl, then they must start paying for consumption.
- The water consumption tariffs in the 2022/2023 year are increasing at 4,76% and will increase by 4,76% for outer years.

Table 132: Tariff categories for 2022/2023 &amp; 2023/2024

CATEGORY	SERVICE	2022/2023	2023/2024
Residential (basic charge)	WATER	R45,49	R47.77
Business (basic charge)		R134,46	R141,19
Government (basic charge)		R532,82	R559,46
Malls (basic charge)		R852,51	R895,13
Residential per kl		R13.67	R14.36
Business per kl		R19.66	R20.65

### Flat rate tariffs for certain areas in 2024-2025 financial year

The district municipality will in 2024/25 financial year introduce the flat rate of R176. 97 for residential areas.

Table 133: The following are 14 areas that will be billed on flat rate:

No.	Areas	No.	Areas
1.	Monsterlus	8.	Phetwane
2.	Mooihoek	9.	Matjeding
3.	Motetema Extension	10.	Mapodile
4.	Elandsdoorn	11.	Praktiseer
5.	Leeufontein	12.	Mashemong
6.	Letebejane	13.	Ga Nchabeleng
7.	Tsimanyane	14.	Jane Furse

### 2.7.2. Asset Management

#### Introduction

The role of Asset Management is critical to any business environment whether private or public sector. In the past municipalities used a cash-based system to account for assets, whilst the trend has been to move to an accrual system. With the cash-based system, assets were written off at year end and no costs were attached to subsequent period in which assets would be used. With the accrual system, assets are incorporated into the books of accounts and systematically written off over their anticipated lives.

This necessitates that record of asset costs are kept and key asset management functions required are:

- Recognition of all existing assets
- Safeguarding assets
- Maintaining assets
- Establishing accounting and information systems that account for the assets of the municipality
- Valuation principles in accordance with GRAP
- Establishing and maintaining systems of internal controls over assets
- Establishing and maintaining MSCOA compliant asset register
- Clarifying responsibilities and accountabilities of asset management processes
- Verification of Assets/ Projects Under Construction
- Maintenance of Projects and Work in Progress Register

Effective asset management functions are guided by the following statutory and legal framework:

- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- Public Finance Management Act, of 1999
- National Treasury Asset management framework
- Municipal Finance Management Act, of 2003
- Local Government Financial Best Practice Manual
- Disaster Management Act, of 2002
- National Water Act, of 1998
- Water Service Act, of 1997
- Municipal System Act, of 2000
- Municipal Structures Act, of 1998

<b>Functions of Asset Management division</b>	<b>Status quo on the function</b>	<b>Challenges regarding the function</b>
Update FAR and MAR	100% Immovable & 100% movables	Review of FAR is in progress to clear non-functional and not existing assets
Depreciation calculations	Updated	None
FAR & MAR G/L reconciliation	Updated	None
Disposal of damaged, obsolete & redundant items	Done	There are no proper records of replaced or redundant O & M assets
Record keeping	Updated files	None
Conditional assessment	Updated	None
Impairment tests	Updated	None
Maintenance of Work in Progress register (WIP)	Updated	None
New additions of Assets	Updated	None
Physical verification/ inspection and condition assessment of Project/ Assets Under Construction	Updated	None
Review Residual value	Updated	None
Safeguard assets	Verified bi-annually	*Departments shifting assets without informing Asset Unit, negatively impact recon of FAR & Office inventories *No reporting of damaged or stolen assets
Implement stores procedures	Done	Not all O& M materials are procured through the Stores



Functions of Asset Management division	Status quo on the function	Challenges regarding the function
		Vote and delivered at Stores for accountability to AG
Inventory reconciliations	Done	None
Barcoding of Assets	Outstanding	There are still movable assets which to date are still not barcoded, and those assets are mainly 2020/21 additions
Council Write offs	Outstanding	Poor/broken assets verified in 2020/21 financial year which are fully depreciated were not written off

## STATUS QUO

### MOVEABLE ASSETS

Moveable assets are all bar coded and linked to responsible custodians with signed office inventory lists in all departments. Verification is being conducted bi-annually, newly acquired assets are bar coded upon receipt, condition of assets is recorded during verification. Monthly reconciliations and calculations of depreciation are conducted. Office inventory lists are updated during verifications and upon delivered a new item. Some of our assets allocated to depots are too old and require an effective strategy to replace them.

### IMMOVABLES ASSETS

Completed immovable assets were unbundled, the Fixed Asset Register is updated and GRAP compliant. Removed last sentence

The primary objective of our new three year plan is to continue conducting full verification to review the FAR, unbundle, and assess assets condition for impairment purposes, electronic verification of Movable assets and tagging O & M items for effective tracing of replaced and redundant materials.

Updated monthly information files are available for current developed and unbundled projects (WIP & completed) as part of our three year plan.

Verification of projects are conducted bi-annually and established changes are incorporated in the Fixed Assets Register.

### CHALLENGES

- Not all O& M materials are procured through the Stores Vote and delivered at Stores for accountability to AG

- Skills shortage (for unbundling of completed projects and technical assessment of assets)
- Unavailability of previous projects information (As-built drawings, completion certificates/reports and payment certificates)

### 2.7.3. Budget and Reporting

#### Introduction

The role of Budget unit is to compile; coordinate and monitor budget of the municipality. This is an on-going process where it requires great skills and extensive attention to details.

The main aim of this Unit is: -

- To ensure accurate reporting for improvement in decision making.
- Preparation of the municipal budget and monitoring of the budget.
- To effectively manage funds and keep municipal debts at minimal level.
- To ensure accuracy and consistency in our municipal budget.

Table 134: Challenges and backlogs facing Budget & Reporting

Key Performance Area	Function/Priority	Status Quo	Challenges
Financial Management	To ensure sufficient reserve funds to address asset renewal by creation of capital replacement reserve fund	A capital replacement reserve fund is established. Minimal own funding (ring-fenced) to address assets renewals.	Unable to budget for sufficient capital replacements on dilapidated infrastructure assets due to insufficient budget on own funding
	To ensure timely submission of Annual Financial and improved Audit Opinion	AFS submitted by 31 <sup>st</sup> August	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monthly reconciliation of account balances not done on time.</li> <li>• Limited skills relating to accounting standards and preparation of AFS</li> </ul>
	To ensure preparation and implementation of funded and credible budget for the municipality	Two budgets made (Original budget, adjustment budget).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unfunded budget and limited cash reserves to fund creditors</li> </ul>

#### Budgeting issues of strategic importance for 2022-2023

- To have enough cash reserves to fund capital replacements and creditors and over the MTREF
- To implement cost containment measures and reduce nonpriority spending
- Operating expenditure increases limited to inflation cost
- Only to fund critical new positions related to service delivery
- To implement cost reflective tariffs over the MTREF

## 2.7.4. Revenue Management

### Introduction

Revenue Management is the application of disciplined analytics that predict consumer behaviour at the local government level and optimize service availability and price to maximize revenue growth. The primary aim of Revenue Management is providing the mandated services to the right consumers at the right time for the right price. The essence of this discipline is in understanding consumers' perception of service value and accurately aligning service prices, placement and availability with each consumer segment.

The Revenue Management Process entails:

- Data Collection
- Segmentation
- Forecasting
- Optimization
- Dynamic Re-evaluation

Effective revenue management functions are guided by following statutory and legal framework:

- Division of Revenue Act
- Public Finance management Act, of 1999
- Municipal Finance management Act, of 2003
- Local Government Financial Best Practice Manual
- National Water Act, of 1998
- Water Service Act, of 1997
- Municipal System Act, of 2000

Functions of Revenue Management Division	Status Quo of the function	Challenges regarding the functions
Data Collection	Functional	Certain customers don't cooperate during data collection
Billing	Billing is happening as expected	Faulty meters, illegal connections, insufficient material for new connections including repairs and maintenance, and insufficient water supply
Credit control	Partially functional	Resistance from communities for payments (especially villages)
Receipting	Functional.	None
Indigent management	Functional	None

### Status Quo

#### Data Collection

The Revenue Management process begins with data collection. Relevant data are paramount to a Revenue Management System's capability to provide accurate, actionable information. A system must collect and store historical data for inventory, prices, demand, and other causal

factors. Any data that reflects the details of services offered their prices and consumer payment rate, stored, and analysed.

## **Billing**

Billing process takes the form of the automated billing on eVenus, interest and sundry billing will be in the form of journals.

Included in the billing process are the following processes:

- refunds, (clearance, deposit)
- change of ownership,
- adjustments, (over and under billing)
- change of service, cancellation of service, (Adjustment of service)
- handling of queries,
- processing of service order (meter readings sheets)

## **Credit Control**

The municipality's collection process follows the under-mentioned steps:

- Telephone Collection.
- Written reminder.
- Final Notice.
- Communication with Water Service departments for service termination or restriction
- Legal action/ hand-over to the municipality attorneys or debt collectors.
- Listing of debtors with Credit Bureau.
- Recommendation for write off as bad debt.

## **Receipting**

- Ensuring that the cash receipts processes are performed efficiently (using the best methods to secure cash receipts)
- Ensuring that cash received is banked and recorded on a timely basis.
- To ensure that cash from debtors is received and recorded
- To ensure that receipts are recorded at the correct amount

## **Challenges**

- Data Management & cleansing
- Indigent Management
- Service Delivery

### **2.7.5. Supply Chain Management**

#### **Introduction**

Supply Chain Management Unit is established in order to procure goods and services and select contractors to provide assistance in the provision of municipal services.

The Supply Chain Management Unit should ensure that bid documentation, evaluation and adjudication criteria and general conditions of a contract, are in accordance with any applicable legislation and that any Treasury guidelines on Supply Chain Management are properly taken into account when procuring goods or services.

### Legislative Requirement

- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996
- The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act 5 of 2000
- The Broad Based Black Empowerment Act 53 of 2003
- Municipal Finance Management Act, No.56 of 2003
- CIDB Act
- Promotion of Access to Information

Functions of supply chain management division	Status quo of each function	Challenges with regard to the function
Demand	Functional but requires improvement	Timeliness of submissions from end-users' side still need to improve.
Acquisition	Functional but requires improvement	Tracking of work in progress and timely feedback to end-users needs to improve.
Reporting	System needs improvement on vendor register reporting functions	Exporting information to excel must be possible Classification of suppliers per targeted groupings to be affected
Inventory	Functional but requires improvement	not enough shelves to store material
Contract Management	Functional but need to improve	Termination of contract should be communicated with the Contracts officer

### STATUS QUO

#### Bid Committees

All Supply Chain Management Committees that have been established are:

- Specification Committee (Goods and Services)
- Specification Committee (Infrastructure)
- Evaluation Committee (Goods and Services)
- Evaluation Committee (Infrastructure)
- Adjudication Committee
- Quotation Committee

All Committees are fully functional, although the high staff turnover in SCM (including suspensions) have required regular changes and affected continuity and effectiveness to some extent.

### **Advertisement of Tenders**

- Briefings are being conducted before the closing date of tender.
- Tenders are advertised on CIDB (if applicable), SDM Website and National Treasury E-Portal
- Seven days quotations are advertised on the notice board, e- Tender Portal and SDM website
- Tender documentations are submitted via the tender box, which is opened on the relevant closing date(s) of the tenders.

### **Tender Document Management**

The tender documents are kept at registry.

### **Challenges**

- System reporting improvements will be required. Challenges with generating some reports were experienced during the 2017/18 audit process. Improvement is needed mainly in vendor register reporting and vendor classification in terms of targeted groupings.
- Implementation of the procurement plan challenges. However, improvement is noticed in Bid Adjudication meeting attendance.
- Project scheduling still needs to improve to avoid concentrated high volume batches of work for the Bid Committees, which in some instances require a straight sitting of up to four weeks.

## **2.7.6. Expenditure Management Unit**

### **Introduction**

Expenditure management Unit is responsible for the management of the expenditure of the municipality and to ensure accurate payment of salaries and salary related costs. Reasonable steps are taken to ensure that the institution has and maintains an effective system of expenditure control including procedures for approval, authorisation, withdrawal and payment of funds. And that the unit has and maintains a management, accounting and information system which:

- Recognises expenditure when it is incurred;
- Accounts for creditors of the municipality;
- Accounts for payments made by the municipality
- Process salaries and salaries related costs on time.

Creditors' accounts are paid within 30 days from date of submission of the correct invoice, unless prescribed otherwise for certain categories of expenditure.

To ensure effective and efficient payment of liabilities within set time frame and in compliance with MFMA and that payments by the entity are made directly to the person to whom it is due unless agreed otherwise only for the reasons as may be prescribed; and either electronically or by way of non-transferable cheques, if cash payment and payments by way of cash cheque may be made exceptional reasons only.

Functions for expenditure Management	Status Quo for each function	Challenges for each function
Effect payments within 30 days	Functional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Suppliers not registered and/ non-compliant status on the Central Supplier database (CSD) causes delay of payments.</li> <li>• Submission of invoices with incorrect information.</li> <li>• Submission of invoices already paid.</li> <li>• Delays in resolving invoice queries</li> <li>• Lack of privacy for those processing bank transactions.</li> <li>• Historical bulk water supply creditors have not been paid due to budget constraints and long outstanding queries.</li> </ul>
Monthly Payment of salaries and salaries related costs	Functional	Late submission of overtime, standby and travelling claims for reimbursement.

### **Irregular or fruitless and wasteful expenditure**

On discovery or realisation of any irregular expenditure or any fruitless and wasteful expenditure, the Budget and Treasury Office report in writing to the municipal manager, the Executive Mayor and National Treasury the particulars of the expenditure; and any steps that have been taken to recover the expenditure and prevent a recurrence of same.

### **Invoices receiving**

Invoices and payments certificates are registered in the register when submitted and are stamped with the stamp marked received and the date received.

Invoices and payment certificates are further checked for completeness and manual authorisation by the respective departmental directors.

### **Invoices payments**

Payments are electronically processed on the financial system and money transfers are made to service providers using Electronic Funds Transfer.

## Overall Challenges

- Non-adherence to timelines regarding verification, authorization, and submission of payments requests to Expenditure unit for payment processing.

### Expenditure Management Issues of Strategic Importance for 2020-2021

- Adhere to service standards and MFMA for payment of liabilities
- Timeous and accurate payment of salaries and related costs within set time frames.
- Filling of vacant posts

## 2.8. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

### 2.8.1. Introduction

The SDM has achieved remarkable progress in institutionalizing and implementing its communication and consultation mechanisms and processes. The District Communication Strategy has been reviewed in 2014. The medium for communication is highlighted and includes Mayoral Community Outreaches, District newsletters, Annual Report, Local and National Newspapers, Provincial and Local radio stations, Flyers, Ward Committee system, Community Development Workers (CDWs), as well as loud hailing.

The district improves good governance and public participation through focus on internal audit, risk management, public participation, communications and performance management among others.

In December 2009, the Sekhukhune District Municipality approved its new governance and institutional model. The governance model comprises of the Legislature and the Executive. The Legislature is made up of the Speaker of Council, the Council's Chief Whip and Section 79 Portfolio Committees, Standing Committees, Section 80 Committees, and the Executive. The Executive consists of the Executive Mayor and Section 79 Portfolio, Section 80 Committees and the Executive Mayor and Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs), as well as the administration, led by the Municipal Manager.

The district's governance model is underpinned by the following key principles:

- Delineation of powers to separate legislative and oversight roles and executive roles and responsibilities;
- Governance and institutional arrangements should deepen democracy, facilitate citizen empowerment and enhance stakeholder participation and involvement;
- Decision-making powers and accountability should be strengthened, clearly defined, allocated and decentralized, where appropriate
- Expeditious and efficient decision-making should ensure the facilitation of effective governance; and
- Institutional structures of the district to be considered as part of a single group, based on a politically led strategic and policy perspectives.



The separation of legislative and executive roles delegates executive functions to the Executive Mayor and defines the roles of the legislature as that of oversight of the Executive. This function is performed by Council (in plenary), the Municipal Public Accounts Committee and the Section 79 Portfolio Committees, under the chairpersonship of non-executive councilors. These committees monitor and scrutinize the delivery and outputs of the Executive and may request the MMCs or Heads of Department (HoDs) to account for service delivery and performance.

The Council, when meeting in plenary, provides an important platform for meaningful debate on issues that affect and require the attention of the district. It has three essential but interrelated roles and issues of legislation, oversight and to ensure community and stakeholder participation.

### **Legislature**

The Council's legislative functions include the approval of the by-laws, policies, the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), tariff for rates and service charges and the budget. The Council's role in this respect is to consider reports from the Executive Mayor on each of these functions, to consider public discussions and comment, stimulates debate in multiparty portfolio committees and to provide the public platform for District-wide interaction. On the basis of the comments, the Council is in the position to approve or amend reports or to refer the reports back to the Executive Mayor.

Council seeks to ensure community and stakeholder participation. The Council, led by the Office of the Speaker, has to facilitate community and stakeholder consultation and participation. Individual ward councillors, in conjunction with elected ward committees, play a critical role in facilitating these participatory processes.

### **Chief Whip**

The Council's Chief Whip plays a pivotal role in the overall system of governance to ensure and sustain cohesiveness within the governing party and maintain relationships with other political parties. The main functions of the Chief Whip are to:

- Ensure proper representation of political parties in the various committees;
- Maintain sound relations with the various political parties represented in the Council; and
- Attend disputes between political parties and build consensus.

### **Section 80 Portfolio Committees**

These committees perform an oversight role by monitoring the delivery and outputs of the Executive. They are entitled to request departments and MMCs to account for their functions. In line with this responsibility, these committees may summon departments to appear before the committee and present any required documentation and information. The Portfolio Committees do not have any delegated decision-making powers.

#### **The specific functions of Portfolio Committees include:**

- Reviewing, monitoring, and evaluating departmental policies;

- Reviewing plans and budgets;
- Considering quarterly and annual departmental reports;
- Examining the link between the policy (sector plans) and budget (business plans);
- Monitoring the implementation of plans;
- Exploring options to increase value for money, and
- Holding the political executive accountable for performance against policies and District priorities.

**The following are the five Portfolio Committees:**

- Budget and Treasury (BTO)
- Community Services
- Corporate Services
- Infrastructure and Water Services
- Planning and Economic Development

**Section 79 Standing Committees**

The Standing Committees are permanent committees, established to deal with Council-related matters. They have some delegated decision-making powers and are required to submit reports to Council. Councillors chair all Standing Committees, except the Audit Committee, which is chaired by an independent person in line with the prescriptions of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA).

The following standing committees have been put in place:

- Municipal Public Accounts Committee
- Petitions, Rules and Ethics Committee
- Chairpersons Committee
- Programming Committee
- Audit Committee

**The Executive**

The Executive Mayor, assisted by the Mayoral Committee, heads the executive arm of the district. The Executive Mayor is at the centre of the system of governance and the executive powers are vested in him by the Council to manage the daily affairs of the district. This means that he has overarching strategic and political responsibility. The following are the portfolios allocated to Members of Mayoral Committee:

- MMC: Planning and Economic Development – Cllr. S. Mashilo
- MMC: Corporate Service – Cllr. O.H Mafefe
- MMC: Infrastructure and Water Services – Cllr. B.C Kupa
- MMC: Infrastructure and Water Services – Cllr. Mabatane Mathale (Operation and Maintenance)
  - Deputy MMC: Infrastructure and Water Services – Cllr. Mathipa
- MMC: Budget and Treasury – Cllr. R.K Sefala

- MMC: Community Services – Cllr. B. Leshaba
- MMC: in Office of the Executive Mayor – for Woman, Children, Old Age and People with disability – Cllr. S.P Nkosi
- MMC: in Office of the Executive Mayor – for Youth, Sport, Art & Culture – Cllr. Leokana

### **The Leader of Executive Business**

The Leader of Executive Business provides the interface between the executive and legislative branches. The roles and responsibilities of the Leader of Executive Business are to:

- Represent the executive branch in terms of Council matters and serve as the link between the executive branch and the legislative branch;
- Ensure that executive business is effectively delegated to Council, via the Programming Committee;
- Consult with the Speaker when the Speaker intends calling a special meeting of Council, outside of the scheduled Council meetings;
- Consult with the Speaker for purposes of allocating time for the discussion of matters of public importance on the Council agenda, and
- Determine which matters are referred to the Speaker and thereafter to Section 79 Committees and Council.

### **Administration**

The Municipal Manager is also the accounting officer, as defined by the Municipal Structures Act. The responsibilities of the Municipal Manager include managing financial affairs and service delivery in the municipality. He is assisted by the Management Team composed of the following departments:

- Municipal Manager's Office composed of the Chief Operations Officer with the Internal Audit Unit, Risk Management Unit, and Performance Management Unit
- Corporate Services
- Budget and Treasury
- Planning and Economic Development
- Infrastructure and Water Services
- Community Services

### **Municipal Owned Entity**

The Sekhukhune District Municipality has established the Sekhukhune Development Agency (SDA) as its own Municipal Owned Entity to drive high impact economic development programmes. The entity is headed by the Chief Executive Officer with a Board of Directors in place to provide management oversight.

### **Human Resources**

The district is committed to an efficient human resources system and has reviewed several policies to ensure the effective development of staff.

## 2.8.2. Internal Audit

### Introduction

Primary role of Internal Audit is to assist the municipality to accomplish its objectives by bringing a systematic, disciplined approach to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of risk management, control and governance processes. The Internal Audit is mandated by the following legislative frameworks: Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, King Code on Corporate Governance, International standards for the professional practice of internal auditing (and other prescripts applicable to the Public Service.

### Internal Audit Functions:

- Develop Risk Based Internal Audit Plan
- Evaluate internal controls systems
- Review effectiveness risk management
- Review financial information
- Evaluate governance and compliance
- Evaluate and Assess Performance Management System
- Evaluate Information and Communication Technology environment
- Perform Ad-hoc request including Investigations
- Coordinate external audit activities
- Facilitate Audit Committee sittings
- Co-ordinate inter-governmental fiscal relations
- Monitoring implementation of the operation clean audit strategy
- Conducting external assessment review
- Monitoring of Internal Audit Implementation plan

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
Develop Risk Based Internal Audit Plan	Three Year Rolling Plan and Annual Internal Audit Plan	Late submission of the Risk Assessment which lead to late approval by the Audit Committee
Evaluate internal controls systems	Internal Control measures	Control environment weaknesses Limited resource Cost versus benefit in implementing control measures Inadequate combined assurance model
Review effectiveness risk management	Enterprise-Wide Risk Management	Slow turnaround time in reduction of risks Inadequate inter-departmental relations in activities Un-coordinated activities
Review financial information	Accounting Policies, Procedures and Practices Adequacy, Reliability and Accuracy of financial reporting	Late submission of the Annual Financial Statement for review by the Internal Audit and Audit Committee

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
		Lack of quarterly Annual Financial Statements Un-favourable Audit Opinion
Evaluate governance and compliance	Council and Management Oversight. Approved Policies and Procedures	Non-compliance with Legislations. Inconsistent practice Policies not fully implemented Non-functional committee structures
Evaluate and Assess Performance Management System	Organizational performance management and accountability. Performance Management System Framework Performance evaluation	Non-Compliance with Municipal Planning and Performance Regulations. Poor performance not penalized. Unreliable information Limitation of scope Unmeasurable indicators Late submission of the information
Evaluate Information and Communication Technology environment	Financial and Non-Financial Systems Telecommunication Technology Information Technology Business Management Plans	Loss control in relation to information and communication technology Fallible ICT Systems Inadequate backup systems
Perform Adhoc request including Investigations	High volume of management requests	Lack of investigative skills/resources Inadequate skills internally to investigate cases
Coordinate External Audit activities	Favorable Audit Opinion	Late or Non submission of request for information (RFI) Poor attendance of Audit Steering Committee by Managers and Directors Non implementation of the AG (SA) and Internal Audit Findings Lack of commitments by Management
Facilitate Audit Committee Activities	Effective Audit Committee	Conflicting council activities. Poor attendance by section 56 Managers (Directors) Late submission of information/items from departments Slow implementation of Internal Audit Findings
Co-ordinate inter-governmental fiscal relations	Effective IGR structures	Un-coordinated activities Conflicting Council Meetings
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring implementation of the operation clean audit strategy</li> </ul>	Draft Operation Clean Audit Strategy	Un-coordinated activities Conflicting Council Meetings
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conducting external assessment review</li> </ul>	Internal Audit Charter	Lack of resources to do external quality review

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring of internal Audit Implementation plan</li> </ul>	Internal Audit Implementation Plan	Slow implementation of Internal Audit Findings Lack of supporting evidence

### Status Quo

### Control

It assists the organization in maintaining effective systems of internal control by evaluating their effectiveness and efficiency.

### Governance Processes

We assess and make appropriate recommendations for improving the governance process in its accomplishment of the following objectives:

- Promoting appropriate ethics and values within the Municipality;
- Ensuring effective organizational performance management and accountability;
- Communicating risk and control information to appropriate areas of the organization; and
- Coordinating the activities of and communicating information among the Council, external and internal auditors, and management.

These are achieved through performing the following types of Internal Audits:

- Risk Based Audits
- Performance Audits
- ICT Audits
- Consulting and Advisory Services
- Management request

### Challenges to be addressed by Internal Audit Unit

- Review the effectiveness of Risk Assessments
- Internal control environment weaknesses.
- Limited resource
- Inadequate combined assurance model
- Reviewal of the Draft clean audit strategy
- Un-favourable Audit Opinion
- Non-compliance with Legislations.
- Non-Compliance with Municipal Planning and Performance Regulations
- Un-reliable information
- Inadequate skills internally to investigate cases
- Late or Non submission of request for information
- Late response to COMAFS (Findings)
- Lack of supporting evidence

- Slow implementation of Internal Audit Findings
- Slow implementation of Audit committee resolutions

### 2.8.3. Risk Management

#### Introduction

The Public Sector Risk Management Framework guidelines and the ISO31000 note that **'everyone in an organization has the responsibility for internal control'**. Section 62(1) c and 95 (c) of the Municipal Finance Management Act, (Act 56 of 2003) stipulates that an Accounting Officer (Municipal Manager) of a municipality is to ensure that a municipality has and maintains an effective, efficient, and transparent system of financial and risk management and internal control.

The above is further enhanced by the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) of 2000, and King IV Report on Corporate Governance for South Africa 2016, both of which to expect of the administration to design a process necessary and appropriate for provision of reasonable assurance regarding achievement of the municipality's set objectives.

Risk Management is regarded as part of the strategic levers of the municipality's institutional planning geared towards attainment of effective and efficient Corporate Governance regime.

#### Functions of the Risk Management Unit

- Conduct risk assessment at strategic, operational, processes and projects levels
- Develop insurance program options, procure insurance cover, and manage insurance claims and underwriting
- Manage compliance with legislations and policies
- Implement and manage Anti-Fraud and corruption Strategy
- Develop, implement, and monitor Business Continuity Management Plan
- Conduct Security Threat Risk Analysis at operational sites
- Oversee Security Management SDM-wide
- Provide secretariat duties to the Risk Management Committee

PROJECT	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
Conduct Strategic Risk Assessment and review risk register	Risk Assessment has been conducted at the following levels: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strategic</li> </ul>	Slow turnaround times in reviewing of risk registers on quarter basis.
Conduct Operational Risk Assessment and review risk registers.	Risk Assessment has been conducted at the following levels: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operational</li> </ul>	Non-integration of the risk assessments in the IDP (Integrated Development Plan) planning cycle Slow turnaround times in reviewing of risk registers

Conduct Processes Risk Assessments	No Risk Assessment has been conducted at Projects	<p>Non-integration of the risk assessments in SDM-wide planning cycle.</p> <p>Inadequate technical expertise and capacity of officials overseeing the operations of Wastewater Treatment Works and Water Treatment Works.</p> <p>There is a dire need to delve into the mechanical and electrical aspects of the Water Treatment Works (WTW) and Wastewater Treatment Works (WWTW) and produce quantitative reports of their functionality.</p> <p>Slow process of assessment of projects due to inadequate capacity and non-timely availability of role players such as consultant and projects managers.</p>
	No existing work processes and Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs)	Outdated documented work processes
Facilitate insurance coverage for municipal assets	Insurance cover has been confirmed even though no premiums have been paid yet.	Unreliability of the Asset Register for utilisation in the determination of assets sums insured/values.
Under-insured Asset's valuation	Strategic Non-moveable Assets have been revaluated with new values utilised in the determination of Sums Insured.	Sums Insured of assets obtained from the Asset Register result in reliance on incorrect values which compromises the claims settlement of losses suffered.
Facilitation of Assets Insurance Claims and payments	<p>All known insurance claims are being reported for settlement and payable excess facilitated for processing.</p> <p>Staff members found to be responsible/negligent for losses are compelled to pay back the excesses paid by Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM)</p>	<p>The more frequent and low-impact insurance claims are continuously increasing thereby putting more strain on the self-insurance (excess) funding mechanism.</p> <p>Currently no claims have been assessed due to outstanding insurance premiums.</p>
Security operations management	Poor state of safeguarding (fencing) of sites resulted in a high number of posting of security guards Many operational sites have dilapidated security fencing or none	Poor fencing conditions necessitate a continuous safeguarding through the posting of additional security guards thereby impacting on the funding/budget Inadequate funding delays the improvement of fencing thereby



		resulting in continuous opting of additional security guards/warm bodies on sites and unabated intrusion and theft.
Conduct Security Operational Sites Assessments	Threat Risk Analysis have been conducted at several operational sites and reports have been compiled and are available	Losses sometimes occur at operational sites despite the presence of security guards The vastness of the area where operational sites are located impedes adequate, timely and regular inspections and assessments
Facilitation of Anti-Fraud & Corruption hotline	Anti- Fraud and Corruption strategy and Whistle blowing policy exists.	There is no Anti- Fraud and Corruption Committee and a Disclosure Hotline.
Develop Business Continuity Management (BCM) Plan	Business Impact Analysis exercises was conducted in all departments in 2016/2017FY	Inadequate internal capacity and no budget allocated as proposed in 2023/2024 FY. Funds to be raised through budget adjustment.
Monitor compliance management	Compliance monitoring is conducted on legislation on quarterly basis as per the Checklist.	The compliance function is done manually, which poses a serious challenge of rendering the function mundane. The function only deals with legislation to the exclusion of policies, standards, and work procedures.

#### 2.8.4. Public Participation, Council Secretariat and Councillor Support

##### Introduction

Municipalities are by law required to foster public participation and ensure its citizenry is engaged in matters of governance. SDM place public participation and accountability at the centre of its work. The Municipality has adopted a Public Participation Policy Framework which encompasses an ongoing public participation programme.

Purpose: To facilitate public participation, public relations, and participatory democracy.

Functions of Public Participation, Council Secretariat and Councillor Support:

- Coordinate public participation and stakeholder engagement in the district.
- Coordinate public participation and stakeholder engagement for Provincial and National Sector Departments
- Provide support to council

- Maintain records for council
- Provide secretariat services to council
- Coordinate capacity building & councilor welfare
- Coordinate oversight visits of council committees
- Compile oversight visits reports to Council

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
<p>Coordinate public participation and stakeholder engagement in the district</p>	<p>Public Participation Unit is in the Speaker's Office. It has a complement of 4 personnel, 1 Manager, 1 Public Participation Officer and 2 Public Participation Coordinators.</p> <p>SDM public participation take place through;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mayoral Imbizos</li> <li>• Speaker's outreach</li> <li>• IDP's</li> </ul> <p>SDM has a Public Participation Policy Framework and Petition Policy adopted by council.</p> <p>Review of the policies is done annually.</p> <p>The objectives of the policy are as follows;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meet the legal requirements around community participation that are spelled out in the Municipal systems Act No. 32 of 2000.</li> <li>• Build an open, transparent and accountable system of governance.</li> <li>• Develop a culture of community participation through creating conditions for local communities to participate in the affairs of the municipality.</li> <li>• Assist vulnerable groups to participate effectively in the system of local government.</li> <li>• Provide clear, sufficient and timeous information concerning community participation to communities.</li> <li>• Communicate decisions of Council.</li> </ul>	<p>-Lack of mobile and mounted loud hailers and stage sound system</p>

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Communicate public notices of meetings for communities in a manner that promotes optimal public participation.</li> <li>• Set up systems and mechanisms that will ensure compliance with regulations and guidelines that may be issued from the National or Provincial Government.</li> </ul> <p>The Public Participation policy framework spells out the roles and responsibilities of;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Council,</li> <li>• Executive Mayor,</li> <li>• The Speaker,</li> <li>• Portfolio and Standing Committees,</li> <li>• Ward Councilors,</li> <li>• Management and Administration,</li> <li>• The Public (Ward Committees) and</li> <li>• Community Development Workers</li> </ul>	
Coordinate public participation and stakeholder engagement for Provincial and National Sector Departments	Assist National and Provincial Departments whenever they have programmes in the district, e.g. public hearings, Premier's Exco. Outreach, etc.	Lack of alignment of programs
Provide support to council	Coordinate council and council structures activities	Adherence to schedule of Council Activities
Maintain records for council	Currently file council certificates, minutes, and policies	No capacity for file management.
Provide secretariat services to council	Coordinate council and council structures activities	Capacity building on the staff
Coordinate oversight visits of council committees	Conducting pre-visits and actual visits to projects and programs approved by Council	No cameras
Compile oversight visits reports to Council	Compile oversight visit reports	Lack of capacity
Coordinate capacity building & training	Facilitating training and capacity building for councilors	Pre-enrolment requirements

FUNCTIONS	STATUS QUO	CHALLENGES
Coordinate councilors welfare	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Attending to councilor queries.</li> <li>• Facilitate for councilors to provide for risk</li> <li>• Facilitate submission of councilors' declaration of interest forms</li> <li>• Promote compliance to income tax by councilors</li> </ul>	<p>Late submissions of financial interest declaration forms.</p> <p>Low turn-out to income tax workshops</p>

## Status Quo

### Ward Committees/Community Development Workers (CDWs)

Ward Committees are important structures that are at the heart of communities and are used to enhance community participation in the affairs of the municipalities. The SDM has successfully launched 117 ward committees in the district. There is still a challenge of ensuring that they are motivated to effectively assist their communities. The other major challenges are lack of resources, transportation in vast wards, low literacy levels and in some cases lack of clarity in terms of their roles and responsibilities in their respective areas. It is within the ward committee system that the district expects community participation to be effective particularly during the IDP consultation period. It is therefore imperative that ward committees should get support and capacity building through training.

Apart from the ward committees, there are the CDWs that are an integral part of the ward committee system in this exercise of assisting communities to achieve their needs. The CDWs help communities and the municipalities to fast-track delivery of services and the eradication of poverty. The province has deployed about 115 CDWs to the District to assist communities on developmental issues. The only challenge which is there with this structure is that it excludes some communities while other communities have more than one CDW in a ward.

### 2.8.5. Communications, Executive Support, Customer Care and Special Programmes

#### Introduction

As mentioned above, the SDM has achieved remarkable progress in institutionalizing and implementing its communication and stakeholder engagements mechanisms and processes. The District Communication Strategy was first adopted by Council in 2016 and it was last reviewed in 2021.

The new Council, elected during the November 2021 local government elections will also review and adopt the communications strategy. The medium for communication includes, State of the District Address, Mayoral Community Outreaches, Events, District newsletters and promotional materials, Annual Report, Local and National Newspapers, Provincial and Local radio stations, Flyers, Ward Committee system, social media, Community Development Workers (CDWs), as well as loud hailing.

The district has established a functional district communicator's forum which coordinates, align, and streamline government programmes involving sector departments, municipalities and other government Institutions.

As the world is battling with the COVID-19 pandemic, SDM has also embraced the online channels such as social media and Zoom Video Conferencing to communicate messages.

## **Status Quo**

### **Community Feedback Meetings**

The district engages stakeholders like traditional leaders, business, labour, civil society, sector groups etc. in matters affecting them in their different areas of responsibilities. This community feedback programme assists in the improvement of communication and interaction between the district, local municipalities, and broader community on issues of service delivery and development. Local municipalities are visited during FORA, Imbizo and IDP consultations.

### **Media Liaison (Electronic and print Media)**

The SDM utilizes both electronic and print media (internal and external newsletters) to improve and broaden communication in its jurisdiction. It also uses national and local Radios. Although loud hailing is an effective way of conveying message to communities, the SDM also uses radio for advertising meetings, workshops, conferences, summits, and other functions.

Communication is also done through print media in the form of external and internal newsletters, local, regional, and national newspapers and websites. The district produces newsletters on a quarterly basis and when a need for special print medium communication arises.

An exciting initiative in the past 3 financial years has been the innovation and commitment to support local content in the form of bulk media buying for both print and electronic media. A total of eight (08) media houses benefitted, four community radio stations and two newspapers and the relationship is growing.

### **Promotional Materials**

Promotional materials like notepads, pens, posters, flyers and banners are used by the district to reinforce the flow and the dissemination of information to the broader society of Sekhukhune. Some of these promotional materials are distributed during District events to encourage and motivate effective community participation.

The communication unit has been able to implement the decision on austerity measures on cutting expensive promotional materials such as t-shirts.

### **Youth Development**

The SDM has adequately addressed youth development through the appointment of special personnel to deal directly with youth issues. It is in this office where developmental issues like unemployment, lack of housing, poverty, shortage of skills, high levels of crime and violence,

social and family disintegration and other social ills like HIV/AIDS that affect youth are addressed. It is within this background that youth development strategy should be developed to assist young people to deal with issues that affect them as unemployed, unskilled, vulnerable, and under-resourced. Resources should be channeled towards the development of young people's projects for their upliftment to stop the escalation of crime and violence.

SDM approved youth development policy and strategy in the 2017/2018 financial year which will assist in setting up structures and process to streamline youth development in the district. The youth policy will be reviewed during this 2023\2024 financial year. SDM is assisting grade 12 with bursary and tertiary applications. Even though the municipality doesn't have funds for bursaries, we try to assist with information from various sector departments and private sector. Opportunities are also given in EPWP and experiential learning programs.

### **Women Empowerment**

Women empowerment is a phenomenon that is high on the agenda of the SDM. At present the district has two women Mayors, out of five. The SDM is one of the Districts in Limpopo that has elevated the status of women in municipal governance. Women should be encouraged to partake in developmental projects that would assist them to get out of the poverty line that they found themselves in. This means that resources should be channeled in the direction of women empowerment projects to empower them economically and politically. SDM took the initiative to bring Dikgoshikgadi and Mmakgoshi to assist in women development in the villages lead by them and bring skills to the women. Departments have helped to bring opportunities to different villages around the district working together with the office of the Executive Mayor and the local municipalities.

### **Challenges encountered in women's empowerment**

- Under-Funding of programmes targeting women in the communities
- Lack of growth for women in our communities
- Lack of resources to support community initiatives and programs for women development.

### **Children's Development programmes**

The Office of the Executive Mayor's Special Programmes support children's development through support to Early Childhood Development Centre's with groceries, learning materials and annual celebration of children's day. SDM has so given young children the opportunity to know what is going on in the offices of the district. Executive Mayor has also assisted the less fortunate children by working with social development in getting them their grants and a safe home to live in. As an ongoing project the municipality has provided toilets for a few care centers where children go after school and during school holidays. Through the office of the premier has given children opportunities to speak out and we hear their cry and their expectations. SDM is in a process of forming a district forum in the financial year 2023/2024.

### **Challenges encountered in children's programs are**

- The unorganized children sector makes it difficult for mobilization of support.

- Under-Funding of programmes targeting children
- Lack of early childhood facilities in our communities
- Lack of resources to support community initiatives and programs on children's development.

### **Aged Development Programmes**

The aged programme has been established in the district as a means to sustain Mandela Day Programmes and to promote healthy lifestyle of the elderly \ older persons.

#### **Mandela Day Programme.**

This programme is used to encourage communities to honour Mandela Day by working together to assist the needy communities by building or renovating their facilities. Sekhukhune District visits its four local municipalities on a rotation basis to host Mandela Day to its vulnerable people. The district organised communities to assist in painting, putting in windowpanes, fixing roofs and assist in gardening and yard cleaning on the identified date. After the job well done on the day, older persons play indigenous games and Golden Games as a way of promoting healthy lifestyle among the older persons.

#### **Disability Programme (People with disability)**

The district organizes people with disability annually to educate them about their rights, support them in the form of workshops in disasters, road awareness, albinism, and recently nurses and doctors were capacitated in sign language as one of the official languages of South Africa.

- Celebration of Mandela Day, Human Rights, and International Day for older persons with Social Development.
- International Disability Day is also celebrated in the district.
- Ongoing support to the disabled, pension committees and events for the elderly

#### **Traditional Leadership**

Historically, the institution of traditional leadership has been relegated to the periphery of development. Land was developed by the traditional leaders to participate in the decision-making exercise of their own destiny. Their communities blamed them for their unscrupulousness and their lack of vision for the future. The new political dispensation has brought another side to this institution that shows that they have been the makers of their own history in the past and they should be given an opportunity to play their role. The SDM has played a significant role in making sure that traditional leadership is broad on board to assist in bringing service delivery to their communities.

The SDM is confident to pronounce that the relationship between itself, the institution and all local municipalities is healthy. The challenge is on who should be the custodian of development in their

areas of jurisdiction. They do not agree with democratically elected municipal structures in the delivery of services. They prefer partnership rather than exclusionary types of development. Ongoing workshops are held with all the 81 traditional leaders in the district to find common ground around the interpretation and application of SPLUMA as a government policy guiding Land Use Development.

### **Sports, Arts and Culture**

#### Mayoral Sports, Heritage Celebration and Language Promotion

Mayoral Sports has been used as one of the development tools of the district sports federations under the district sport confederation. The indigenous games serve to promote and integrate youth and elderly programmes. The youth indigenous programme integrates with the Golden Games played by elderly or older persons from the ages of 60 years and older. The indigenous games and the Golden Games are played until the National Level.

The Executive Mayor 's Cup is inclusive of all the local municipalities. The above-mentioned competition starts from ward level until the district level whereby different codes compete for district pride. The Executive Mayor's Cup is the flagship project in sports development in the district.

### **Arts and Culture**

Heritage Celebration and the Language Promotion programmes are the flagship Projects in the District. Heritage Celebration is organised annually in a rotational basis of our local municipalities. The above-mentioned programmes develop arts and culture in the district with the Language Promotion programme reinforcing the promotion of the indigenous languages of the district. Our language policy developed in 2014 indicated the official languages of the district being: Sepedi, IsiNdebele, I siSwati, English, and Afrikaans. Language Promotion Programme promotes the three indigenous languages of Sekhukhune District Municipality.

The two flagship projects are held annually in September. In the past, language promotion was implemented in partnership with Love LIFE Organization. Few schools were involved, and that resulted in the programme shifted to Arts Centres. The seven (7) Arts centres involved schools and the communities from all the local municipalities. The arts centres compete annually with all the genres that promotes our district indigenous languages.

### **Intergovernmental Relations**

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa has declared that the government should have three layers which are Local, Provincial and National spheres. These three spheres should be interdependent, interrelated, and independent. It is therefore indicated that all organs of state should promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations within the context of cooperative governance hence the District Development Forum and IDP Representative Forum. This is done to encourage information sharing and dealing with common challenges that are facing all municipalities in the district.

### **Challenges of this area**



- Under-Funding of programmes targeting vulnerable groups
- Special programmes still seen as a peripheral issue.
- Communication not reaching all the targeted people.

### **Customer Care and ISD**

SDM has established a 24-hour call centre situated in Groblersdal which serves as a one stop telephonic complains system. The call centre mainly addresses queries relating to fire, emergency services and water shortage.

Institutional Social Development (ISD) is mainly used as foot soldiers to address on a face-to-face basis social issues affecting SDM projects in the communities. ISD officer work with structures in the community such as water committees, ward committees etc.

### **2.8.6. Performance Management System (PMS)**

#### **Introduction**

PMS is simply a system of managing performance. It provides a set of tools and techniques to plan, monitor, measure and review performance of the organization and individuals. The system ensures that all parts of the organization work together to achieve the goals and targets of the organization. Performance Management System and the IDP process are seamlessly integrated. Whereas the IDP fulfills the planning stage of Performance Management, Performance Management System, on the other hand, fulfills the implementation management, monitoring, and evaluation of the IDP. PMS should provide diagnostic signals of the potential risks that are likely linked to implementation of the IDP.

#### **Status Quo**

PMS in SDM is doing fairly well and compliance is adhered to at all times. Though there are normal administrative challenges like in all institutions, SDM does strive to always comply with legislative requirements. The municipality has procured PM System that seek to improve the processes in terms of performance management. The implementation of of the system is effective from 2023/2024 financial year.

#### **Challenges**

- Improvement in terms of audit opinion.
- Setting unrealistic targets.
- Late submission of reports.
- Negative perceptions and attitudes with regard to performance in general.

# **CHAPTER 3:**

# **STRATEGIES**

# **PHASE**

### 3.1. VISION

“An innovative leader in integrated economic development and sustainable service delivery”.

### 3.2. MISSION STATEMENTS

To improve the quality of life for all communities through:

- provision of a democratic and accountable government;
- promotion of inclusive and egalitarian economic transformation;
- promotion of a safe and healthy environment;
- fostering of community involvement and stakeholder engagement; and
- Strengthening institutional capacity.
- Promotion of social cohesion

### 3.3. CORE VALUES OF THE MUNICIPALITY

The district regards its core values as the cornerstone that should guide the municipality in conducting its affairs. While the core value were represented by the abbreviation HEART is now changed to HEART + EAR and below is the full meaning of the newly identified core values:

- **H-onesty:** We tell the truth and back it up with action. We commit to be truthful in everything we do
  - **E-xcellence:** We strive to provide exceptional level of service to our communities. Excellence lies in our hearts to evoke it in the community by exemplifying and giving back.
  - **A-ccessibility:** We provide means that enable communities to reach services easily. We strive to optimise the use of technology, retail facilities and expanding points of services to remote areas.
  - **R-espect:** We treat people with courtesy, politeness, and kindness irrespective of their profession, ethnicity, religion, and cultural background.
  - **T-ransparency:** We conduct our activities and share information to our communities in an open and transparent manner.
- +
- **E-thical leadership:**
  - **A-ccountability:**
  - **R-esponsiveness:**

### 3.4. MOTTO

Re a aga / Siyakha – meaning ‘we are building’.

### 3.5. SLOGAN

Destination for economic growth and development.

### 3.6. MAYORAL STRATEGIC PRIORITIES

1. Provision of water and sanitation services in a sustainable manner
2. Local economic development, growth and job creation through agrarian reform, mining, tourism and repositioning of SDA
3. Good governance and sound financial management
4. Sustainable land use management and spatial transformation
5. Community development, social cohesion and nation building
6. Public participation, stakeholder engagements and partnerships

### 3.7. SWOT ANALYSIS AND STRATEGIES

#### INFRASTRUCTURE AND WATER SERVICES

##### Core mandate of the Department:

- ❖ Infrastructure & Water Services (I&WS) has a duty to provide basic water and sanitation services to communities within SDM.

STRENGTH	WEAKNESS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Political buy in and support.</li> <li>❖ The Department is properly coordinated.</li> <li>❖ Stability leadership in the Department.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Reliance on external service providers</li> <li>❖ Shortage of Human resources for the IWS.</li> <li>❖ Aged Skilled labour retiring and not replaced timeously.</li> <li>❖ Limitations in contracts management.</li> <li>❖ Lack of fully fleshed planning unit</li> <li>❖ No credible asset Management Plan, Sector Plans and other Operations and Maintenance plans</li> <li>❖ Poor information and record management</li> <li>❖ Lack of support from other internal Municipal Departments</li> <li>❖ No GIS based system for O &amp; M, planning &amp; Design, project implementation, and asset management (e.g. As-built drawings).</li> </ul>

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Support from other stakeholders (National and Provincial Departments)</li> <li>❖ Opportunities for public private partnerships (Mining resources and current mining operations, DBSA, MISA,</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Lack of document keeping/archiving</li> <li>❖ Community unrests, business forums and other stakeholders stopping projects and sometimes leading to infrastructure destruction.</li> </ul>

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
<p>etc.) for building new infrastructure for economic growth and development.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Professionalise the IWS department.</li> <li>❖ Allocation of funds from the fiscus to build new water and wastewater infrastructure, including refurbishment of the existing infrastructure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Uncoordinated Mushrooming of Business fora</li> <li>❖ Ageing infrastructure</li> <li>❖ Electricity Loadshedding</li> <li>❖ Climate Change</li> <li>❖ Unauthorised connections to the existing bulk pipeline</li> <li>❖ Mushrooming informal settlements</li> <li>❖ Encroachment to Servitude, theft and vandalism of infrastructure.</li> </ul>

## STRATEGIES

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGIES
Secure Grants for Bulk Infrastructure Projects	Grant Applications, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Implement Renewable Energy Solutions	Renewable Energy-Powered Borehole Installation Initiative, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Develop Climate-Resilient Sanitation Systems	Climate Resilience Assessments, Adaptation Strategies, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Community Outreach Programs, Public Awareness Campaigns, Stakeholder Consultations	Community Outreach Programs, Public Awareness Campaigns, Stakeholder Consultations
Conduct Source Assessment and Development	Source Development Studies, Source Protection Initiatives, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Conduct Comprehensive Review of Master Plans	Master Plan Review Workshops, Stakeholder Consultations, Plan Integration Sessions, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Develop Integrated Infrastructure Management System	Dashboard Development, System Integration Workshops, Asset Management Training, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Develop Conservation Strategies	Conservation Awareness Campaigns, Demand Management Initiatives, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Develop Comprehensive Maintenance Schedule	Maintenance Plan Rollout, Staff Training Workshops, Monitoring System Implementation, Asset Care Initiatives, Uncompleted Projects Completion
Install Gantry Points for Truck Water Drawings Monitoring	Installation of Gantry Points, Telemetric System Implementation, Bulk Meter Readings, Inlet and Outlet Meter Installation, Water Balancing System Implementation
Conduct Regular Inspections and Monitoring	Inspection Campaigns, Awareness Programs, Enforcement Actions
Address Barriers to Servitude Registration	Servitude Registration, Alternative Delivery Implementation, Portable Water Solutions Implementation
Review and Upgrade Water Treatment Facilities	Water Quality Testing, Effluent Treatment Plant Upgrades, Compliance Audits

## Community Services

- ❖ Municipal Health Services
- ❖ Emergency Management Services
- ❖ Disaster Management Services

### SWOT ANALYSIS

STRENGTH	WEAKNESS
Municipal Health Services rendered in all municipalities	Insufficient human resources
Successfully rendering Atmospheric Emission licensing function	Limited tools of trade
Most core functions performed with limited resources	Lack of personnel progression
Disaster Management Services plan and framework reviewed inhouse	Lack of Disaster Management Center and fire stations
Capacitated fire service personnel	Ephraim Mogale, Mashilabele and Makhuduthamaga not having standardized fire stations structures

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
Acquisition of an integrated incident management system	The hydrants are being misused and blanked off, creating a fire risk for all associated buildings and water loss throughout the district.
Advise the water department to improve the supply in terms of fire requirements.	Departmental infrastructure is poorly maintained as a result the training academy might lose accreditation.
Increase awareness to the communities through the departmental functions	Safety for personnel.
	Imposter MHS practitioners

### STRATEGIES:

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGIES
<b>MUNICIPAL HEALTH SERVICES</b>	
To Have an improved, clean, healthy, and sustainable environment through municipal health services package by June 2025	By creating awareness on air quality in industries and communities
	By collecting water samples for bacteriological and chemical quality analysis in the district
	By evaluating food premises in order to check for compliance in all areas of the district
	By monitoring health care risk waste in all health facilities
	By evaluating premises to check for compliance in all areas of the district
	By creating awareness on diseases as a measure to prevent diseases to community members
	By investigating all notifiable diseases reported by the department of health
	By evaluating premises for vector management

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGIES
	By monitoring compliance of the National Environmental Management Act by industries
	By evaluating disposal of the dead facilities i.e mortuaries and cemeteries for compliance
	By evaluating chemical safety in premises that handle chemicals for compliance
<b>EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT SERVICES</b>	
To protect loss of life, damage to property and environment by June 2025	By effectively rendering Fire and Rescue Services
	By providing Fire Safety
	By effecting Code Application and Enforcement
	By effecting Event Safety Management in fire services
	By providing internal and external emergency management services training
	Continuously advising council on new strategic goals in terms of being proactive as per the fire's services act as amended and other related legislatives.
	Increasing appointment and appropriate placing of community services personnel
	By effectively rendering Fire and Rescue Services
	By providing Fire Safety
<b>DISASTER MANAGEMENT SERVICES</b>	
To have an increased awareness on disaster risk management mitigation measures by June 2024	By establishing Institutional Capacity within the department
	By conducting disaster risk assessment
	By implementing disaster risk reduction
	By performing disaster response and recovery operations
	By acquiring Information Management and communication system
	By conducting public education, awareness, information, and research.
	By acquiring land for establishment of the disaster Management Centre and fire stations.

## SPATIAL RATIONALE

## SWOT ANALYSIS

Strength	Weaknesses
Land availability	Inadequate human resource
Existing political support	Inadequate budget allocation for projects
Existing Intergovernmental relations and structures	Lack of integration of resources and planning
Functional Joint District Municipal Planning Tribunal (JDMPT)	Strategic District Planning coordination
Joint District IGR (PED AND IWS)	

Opportunities	Threats
---------------	---------

Land availability	Unresolved and competing land claims (Land Disputes)
	Difficulty in accessing land for development from some Traditional Leaders
	Increasing land invasion and informal settlements.
Arable land for agricultural activities (farming, solar farms)	Lack of infrastructure within the district
	Lack of requisite technical skills from SMME's and coop members
	Occupation of prime agricultural land of communities
	Revenue outflows out of the district economy
	Environmental degradation
	Unregulated development

### STRATEGIES:

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To ensure sustainable spatial development with integrated human settlements by June 2025	Facilitate land acquisition for development (e.g., District Municipal Offices and Township Establishment)
	Support to Local Municipalities on land use management (Precinct Plans, Implementation of SDFs and SPLUMA, Processing of land development Applications, By-Laws)
To ensure good relations between local government and Traditional authorities	By providing workshops to Traditional authorities on sector plans such as: SDF LED Disaster Plans
To ensure district support to Local Municipalities on land Use Management and application	By getting plans of local municipalities on land use plans / programmes for extensive support
To ensure integrated Development Planning through the IGR, Integrated Planning, M&E Framework	By aligning of process plans of the district and municipality Integrated framework and provincial plans
To ensure that critical sector plans are reviewed or developed	By developing and reviewing of sector plans by relevant departments
To ensure integration of various municipal systems into municipal GIS	By procuring a system suitable for the integration of municipal systems Roll out the integration of municipal systems into GIS

### LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

#### SWOT ANALYSIS

Strengths	Weaknesses
Existing political support	Poor cooperation by internal Departments
Teamwork	Inadequate human resource
Skilled personnel	Lack of technical skills on Tourism



Strengths	Weaknesses
Improved Policy implementation	Inadequate budget allocation for projects
	Lack of integration of resources (silo planning)

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
Land availability	Lack of skills across the district (communities) due to high illiteracy levels.
Good soils, climatic conditions for farming and solar energy harvesting	Increasing land invasion on prime agricultural land
Untapped Cultural, Heritage and tourism wealth	Illegal small-scale mining within the district.
Large reserves in Mineral Resources	Occupation of prime agricultural land of communities
Economic opportunities (Beneficiation in mining and agro processing)	Revenue outflows out of the district economy
	Environmental degradation

### STRATEGIES:

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To promote temporary job creation opportunities	By facilitating EPWP implementation in the district and additional EPWP programmes for the diversification of the IG Grant received (own funding)
To enhance the Tourism attraction within the district.	By developing tourism infrastructure and related services
To enhance Tourism development within the district	By reinforcing the relationship with SDTA and other Tourism Agencies.
To enhance growth of cotton industry in the district	By supporting Farmers with production infrastructure, equipment, and inputs
To enhance market access and development of the local poultry industry	By appointing a professional service provider to conduct a feasibility study on poultry abattoir
To enhance market access	By appointing a professional service provider to conduct a feasibility study on fresh produce market
To capacitate and empower emerging SMMEs and Cooperatives	By organising workshops and training programmes for emerging SMMEs and Cooperatives
To promote job creation and sustenance of SMMEs and Cooperatives	By supporting SMMEs and Cooperatives with production infrastructure, equipment and inputs
To promote market access	By creating a market facility for Arts and Craft SMMEs and Cooperatives
To ensure that sector plans are up to date and inline to current economic development challenges	By reviewing the Tourism Strategy, SDF, LED Strategy
	By reviewing SMMEs and cooperative development strategy
To ensure integration of economic development plans	By facilitating economic development fora

## SEKHUKHUNE DEVELOPMENT AGENCY

### SWOT ANALYSIS

STRENGTH	WEAKNESS
Clear mandate of the Agency	Dependency on the shareholder for sustainability of the Agency.
New readily Committed Board and hardworking staff.	Lack of revenue to implement high impact projects
Support from District Municipality in the form of an unconditional grant.	Lack of systems/reliance on municipal ICT and finance systems
Clear and implementable business plan	Lack of visibility- No office space, No website

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
Abundance of Land and Rich Mineral Resources.	Incapacity to generate revenue.
Good climatic conditions for farming and energy harvesting	Lack of strategy on beneficiation in the Mining and Agriculture industries
Sekhukhune has untapped Culture and Heritage.	Silo planning and duplication
Special Economic Zone (SEZ) identified (Tubatse).	Lack of land Use Management strategy
Legislated platform to execute access to private and public funding.	High level of unemployment inequality and poverty
Economic opportunities (Beneficiation in mining and Agri, development of smelters, tourism.	Neglect and lack of exposure of our culture and heritage.
	Lack of both financial and non-financial support.

### STRATEGIES

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY
To address water cuts and ensure consistent water supply	Appointment of SDA as an implementing Agent for the project to provide seamless backup power during the grid failures, protecting against deterioration and failures due to sudden or repeated power cuts.
	The municipality to purchase the energy storage units outright, while the solar PV will be provided and managed by the SDA partnership on Power Purchase Agreement (PPA) basis
To ensure involvement of SDA Catalytic on Projects within the district	Conclude MOU with FTIIP (TORs underway) and FTLM on Smart City Development and Implementation
	Proactive participation and facilitation of the catalytic projects
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To build investor and stakeholder relations in the five key cluster of sectors prioritised for growing the Sekhukhune District's economy.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Five-day in-person sector roadshow structured to encompass interactive workshops, insightful panels, private</li> </ul>

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rally captains of industry, key role players, experts, and institutional investors to shape the common vision, exchange opportunities and</li> <li>• Collectively set the developmental agenda for Sekhukhune District.</li> <li>• to increase collaborative communication and understanding between investors, role players and stakeholders in the district, to avoid competition and hostile approach in the delivery of high impact economic development projects to harvest database of prospective partners and prioritise MOUs and MOAs to be activated in 2024/2025</li> </ul>	<p>round table discussions and industry focused networking sessions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Feature speakers from leading companies, emerging start-ups, and enthusiasts to discuss the regional growth strategies.</li> </ul>
<p>To ensure implementation of RMP identified projects</p>	<p>By formulation of a business model to ensure implementation of RMP identified projects</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Structure –SDA/DWS/FTLM/EMLM &amp; the two community trusts</li> <li>- Public Participation Process</li> <li>- RFP – Control access/ Refurbishment of the 12 Houses for Tourism commercial purposes, Wash Bay – to guard against Hyacinthe from Boats (SCM Process in place)</li> </ul>
<p>To initiate, promote and facilitate tourism related activities and businesses within the district</p>	<p>By ensuring promotion of tourism in the district</p>
<p>To uplift small-scale farmers in the region</p>	<p>Market Linkages. Market Information Infrastructure and Resources – In partnership with Agriseta and Funding Inst</p> <p>Storage Facilities Processing Facilities Training and Capacity Building</p>
<p>To ensure adequate production of cotton in the district</p>	<p>By Support local famers with production inputs and training</p>
<p>To ensure communities are equipped and capacitated to take advantage of the economic development opportunities</p>	<p>Skills development and intervention informed by the Skills Audit conducted by the FT SEZ.</p>

## INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND ORGANISATIONAL TRANSFORMATION

### SWOT Analysis

STRENGTH	WEAKNESSES
Sound management and control systems in place	Inadequate internal communications
Healthy relationship with internal departments	Ineffective implementation of Service standards
Dedicated team and qualified staff	Inadequate compliance to SDM policies
Good relationship with organized labour	Shortage of staff
Strengthened IGR Structures for DDM/IDP	Lack of integration of resources (silo planning)

OPPORTUNITY	THREAT
Good working relationship with other spheres of government;	Sporadic violent protests;
Employee's wellness programmes improves healthy living.	Alcohol, drugs, women and children abuse;
Labour peace brought by collective agreements.	Increasing levels of poverty, unemployment and inequality.
	Failure to integrate transferred staff
	Low staff morale level

### STRATEGIES:

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To develop facility management policy and maintenance plan by June 2025	By keeping and managing records of the Municipality
To develop the Service Level Agreements with Local Municipalities for facilities we use by June 2025	By monitoring SLA's
To upgrade and implement electronic filing system effectively by June 2025	By managing lease agreements
To review the Fleet Management Policy	By managing fleet and facilities
To ensure effective fuel management system by June 2025	
Implementation of medical surveillance programme and stress and trauma management by June 2025	By encouraging employees to participate in sport codes
To ensure compliance to Health and Safety Act by June 2025	By conducting counselling to employees
To maintain employee's well-being, wellness and productivity by June 2024	By conducting debriefing services
	By inspecting workplaces and conducting project audits for compliance with OHS Act
	By training Health and Safety representatives
	By conducting medical surveillance programme and stress and trauma management programme
To implement equal-work equal-pay principle	By assessing current organizational structure.
To fill the funded vacant positions	By facilitation of development of job descriptions and evaluations.
To fully integrate the transferred staff	Cascading PMS to level 2 to 14

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To facilitate training, development and learning through WSP by June 2025	By monitoring implementation of HR policies.
To cascade the Individual PMS up to level 8 by June 2025	By conducting skills audit
To align and implement the staff establishment regulation by June 2025	By implementing approved WSP.
To ensure effective change management, job grading and proper job descriptions by June 2025	By implementing recruitment selection and appointment policy.
To develop, design and review policies by June 2025	By eliminate workplace discrimination
To develop a well-designed Organisational Structure by June 2025	
To implement Employment Equity by June 2025	
To ensure effective functionality of IGR structures between the district and the local municipalities by June 2025	
To promote discipline and labour peace and ensure effective functionality of the LLF by June 2025	By negotiating in good faith, attain mutual agreement
To conduct workshops on consequence management policy and other implement it by June 2025	By implementing strike, picket and protest management policy
To ensure the development and distribution of quarterly journals by June 2025	By facilitating LLF meetings, Terms of reference etc
To ensure proper administration of grievances, arbitration cases and conflict management at workplace by June 2025	By conducting workshops on labour related matters
	By collecting info on employee behaviour.
To ensure effective and efficient digital connectivity to the remote offices by June 2025	By liaising with service providers for connectivity and monitoring
To finalise the upgrading of the VIP system to Sage 300 and ensure effective implementation by June 2025	By conducting needs analysis for consumables
To ensure effective functionality of the ICT committees by June 2025	By monitoring SLA`s
To ensure management of service providers and skills transfer by June 2025	By monitoring expiry dates of licenses
To ensure effective management of ICT incidents by June 2025	
To develop the ICT master plan	
To run backups of VIP and Solar System	
To ensure that ICT maintenance support system and software assessment system are available and implemented by June 2025	
Website maintenance and support	
Maintenance and support of CCTV and security systems	
To ensure integrated development planning by June 2025	By assessing and reviewing the IDP processes of the previous financial year to improve them

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
	Through a review of legally compliant Integrated Development Planning (IDP)
	By facilitating the IDP Rep Forum

## FINANCIAL VIABILITY

### SWOT ANALYSIS

STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
Ability to execute most core departmental functions independently	Reliance on consultants in performing some of the core functions
Submissions of accurate compliance reports on time	General lack of the required accounting skill and expertise
Tabling and adoption of fully funded municipal budgets	mSCOA financial system not fully functional
Preparation of statutory reports internally	Lack internal capacity programs
Well established relations with our external stakeholders (National Treasury, Coghsta & AGSA)	Slow implementation of the some resolutions by the external stakeholders
Ability to address most the historical audit paragraphs	Lack of proper document management

Opportunities	Threats
Improved revenue collection through the implementation of the credit control and debt management policy	Loss of potential revenue due to culture of non-payment.
Access to full scale advisory services by the external stakeholders (National Treasury, Coghsta, Audit Committee & AGSA)	Stagnant unfavourable audit opinions.
Improved audit opinions through the design and implementation of the audit action plan.	Stagnant and slow moving service delivery projects, unstable administrative processes.
Sustained skills in financial management	Loss of skilled personnel due to non-competitive salary packages

### STRATEGIES:

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY
Preparation and adoption of credible fully funded municipal budgets.	Training of officials transacting on Solar and other in-year reporting and budget monitoring processes.

OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY
To provide sound financial management	Review & implementation of SoP's in Reporting, Budget, Supply Chain, Revenue & Expenditure Management
	Budget allocation for BTO officials to further their education on matters of compliance with the MFMA and GRAP and to also further their studies where possible within the prescribed time frames
	Upgrading of the current financial system to ensure full compliance with the mSCOA requirements
	Reconcile the LNW accounts and determine the value of the overbilling on our account. Resolve the settlement discount matter with LNW
	Implement the flat rate on the identified areas of potential revenue collection
	Enforcing the by-law on illegal connections by residents for private businesses. Legalize the connections in areas where community members are disconnecting illegally.
	Reduction of Unauthorised, Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure.
	Reduction strategy on the use of consultants.
	Fill the critical vacant positions with skilled personnel.
	Cleansing of the billing data and identify potential areas of revenue collection.
Improve on the controls within our financial and banking systems.	
To prepare manual GRAP compliant Fixed Asset Register	Centralization of the asset management function.

## GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

### SWOT Analysis

STRENGTH	WEAKNESSES
Established functional units	Lack of in-house technical Specialist such as ICT Audit, Forensic etc.
High quality objective and independent audit reports which apply an appropriate level of professional judgement based on facts and evidence	Limited use of data analytics and data mining (Teammate tools)

<b>STRENGTH</b>	<b>WEAKNESSES</b>
Approved Policies (IA, AC Charter)	Less risk averse workforce
Established Risk Management unit (i.e. Approved RM Policy, RM Framework, RM implementation plan)	Risk Management does not form an integral part Supply Chain Management processes tool
Functional Council Committees	Lack of automated contract management system
Good relations among political parties	Lack of Committee Rooms
Good Council management tool, e.g. Rules of order, Council calendar	Lack of adequate tools of trade
Sound and good working relationship with stakeholders (Opportunity)	Lack of training for support staff in report writing
Good relations Stakeholders	Inadequate security safeguards
Partake actively in the IGR platforms for knowledge sharing	Lack of Monitoring and implementation of plans
Cooperation with traditional leadership	Ineffective implementation of service standards
Good relations among political parties	Conflict of government programmes
Good Council management tool, e.g. Rules of order, Council calendar	
Good relations among political parties	

<b>OPPORTUNITIES</b>	<b>THREATS</b>
Strong potential for internship programmes and student financial assistance	HIV/AIDS
Good working relationship with other spheres of government	Sporadic marches by concern groups
Enhanced co-operation with traditional leadership and other stakeholders	Community protest disrupting council activities
Maximize training and development opportunities	High unemployment, poverty and inequality
Effective partake actively in the IGR platforms	High Substance and drugs abuse
	Gender Based Violence
	Emerging and changing risks increase skill gaps
	Change in leadership/reorganizations
	Increasing indigent
	Load shedding



**STRATEGIES:**

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To ensure improved internal controls and clean governance in the municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By developing Three Year Internal audit rolling plan (-2024/2025 – 2026/2027) and One Year Internal Audit (2024/2025 – 2025/2026)</li> <li>• By conducting Regularity audits, ICT audits and adhoc management request audits</li> <li>• By monitoring implementation of Auditor General action plan and coordinate their activities</li> <li>• By monitoring implementation of Internal Audit Implementation plan</li> <li>• By conducting Performance Audit</li> <li>• By coordinating the Audit and Performance Committee activities</li> <li>• By conducting quality assurance review</li> <li>• By conducting Adhocs assignment for governance structures</li> </ul>
To Improve the implementation of the IDP.	<p><b>By facilitating successful:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilitate the creation of a performance culture and improve service delivery through the successful implementation of PMS.</li> <li>• Facilitate quarterly Performance Makgotla.</li> <li>• Develop and implement 2024/2025 Institutional SDBIP by June 2025</li> <li>• Compiling 2023/2024 Annual Report by January 2025</li> <li>• Develop 2024/2025 Performance Agreements for Senior Managers</li> <li>• Reviewing and implement annual PMS Policy and Framework</li> <li>• Coordinating quarterly Back to Basics Reports</li> </ul>
To monitor and evaluate performance of senior managers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilitating midterm and annual performance assessments for senior managers and managers</li> <li>• Monitor and coordinate municipal performance.</li> </ul>

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
Providing legal advice to the municipality	<p><b>By facilitating successful:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Handling legal disputes involving the municipality</li> <li>• Managing case files and Subscribe to a case law database.</li> <li>• Developing template on disputed project invoices</li> <li>• Ensure development of Credible Litigation Register for institution.</li> <li>• Develop litigation guidelines.</li> <li>• Develop legal services delivery charter.</li> </ul>
To ensure that service level agreements are in place and monitored	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drafting and reviewing contracts</li> <li>• Implementing contract management and monitor contract register</li> <li>• Reviewing templates on different categories of contracts</li> <li>• Review all contracts that under implementation.</li> <li>• Develop contract management policy</li> </ul>
To assess, identify, and manage risks and uncertainty to safeguards assets, enhance productivity, and build resilience into the operations	<p><b>By facilitating successful:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Covering the Risk universe to assist the municipality to achieve its objectives. (Assurance Services)</li> <li>• Develop Risk Management implementation plan.</li> <li>• Conducting process assessment and identifying related risks</li> <li>• Implementation and maintenance Business Continuity Management</li> <li>• Monitoring and reviewing of monthly risk registers.</li> <li>• Monitoring compliance with legislation and policies</li> <li>• Coordinate quarterly Risk management committee meetings.</li> <li>• Implement security management plan and oversee security operations.</li> <li>• The development of combined assurance plan.</li> <li>• Manage anti-fraud and corruption.</li> <li>• Develop Supply Chain Management Processes Risk Management Monitoring Tool.</li> </ul>

OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
To ensure good governance, public and effective oversight.	<p><b>By facilitating successful:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilitate all ordinary and special Council and committee meetings,</li> <li>• Facilitate project oversight visits.</li> <li>• Facilitate public hearing and public participation.</li> <li>• Facilitate legislative oversight structures in terms of the IGR Framework.</li> </ul>
To ensure accountability and report back to the communities	<p><b>By facilitating successful:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide support to Mayoral Committee</li> <li>• To facilitate stakeholder engagement, mayoral outreaches, and strategic events.</li> <li>• Co-ordinate quarterly special mayoral projects</li> <li>• Inculcating the culture of Batho Pele and friendly customer frontline services</li> <li>• Reviewing the Communication Strategy</li> <li>• Coordinate quarterly District Aids council programme.</li> <li>• Providing platform to market and expose the municipality brand to internal and external stakeholders</li> <li>• To identify, review and evaluate the needs of the municipality in terms of section 56 2A of Municipal Structures Act.</li> <li>• Facilitate the establishment of section 80 committees.</li> </ul>

# **CHAPTER 4:**

# **PROJECTS**

# **PHASE**

#### 4. PROJECTS: 2024/2025 – 2026/2027 IDP/BUDGET REVIEW

##### 4.1. SEKHUKHUNE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY PROJECTS

##### 4.1.1. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

##### BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&amp;M)</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 3: To provide 90% of sustainable and reliable basic water and sanitation services to communities by June 2027</b>									
To improve water service provisioning by June 2025	Sanitation incidents	800 registered sanitation incidents resolved within 14 days	90% registered sanitation incidents resolved within 14 days	Percentage of registered sanitation incidents resolved within 14 days	90% registered sanitation incidents resolved within 14 days	R50 457 246.90	R52 727 823.00	R55 100 575.10	SDM
	Water incidents	4500 registered water incidents resolved within 14 days	80% of registered water incidents resolved within 14 days	Percentage of registered water incidents resolved within 14 days	80% of registered water incidents resolved within 14 days				
	Bulk Water Purchases	2515,5Ml of water purchased	2515,5Ml of water purchased	Number of Ml water purchased	2515,5Ml of water purchased	R121 062 176.22	R187 209 974.15	R197 724 422.99	SDM
	Borehole Development	20 boreholes developed	20 boreholes developed	Number of boreholes developed	81 boreholes developed	R45 000 000.00	R13 000 000.00	R9 000 000.00	SDM
	Provision of water through water tankers	315 360 kl of water provided	243 000 kl of water provided	Number of Kilolitres of water	243 000 kl of water provided	R1 049 000.00	R1 096 205.00	R1 145 534.23	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
		through water tankers	through water tankers	provided through water tankers	through water tankers				
<b>BULK OPERATIONS</b>									
To improve water service provisioning by June 2027	Percentage of reported electromechanical incidents.	Aging Infrastructure	Audited Fixed Asset Register	Percentage of reported electromechanical incidents.	90% of reported electromechanical incidents.	R40 700 000.00	R15 6750 00.00	R16 380 375.00	SDM
To improve water service provisioning by June 2027	Refurbishment of Vergelegen water treatment works	Dilapidated WTW	Dilapidated WTW	Number of WTW (Vergelegen) refurbished	1 WTW (Vergelegen) refurbished	R4 000 000.00	R2 000 000.00	R2 000 000.00	SDM
	Refurbishment of Masemola water treatment works	Dilapidated WTW	Dilapidated WTW	Number of WTW (Masemola) refurbished	1 WTW (Masemola) refurbished	R3 000 000.00	R1 000 000.00	R1 000 000.00	SDM
	Refurbishment of WWTW's (Dennilton, Burgersfort, Penge WWTW's, Phooko Booster Pump Station, Leeufontein Oxidation Pond)	Dilapidated Infrastructure	Refurbishment of Groblersdal & Praktiseer WTW's	Number of WWTW's refurbished (Dennilton, Burgersfort, Penge WWTW's, Phooko Booster Pump Station, Leeufontein Oxidation Pond)	5 WWTW's refurbished (Dennilton, Burgersfort, Penge WWTW's, Phooko Booster Pump Station, Leeufontein Oxidation Pond)	R45 000 000.00	R52 000 000.00	R55 000 000.00	MIG O&M
To improve water service	CRR	Dilapidated Components	NEW – Audited AR	Percentage of dilapidated	5% of dilapidated	R48 400 000.00	R44 000 000.00	R43 165 000.00	Own Funding

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
provisioning by June 2027				components replaced	components replaced				
<b>ELECTROMECHANICAL</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To provide 90% of sustainable and reliable basic water and sanitation services to communities by June 2027</b>									
To Improve Infrastructure Reliability and Sustainability by June 2027	Powered Borehole Installation Initiative	Electrification of infrastructure	New	Number of Energised/renewable energy power boreholes	20 Energised/renewable energy power boreholes	R30 000 000.00	R53 150 000.00	R76 441 750.00	Own Funding
To improve water service provisioning by June 2027	Electricity Usage	None	261 399,312 KWH of electricity used	Number of KWH electricity used.	401 703,060 of KWH electricity used	R70 000 000.00	R73 150 000.00	R76 441 750.00	Own funding
<b>REGULATIONS AND GOVERNANCE</b>									
<b>Strategic Objective 1: To comply with regulations and legislations by June 2027</b>									
Complying with regulations by June 2027	Developing and reviewing water related policies	Outdated water policy and new policies	Water and Sanitation policy	Number of policies to be reviewed and developed	01 policy reviewed and 02 developed	R2 238 566.00	R2 339 301.47	R2 444 570.04	SDM
	Review Water and Sanitation By-Law	Outdated By-Law	Outdated Water and Sanitation By-Law	Number of By-Law reviewed	01 Water and Sanitation to be reviewed				
	Awareness Campaigns	New Project	Water & Sanitation By-Law	Number of Awareness Campaigns conducted	08 Awareness Campaigns conducted	R629 924.50	R658 271.10	R687 893.30	SDM
	Water Use License	Treatment Works without Water Use Licences	05 Water Use Licences in place	Number of Water Use Licenses applied	03 Water Use Licenses applied				SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>Strategic Objective 2: To ensure that water and sanitation infrastructure are protected by June 2027</b>									
Registering water and sanitation infrastructure by 2027	Registrations of Servitudes	Water and sanitation infrastructure without servitude	Water and sanitation Infrastructure	Number of Servitudes Registered	02 Servitudes Registered	R3 000 000.00	R3 135 000.00	R3 276 075.00	SDM
<b>MUNICIPAL INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT(MIG)</b>									
<b>Strategic Objective 3: Ensure Access to Clean and Safe Water and Sanitation for All</b>									
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Lebalelo South connector pipes and reticulation	10683 HH to be served	Mooihoek Water Treatment Works	Number of steel tanks	3 Steel tank erected	R5 698 635.70	R0.00	R0.00	MIG
	Upgrading of De Hoop WTW	93 764 HH to be served	2 sludge dams and 1,3km of chemical building constructed.	Number of sludge dams and km of chemical building constructed.	Number of sludge dams and km of chemical building constructed	R72 556 187,93	R30 000 000.00	R0.00	MIG
	Upgrading of Groblersdal – Luckau Bulk Water Scheme Phase 1	21867 HH to be served	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Number of Km for bulk pipeline constructed.	11 Km of bulk pipeline constructed.	150 064 320,06	10 000 000	R0.00	MIG
	Upgrading of Groblersdal – Luckau Bulk Water Scheme Phase 2	21867 HH to be served	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Number of Km for bulk pipeline constructed	6 Km of bulk pipeline constructed.	100 000 000,00	24 319 158,82	R0.00	MIG



STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Upgrading of Groblersdal – Luckau Bulk Water Scheme Phase 2	21867 HH to be served	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Percentage reservoirs and booster pump station constructed.	50% of concrete reservoir and booster pump station constructed			R0.00	MIG
	Upgrading of Groblersdal – Luckau Bulk Water Scheme Phase 3	21867 HH to be served	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Kilometre of pipeline constructed, and number of reservoirs constructed.	Not yet registered	Not yet registered	R92 614 486.37	R34 916 846.80	MIG
	Upgrading of Groblersdal – Luckau Bulk Water Scheme Phase 4	21867 HH to be served	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Kilometre of pipeline constructed, and number of reservoirs constructed.	Not yet registered	Not yet registered	R76 000 000.00	R11 000 000.00	MIG
	Moutse East and West Water Reticulation phase 1	22886 HH to be served	21 Km of reticulation pipeline constructed	Km of reticulation and pipeline constructed	348.44km of reticulation, 13.7km internal bulk and 4* elevated steel tank	R66 989 267.40	R10 000 000.00	R0.00	MIG
	Moutse East and West Water Reticulation phase 2	22886HH to be served	"1 Detailed Designs Completed for Water reticulation "	km of reticulation pipeline constructed, km of bulk pipeline constructed	Procurement processes, 50km of reticulation, 5 km of internal bulk pipeline	R20 000 000.00	R98 155 242.72	R0.00	MIG
	To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Moutse East and West Water	Refurbish the Storage and gravitational pipeline, 369	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Not yet registered	Not yet registered	R0.00	R30 576 256.36	R0.00

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
	Reticulation phase 3	486m of reticulation, 6662 house connection of various villages							
	Moutse East and West Water Reticulation phase 4	Refurbish the Storage and gravitational pipeline, 613939 m of reticulation, 5045 house connection of various villages	Groblersdal 12MI Water Treatment Works	Not yet registered	Not yet registered	R0.00	R43 674 236,29	R130 357 140.85	MIG
	Mampuru Bulk Water Scheme	9015 HH to be served	"100% Preliminary Designs Completed "	100% Preliminary Designs completed	Finalize designs	R43 280 717.18	R80 970 787.09	R17 297 040.93	MIG
	Olifantspoort South Regional Water Supply Phase 6	21775 HH to be served	Olifantspoort South Regional Water Treatment Works	Number of pipelines hydraulically tested and commissioned. Number of self-supportive borehole solar installation	1 x pipeline hydraulically tested and commissioned . 8 x self-supportive borehole solar installations	R17 538 121.73	R0.00	R0.00	MIG
	GaMaphoha Command Reservoir	5774 HH to be served	3 kilometres of water pipeline constructed	Number of manholes, cathodic protection and connections completed.	Completion of manholes, cathodic protection and connections.	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	MIG

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
					Testing and commissioning.				
	Nkadimeng regional water supply extension 3	16980 HH to be served	Nkadimeng dam and water treatment works	Kilometre of pipeline constructed, and number of reservoirs constructed, and the number of boreholes drilled and equipped	Approval of technical report and project registration with MIG	R0.00	R33 000 000.00	R0.00	MIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Mashamothane & Mashamothane Ext water supply	4485 HH to be served	Mooihoek water treatment works	Kilometre of pipeline constructed	Not yet registered	R0.00	R0.00	R82 870 410.49	MIG
	Lebalelo Central Subscheme 1A	7930 HH to be served	Existing boreholes	Kilometre of pipeline constructed	Not yet registered	R0.00	R0.00	R83 652 936.99	MIG
	Lebalelo Central Subscheme 2A	12736 HH to be served	Existing boreholes	Kilometre of pipeline constructed	Not yet registered	R0.00	R0.00	R77 652 936.99	MIG
	Lebalelo Central Subscheme 3A	3117 HH to be served	Existing boreholes	Kilometre of pipeline constructed	Not yet registered	R0.00	R0.00	R88 652 936.99	MIG
<b>RRAMS</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To develop 80% of Rural Roads Asset Management System for the District Municipality by June 2027</b>									

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
Develop Road Asset Management Plan	Development of Rural Roads Asset Management System	100000 km of road network to be assessed	Desk top studies and the first rounds of Visual Conditions Assessments	Number of kilometres of Roads assessed.	3 800 km of kilometres of Roads assessed	R2 571 0 00.00	R2 686 000.00	R2 809 000.00	Nation al Departm ent of Transpo rt/ RRAM S
<b>RBIG</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027</b>									
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Construction of Mooihoek bulk water supply Phase G1.1	500 households without access to water services	1 X 5 Ml concrete reservoir completed Phase 4BA	Number of km of bulk pipeline and package plant type clarifier constructed	0.2 Kilometres of bulk water supply pipeline and 1 package plant type clarifier constructed	R25 072 000.00	R10 000 000.00	R0.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Construction of Mooihoek Reservoirs phase 4H1	500 households without access to water services	12Ml/day Mooihoek Water Treatment Works	Planning and design including documentation for construction of concrete reservoir	Planning and design including documentation for construction of concrete reservoir	R0.00	R15 000 000.00	R10 000 000.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Construction of Mooihoek Reservoirs phase 4H2	500 households without access to water services	12Ml/day Mooihoek Water Treatment Works	Planning and design including documentation for construction of concrete reservoir	Planning and design including documentation for construction of concrete reservoir	R0.00	R15 000 000.00	R10 000 000.00	RBIG

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Nebo BWS Commission Malekana to Jane Furse Pipeline	7200 households without access to yard connection	Nebo Phase1A completed and not commissioned	Conditional assessment, prepare scope of work, remedial work, testing and commissioning, number of ML command reservoir tested	Conditional assessment, prepare scope of work, remedial work, testing and commissioning, 25 ML command reservoir tested	R32 169 000,00	R65 000 000,00	R30 000 000.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Nebo BWS Makgeru to Schoornoord BWS	10 000 households without access to water services through yard connections	23 Km of Schoornoord bulk water supply pipeline in Makgeru. 10ML Command Concrete Reservoir in Schoornoord constructed	Number of km of bulk pipeline constructed.	1km of bulk pipeline constructed.	R27 080 000,00	R0.00	R0.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Nebo BWS Jane Furse to Lobethal Bulk Water Supply	7234 households without access to water services through yard connections	18km's of bulk water supply pipeline phase two from Jane Furse to Lobethal completed	Number of km's of bulk water supply pipeline assessed	18km km's of bulk water supply pipeline assessed	R0.00	R15 000 000,00	R20 000 000.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Nebo BWS Carbonatites/ Spitskop	101489 households without access to water services	25 km gravitational bulk water pipeline and pump station	Implementation readiness study and feasibility	Implementation readiness study and feasibility	R0.00	R0.00	R10 000 000.00	RBIG

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Moutse BWS Project (7 to 12)	4200 households without access to yard connection	30 Kilometres of bulk water supply pipeline constructed and tested	Number of Kilometres of bulk water supply pipeline installed and tested	10 Kilometres of bulk water supply pipeline constructed and tested	R2 370 000,00	R0.00	R0.00	RBIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Moutse BWS Project 13 & 14	2200 households without access to yard connection	1 WTW in Groblersdal extended in Project 1 and 1 pump station constructed in Project 6	Number of mechanical and Electrical (M & E) components installed for the extensions to the Groblersdal Water Treatment Works and pump station.	2 mechanical and Electrical (M & E) components installed for the extensions to the Groblersdal Water Treatment Works and pump station. Civil works for 1 clarifier and 1 filter. Rebuilding of walls.	R38 309 000,00	R0.00	R0.00	RBIG
<b>WSIG schedule 6B</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027</b>									
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Maebe Water Intervention Project – Phase V	988 households without access to reliable water services	4 kilometres of water pipeline and 2 boreholes completed	Number of Reverse Osmosis Plant and Wastage Line to specified discharge point constructed	1 Reverse Osmosis Plant and Wastage Line to specified discharge point	R5 710 250,12	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
					constructed				
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Phokwane/Brooklyn Water Supply	483 households without access to water services	Business Plan	Number of boreholes, pipeline and elevated steel tank constructed	1 borehole, 2.4 km pipeline and 80kl elevated steel tank constructed	R3 971 000,00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Commissioning of Moutse bulk pipeline	2200 households without access to water services	Moutse bulk pipeline	Conditions assessment report and commissioning of bulk pipeline	Condition assessment report and Commissioning of bulk pipeline	R14 624 003,37	R50 000 000,00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Enkosini Water Supply Project	668 households without access to water services	Refurbishment of 1 Package Plant	Number of km of reticulation network constructed and number water sources upgraded	5.9 km of reticulation network constructed, and one water sources upgraded	R4 623 114.10	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Ga-Marishane Village water supply	1399 households without access to water services	1.1ML Reservoir, Water Treatment Plant and 3.6-kilometers bulk pipeline	Number of boreholes equipped, and km of pipeline constructed	2 Boreholes equipped and 3km pipeline constructed	R3 736 405.30	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Tukakgomo Water Intervention Phase V	486 households without access to water services	3.5 km of pipeline and water abstraction point	Kilometre of pipeline constructed, and water metres installed	3km of pipeline extension, installation of 486 water meters and repairing of rising main	R3 340 500.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Laersdrift Water Supply	810 households without access to water services	Feasibility studies and Business Plan	KM of reticulation network, rising main and kl of storage tanks	4.5km of reticulation network, 2.6km of rising main and 180kl of storage tank.	R10 051 768.75 R1 000 000.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG SDM
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Shakung water supply (work package 2)	97 296 households without access to water services	Dilapidated and collapsed water service infrastructure	Number of Boreholes equipped and number of km of pipeline constructed and Number water. metres installed	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R25 000 000.00	WSIG
Implementing scope through tender contracting strategy	Mapodile WC&DM	3125 households without access to water services	Feasibility studies and Business Plan	Number of km of reticulation network completed and number of water meter installed.	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
Implementing scope through tender contracting strategy	Vlakfontein Water Supply	1713 households without access to water services	Feasibility studies and Business Plan	Number of reticulation network constructed.	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
Implementing scope through tender contracting strategy	Tshikanosi Water Supply	184 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of Boreholes equipped; Kilometre of pipeline constructed, and water metres installed	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG



STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
Implementing scope through tender contracting strategy	Sephaku water supply	1670 households without access to water services	Dilapidated and collapsed water service infrastructure	Number of Boreholes equipped and number of km of pipeline constructed and Number water metres installed	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
Implementing scope through tender contracting strategy	Legolaneng Water Supply	1304 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of Boreholes equipped; Kilometres of pipeline constructed, and number of water metres installed	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R0,00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2028	Eenzaam water supply (works package 1)	750 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of boreholes equipped; Kilometres of pipeline constructed, and number of water metres installed	2 Boreholes equipped, 6km pipeline constructed and 150 water metres installed	R17 473 958.36	R20 000 000,00	R10 000 000.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2028	Eenzaam water supply (works package 2)	750 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of boreholes equipped; Kilometres of pipeline constructed, and number of water metres installed	Developing Business plan and Technical Report	R0.00	R0.00	R38 220 000.00	WSIG

**WSIG schedule 5B**

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>Strategic objective 1: To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027</b>									
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Kgotlopong water intervention (work package 1)	650 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of boreholes equipped, km of pipelines constructed, and number of water metres installed	Borehole equipped, 24 km pipeline constructed. and 499. water metres installed, RO water purification plant installed	R43 963 000,00	R0.00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Kgotlopong water intervention (work package 2)	650 households without access to water services	Dilapidated water service infrastructure	Number of boreholes equipped, km of pipelines constructed, and number of water metres installed	To be allocated in the outer year 2026-2027	R0,00	R0.00	R20 022 000.00	WSIG
To reduce sanitation backlog with 90% by June 2027	Legolaneng VIDP Rural Sanitation projects phase 2	1239 households without access to Sanitation units	440 VIDP constructed	Number of VIDP sanitation units constructed	Finalise the Business plans and technical reports	R0.00	R30 000 000.00	R0.00	WSIG
To reduce water services backlog with 90% by June 2027	Shakung water supply (works package 1)	97 296 households without access to water services	Dilapidated and collapsed water service infrastructure	Number of Boreholes equipped and number of km of pipeline constructed and Number water. metres installed	Finalise the Business plans and technical reports	R0.00	R18 000 000,00	R32 000 000.00	WSIG

**MUNICIPAL HEALTH SERVICES, DISASTER AND EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT**

<b>STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)</b>	<b>PROJECT</b>	<b>BACKLOG</b>	<b>BASELINE 2023/2024</b>	<b>INDICATORS</b>	<b>ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025</b>	<b>BUDGET 2024/2025</b>	<b>BUDGET 2025-2026</b>	<b>BUDGET 2026-2027</b>	<b>FUND ER/ FUND NAME</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL HEALTH SERVICES</b>									
<b>Municipal Health Services Strategic objective 1: To Have an improved, clean, healthy and sustainable environment through municipal health services package by June 2027</b>									
By conducting awareness campaigns on Environmental Pollution Prevention	Environmental Pollution Prevention	None	13 Awareness Campaigns on Air Quality conducted	Number of awareness Campaigns on Air Quality conducted	36 Awareness Campaigns on Air Quality conducted	R464 373.00	R487 591.65	R511 970.58	SDM
By conducting awareness campaigns on Environmental Pollution Prevention	Environmental Pollution Prevention	None	New Project	Number of enforcement and compliance inspection conducted	24 enforcement and compliance inspection conducted	R377 646.15	R396 528.45	R416 354. 87	SDM
By conducting food premises evaluation	Food Safety control	None	755 Food Premises evaluated	Number of Food Premises evaluated	1500 Food Premises evaluated	R677 860.05	R711 753.05	R747 340. 70	SDM
By assessing management of health care risk waste at health care facilities	Waste Management	None	51 Health care risk waste monitored	Number of landfill sites inspections conducted	24 landfill sites inspections conducted	R239 403.15	R251 373.30	R263 941. 96	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUND ER/ FUND NAME
By conducting health surveillance at all public premises.	Health Surveillance of premises	None	757 premises evaluated	1500 health surveillance at public premises evaluated	1500 health surveillance at public premises evaluated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By conducting awareness campaigns to prevent communicable diseases	Surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases	None	51 awareness campaigns on Communicable diseases held	Number of awareness campaigns on Communicable diseases conducted	100 awareness campaigns on Communicable diseases conducted	R240 460.05	R252 583.07	R265 207. 22	SDM
By monitoring vector control maintenance on premises.	Vector Control	None	756 inspections on Vector Control on premises conducted	1500 inspections on Vector Control on premises conducted	1500 inspections on Vector Control on premises conducted	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By evaluating disposal of the dead facilities.	Disposal of the dead	None	50 evaluations on Disposal of the Dead facilities conducted	100 inspections on Disposal of the Dead facilities conducted	100 inspections on Disposal of the Dead facilities conducted	R220 919.40	R231 302.61	R240 101. 45	SDM
By evaluating premises to assess chemical safety.	Chemical safety	None	154 evaluations on safety to chemical handling premises conducted	300 evaluations on safety to chemical handling	300 evaluations on safety to chemical handling	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUND ER/ FUND NAME
				premises conducted	premises conducted				
By responding to all reported emergency incidents	Fire and Rescue Operations	None	100% of (200) reported emergency incidents attended	Percentage of reported emergency incidents attended	100% reported emergency incidents attended	R243 920.25	R256 116.26	R269 582. 07	SDM
<b>Emergency Management Services Strategic objective 2: To protect loss of life, damage to property and environment by June 2027</b>									
By responding to all reported emergency incidents	Fire and Rescue Operations	None	100% of (200) reported emergency incidents attended	Percentage of reported emergency incidents attended	100% reported emergency incidents attended	R243 920.25	R256 116.26	R269 582.07	SDM
By providing firefighting training	Emergency Management Services Training Academy	None	2 firefighting courses facilitated	Number of firefighting courses facilitated	3 firefighting courses facilitated	R207 694.02	R218 078.73	R228 982.66	SDM
By evaluating plans and conducting inspections on all facilities	Fire Safety and Prevention	None	100% of (437) reported fire prevention and safety services provided	Percentage of reported fire prevention and safety services provided	100% reported fire prevention and safety services provided	R240 460.05	R252 583.07	R265 207.22	SDM
<b>Disaster Management Services Strategic objective 3: To Have an increased awareness on disaster risk management mitigation measures by June 2027</b>									

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUND ER/ FUND NAME
By conducting disaster risk assessment	Disaster risk assessment	None	100% of (96) reported disaster risk management incident conducted	Percentage of reported disaster risk Management incidents conducted	100% reported disaster risk Management incidents conducted	R500 000.00	R525 000.00	R551 250.00	SDM
By conducting awareness campaigns to prevent disasters	Disaster risk reduction	None	26 disaster risk reduction awareness campaigns conducted	Number of Disaster risk reduction awareness campaigns conducted	24 disaster risk reduction awareness campaigns conducted	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
By coordinating provision of relief material to affected disaster victims	Disaster response and recovery	None	100% of (96) reported disaster relief materials provided to affected disaster victims	Percentage of reported disaster relief materials provided to affected disaster victims	100% reported disaster relief materials provided to affected disaster victims	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
By coordinating campaigns during the special high-density days.	Special Operations on High Density Day	None	2 special operations high density campaigns coordinated	Number of special high density days campaigns coordinated	3 special operations on high density days campaigns coordinated	R131 315.10	R137 886.75	R144 780.09	SDM

## 4.1.2.SPATIAL RATIONALE

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
<b>SPATIAL RATIONALE</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To ensure sustainable spatial and land use development within the district by 2026</b>									
By facilitating Joint District Municipal Planning Tribunal (JDMPT) sittings by June 2025	Joint District Municipal Planning Tribunal sittings	None	4 JDMPT sittings facilitated	Number of JDMPT sittings facilitated	4 JDMPT sittings facilitated	R800 000.00	R900 000.00	R1 000 000. .0	SDM
By facilitating township establishment process for district municipal offices by June 2025	Township establishment process for district municipal offices	None	Appointed Land Surveyor	Number of meetings for the Township establishment process of District Municipal Offices attended	4 meeting for Township establishment process of District Municipal Offices attended	R562 400.00	R1 065 145.60	R1 68 077 .00	SDM
By participating in the district wide Land Development and building IGR forums	Participate in District wide land development and Building IGR forum.	None	6 meetings attended	Number of se with local municipalities participated.	4 sessions with local municipalities facilitated.	R100 000.00	R150 000.00	R200 000. 00	SDM
By providing support to local municipalities on the implementation of SPLUMA compliant	Participate in the local municipalities' SPLUMA compliant spatial planning programmes.	None	12 meetings	Number of meetings with local municipalities on SPLUMA compliant spatial planning programmes	10 meetings with local municipalities on SPLUMA compliant spatial planning programmes Attended	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
spatial planning programmes				Attended					
By facilitating workshop for Municipal councillors on land use, land allocation and running of tribunal in terms of SPLUMA by June 2025	Workshop for Municipal councillors	None	Two meeting facilitated	Number of Workshops for Municipal councillors on land use, land allocation and running of Tribunal in terms of SPLUMA facilitated	2 Workshops for Municipal councillors on land use, land allocation and running of Tribunal in terms of SPLUMA facilitated	R62 400.00	R65 145.60	R68 077. 15	SDM
Review of the District Spatial Development Framework (SDF) by June 2025	Review of the District Spatial Development Framework (SDF)	None	2018 District Spatial Development Framework	Percentage review of District Spatial Development Framework	100% Review of the District Spatial Development Framework	R300 000.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To review GIS strategy by June 2025	Review of GIS Strategy	None	2009 GIS strategy in place	Percentage review of GIS strategy	100% review of GIS strategy	R400 000.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
By spatially referencing the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and District Development Plan (DDP)	Spatial referencing of IDP and DDP Capital Projects	None	100% IDP Capital Projects spatially referenced	Percentage of IDP and DDP capital projects spatially referenced	100% IDP and DDP capital projects spatially referenced	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A



Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
capital projects by June 2025									
Procure Integrate Municipal Geographic Information System (GIS) June 2025	Integrate Municipal Geographic Information System	None	Outdated GIS Strategy in place	Percentage integration of Municipal Geographic Information System (GIS)-procured	100% integration of Municipal Geographic Information System (GIS) - procured	R3 000 000.00	R1 000 000.00	R1 000 000.00	N/A
Procure GIS Equipment by June 2025	GIS Equipment	None	Non-Functional GIS Equipment	Percentage of procurement of GIS Equipment Facilitated	100% procurement of GIS Equipment facilitated	R360 000.00	R250 000.00	R200 000.00	SDM
To dispose land for satellite offices by June 2025	Land Disposal	4 land to be identified for satellite or offices	None	Percentage of land disposed for satellite offices	100% of land disposed for satellite offices	R1 200 000.00	R2 000 000.00	R2 000 000.00	SDM
By facilitating Formalization of Informal Settlements by June 2025	Formalization of Informal Settlements (Jane Furse, Phokwane)	13 existing informal settlements	None	Number of Informal Settlements (Jane Furse, Phokwane) within the district formalized	1 informal settlement (Jane Furse, Phokwane) within the district formalized	R0.00	R1 000 000.00	R0.00	SDM
Develop Precinct Plans in Nodal /Growth points by June 2025	Develop Precinct Plans in Nodal/Growth point (Moroke-	23 Nodal /Growth Points without	None	Number of Precinct Plans in Nodal /Growth points developed (Moroke-	2 Precinct Plans in Nodal/Growth points (Moroke-Meckleinburg and Dennilton)	R0.00	R1 500 000.00	R2 000 000.00	SDM

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
	Meckleinburg and Dennilton)	Precinct Plans		Meckleinburg and Dennilton)					

#### 4.1.3. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>Strategic objective 1: To promote Job Creation Opportunities through EPWP by June 2025</b>									
By creating 2 788 job opportunities through EPWP by 30 June 2025	Implementation of EPWP	None	2559 job opportunities created through EPWP	Number of jobs opportunities created through EPWP	2788 jobs created through EPWP (Infrastructure 2564, Environment and Culture 36 and Social Sector 188)	R10 000 000. 00	R0.00	R0.00	DPWI
By creating 2 788 job opportunities through EPWP by 30 June 2025	Implementation of EPWP	None	2559 job opportunities created through EPWP	Number of jobs opportunities created through EPWP	2788 jobs created through EPWP (Infrastructure 2564, Environment and Culture 36 and Social Sector 188)	R3 500 000. 00	R4 000 0000. 00	R4 000 0000. 00	SDM
<b>Strategic Objective 2: To empower and develop SMMEs and Cooperatives by June 2025</b>									
Provide support to SMMEs and co-operatives by 30 June 2025	Support to SMMEs and Co-operatives	None	41 SMMEs and Co-operatives supported	Number of SMMEs / Co-operative support provided	42 SMMEs / Co-operatives supported	R3 000 000.00	R4 000 000. 00	R5 000 000. 00	SDM
By facilitating development of feasibility study for establishment of Flea Market in	District Flea Market	No formal Flea market within the district	1 feasibility study developed	Number of designs for Flea Market developed	No activity	R0	R500 000. 00	R2 000 000. 00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
the District by 30 June 2025									
By organising workshops and training programmes for emerging SMMEs and Cooperatives by June 2025	Skills Development for emerging SMME's and Cooperatives	None	None	Number of workshops and trainings conducted	4 workshops and trainings conducted	R600 000.00	R700 000. 00	R800 000.00	SDM
Facilitate farmers support through Farmers Production Support Unit (Agri Park) at Vleeschboom by June 2025	Facilitate farmers support through Farmers Production Support Unit (Agri Park) at Vleeschboom (PED)	None	920 farmers supported through Farmers Production Support Unit (Agri Park) at Vleeschboom	Number of farmers supported through Farmers Production Support Unit (Agri Park) at Vleeschboom	900 farmers supported through Farmers Production Support Unit (Agri Park) at Vleeschboom	R8 000 000.00	R8 000,000. 00	R9 000 000. 00	DRDLR /LDARD
Facilitate support to farmers by 30 June 2025	Farmers support	None	3 Farmers supported	Number of farmers supported with production infrastructure, equipment and inputs	15 farmers supported with production infrastructure, equipment and inputs	R1 000 000.00	R2 000 000. 00	R3 000 000. 00	SDM
Facilitate support to Organised Business	Support to Organised Business	None	Sekhukhune District Tourism Association establishment facilitated	Number of Organised Business supported	2 Organised Business supported	R600 000.00	R700 000.00	R800 000.00	SDM
<b>Strategic Objective 3: To enhance mining development within the district by June 2025</b>									
Facilitate development of Industrial	Facilitate development of Industrial	None	SEZ Business Plan in place	Number of Regional Industrial Development	1 Regional Industrial Development	R2 000,000.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
Development Master Plan for the Special Economic Zone (SEZ) by 30 June 2025	Development Master Plan for the Special Economic Zone (SEZ) (PED)			Master Plan developed	Master Plan developed				
Facilitate integration of SLP projects in the IDP by 30 June 2025	Monitoring of SLPs consultation processes and SLPs implementation	None	None	Number of SLP projects integrated in the IDP and their implementation monitored	10 SLP projects integrated in the IDP and their implementation monitored.	R100 000.00	R100 000.00	R100 000. 00	SDM
Facilitate Economic Development Forums (Mining, Tourism, LED & Agric.) by 30 June 2025	Facilitate Economic Development Forums (Mining, Tourism, LED & Agric.)	None	4 Economic Development Forums (Mining, Tourism, LED & Agric.) facilitated	Number of Economic Development Forums (Mining, Tourism, LED & Agric.) facilitated	4 Economic Development Forums (Mining, Tourism, LED & Agric.) facilitated	R100 000.00	R100 000. 00	R100 000. 00	SDM
<b>Strategic Objective 4: To enhance the Tourism attraction and development within the district by 2025</b>									
Develop Tjate Heritage Site by 30 June 2025	Develop Tjate Heritage Site	None	Tjate Heritage Site in place	Number of Tjate Heritage Site developed	1 Tjate Heritage Site developed	R1 000 000.00	R522 000. 00	R545 490. 00	SDM
Facilitate Installation of District Tourism Signage for Tourism Establishments and Products by 30 June 2025	Facilitate Installation of District Tourism Signage for Tourism Establishments and Products (Manche Masemola,	None	9 tourism signage installed.	Number of District Tourism Signage for Tourism Establishments and Products installation facilitated	9 District Tourism Signage for Tourism Establishments (Manche Masemola, King Nyabela and Tjate) installation facilitated	R150 000.00	R104 400. 00	R109 098.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
	King Nyabela and Tjate)								

### SEKHUKHUNE DEVELOPMENT AGENCY (SDA) 2024-2025 PROJECTS

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>Strategic objective 1: To initiate, identify, facilitate and implement high impact economic development projects and to attract sustainable investment in growing the economy by June 2026</b>									
In Partnership with a strategic Energy partner implement outdoor energy supply unit for the Sekhukhune treatment water plants and conclusion of a PPA with SDM.	Outdoor Energy Supply Units	Address water cuts and challenges during periods of grid failure. Ensure power supply to operate pumps efficiently.	A signed MOU with a Green Energy Partner	Appointing SDA as the implementation partner of the Outdoor Energy Storage Units for SDM and signing of a PPA between SDA and SDM	1 x Appointment of SDA as the implementation partner of the Outdoor Energy Storage Units and signing of 1x PPA agreement between SDA and SDM.	R46 000 000 once off and PPA monthly rates	PPA rates fees per month	PPA rates fees	SDM/ SDA Partners hip
<b>Strategic Objective 2: To foster job creation and empower SMMEs by June 2026</b>									
Capacity intervention for the SMMEs, Community and youth	District Wide Skills Development Intervention	Lack of skills and addressing high employment rate	Skills Development Audit conducted by FT SEZ	Training and Development for SMMEs, community and Youth conducted	1x Training and development of SMMEs, Community and Youth conducted	R30 000 000. 00	R35 000 000 .00	R50 000 000.00	SETAs, NSF SDA partners hips
To establish and Implement of the Transport planning and	Establishment of Transport planning and	Lack of transport planning and management	Intergovernmental Authorization Agreement with Limpopo Dept	Established Transport Planning and Management function in SDA	1X Established Transport planning and Management Function	R82 000 000. 00	R82 000 000 plus CPI	R83 000 000 plus CPI	SDM/Li mpopo Dept of Transpo

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
management function	Management Function	function in the district	of Transport and Community Service						rt planning and Management
To ensure Preferential procurement plan for the SMMEs	Enterprise Supplier Development program	Lack of and unequal procurement opportunities for SMMEs,	Preferential Procurement Policies	Development of an Enterprise Supplier Development program	1 x Development of an Enterprise Supplier Development Program	R400 000.00	R1 500 000. 00	R2 000 000.00	SDA partners hips
<b>Strategic Objective 3: To facilitate investment opportunities in the District by June 2026</b>									
Five day in person Sector Investment drive and roadshow	CEO Sector Outreach Program	Lack of investments in the district	Conducive Economic climate	CEO sector outreach program facilitated and conducted	1x CEO Sector outreach program facilitated and conducted	R1 600 000.00	R1 700 000 .00	R2 000 000.00	SDA Partners hip
<b>Strategic Objective 4: To enhance mining development within the district by June 2026</b>									
Inclusion of SDA in the FT SEZ Quar tripartite agreement	Appointment of SDA as an implementing agent by SDM on the FT SEZ	Exclusion of SDA on catalytic projects	Draft FT SEZ Quar tripartite agreement	Signed agreement	1 x Signed agreement	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
<b>Strategic Objective 5: Enhance the Tourism attraction and awareness within the district by 2026</b>									
Implementation of the De Hoop identified Projects	De Hoop RMP	Lack of implementation of the De Hoop RMP	Signed MOU with DWS	Implementation of the De Hoop RMP identified Projects	1 x Implementation of the De Hoop RMP identified Project	R1 000 000.00	R2 500 000. 00	R3 000 000.00	SDM
Implementation and development of the Land ERF 488 for Sport Tourism	Transfer of title deed to SDA and Development of the Land ERF 488	To address lack of development in sport tourism opportunities and augment SDA asset base	Feasibility study, signed Deed of donation by SDM, Council Resolution for land donation to	Title deed and Development of the Land ERF 488	1x Title deed and Development of the Land ERF 488	R500 000.00	R20 000 000.00	R15 000 000.00	SDA SDM partners hips

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
			SDA by SDM Council.						
To increase awareness and corporate visibility	Branding and marketing	Inadequate marketing and branding	Communication Strategy and District tourism route document	Number of branding and marketing events	4 x branding and marketing activities	R450 000.00	R500 000. 00	R500 000. 00	SDA/ SDM
<b>Strategic Objective 6: To Enhance Institutional capacity</b>									
To ensure efficient and effective financial management	MSCOA compliant Financial System	Lack of financial system for the Agency	Budget availability	Development and implementation of the Cloud Based Mscoa Financial system	1x Implementation and Development of a Cloud Based MSCOA Financial System	R1 500 000.00	R1 600 000 .00	R1 700 000. 00	SDM
To ensure corporate governance mechanisms are in place	Policy Development and Implementation	Lack of institutional policies	Organisational structure	Approved Institutional policies	1x Approved institutional policies	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDA
Improved functioning and operational mandate of the Agency	Amendment of SDA By Law	Lack of specified operational function of the Agency to SDM	SDA By-law	Number of amended SDA By laws by SDM	1 X Amended SDA by Law	R1 200 000.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM Legal
Improved financial management Unit	Appointment of a Finance Manager and supporting staff	Lack of Financial management unit staffing	Organisational Structure	Number of appointed staff for financial management Unit	1x appointment of Finance Manager and 2x Appointment of Finance Unit clerks	As per SALGBC Salary Structure	As per SALGBC Salary Structure	As per SALGBC Salary Structure	SDM/ SDA

#### 4.1.4. INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND ORGANIZATIONAL TRANSFORMATION

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>ORGANISATIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To ensure efficiency and effectiveness of organisational processes by June 2026</b>									
To ensure effective job grading and proper job descriptions by June 2025	Job Evaluation and Job Descriptions	Unevaluated Jobs	185 jobs moderated by the Provincial Audit Committee of Job Evaluation	Number of jobs descriptions developed and evaluated	41 Job descriptions developed and evaluated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
<b>INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY (ICT)</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 2: To enhance service delivery through optimal use of information and communication technology by June 2025</b>									
By convening ICT steering committee meetings by June 2025	ICT Steering Committee Meetings	None	4 meetings convened	Number of ICT Steering Committee meetings convened	4 ICT Steering Committee meetings convened	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By monitoring Service Level Agreements by June 2025	Contract Monitoring	None	New	Number of ICT Service Providers Performance Monitoring and Evaluation meetings held	4 ICT Service Providers Performance Monitoring and Evaluation meetings held	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By reporting ICT incidents resolved by June 2025	ICT incidents (ICT queries)	None	New	Percentage of reported ICT incidents resolved	100% of reported ICT incidents resolved	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM



STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
By improve efficiency and effectiveness of municipal administration by June 2025	Procurement of ICT hardware devices	None	New	Percentage Hardware devices purchased	100 % Hardware devices purchased	R3 000 000.00	R3 500 000. 00	R4 000 000. 00	SDM
By connecting ICT network Infrastructure by June 2025	ICT Network Infrastructure	None	10 sites connected with ICT infrastructure	Number of sites connected with ICT network infrastructure	18 sites connected with ICT network infrastructure	R7 000 000.00	R4 000 000. 00	R3 000 000. 00	SDM
<b>LABOUR RELATIONS</b>									
<b>Labour Relations - Strategic objective 3: To maintain sound labour relations and ensure workplace peace by June 2025</b>									
By facilitating 4 Labour relations publications by June 2025	Labour relations publications	None	4 Labour relations publications issued	Number of Labour relations publications issued	4 Labour relations publications issued	R55 000.00	R50 000.00	R50 000.00	SDM
By facilitating 12 Local Labour Forum meetings by June 2025	Local Labour Forum (LLF)	None	5 Local Labour Forums Facilitated.	Number of LLF meetings facilitated	12 LLF meetings facilitated	R200 000.00	R200 000.00	R200 000.00	
By facilitating Labour related Grievances by June 2025	Labour related grievances	None	100% Labour related grievances facilitated	% of labour related grievances facilitated	100% Labour related grievances facilitated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	
By facilitating Labour related disciplinary cases by June 2025	Labour related disciplinary cases	None	6 disciplinary cases facilitated	% of disciplinary cases facilitated	100% disciplinary cases facilitated	R250 000.00	R259 000.00	R325 000.00	
<b>EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAMME</b>									
<b>Records Management - Strategic objective 4: To ensure sound management of records by June 2025</b>									

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
By implementing employee wellness programmes by June 2025	Employee wellness and counselling programme	None	3 wellness and counselling programmes conducted	Number of wellness awareness programmes conducted	3 wellness awareness programmes conducted	R3 500 000.00	R3 900 000. 00	R4 300 000.00	SDM
By implementing substance abuse counselling programmes by June 2025	Substance Abuse Programme	None	3 substance abuse programmes conducted	Number of substance abuse programmes conducted	4 substance abuse programmes conducted)				
By implementing Occupational Health and Safety elements by June 2025	Occupational Health and Safety elements	None	40 Occupational Health and Safety elements conducted	Number of Occupational Health and Safety elements conducted	51 Occupational Health and Safety elements conducted (36 workplace inspections, 4 project audits, 4 safety awareness campaigns, 4 safety committee meetings, 1 servicing of fire extinguishers, 1 servicing of fire hose reels, 1 medical surveillance programme	R8 900 000.00	R9 300 500	R9 719 022.50	SDM
<b>HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT</b>									

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>Strategic objective 6: To provide effective, efficient and economic human resource support service by June 2025</b>									
To cascade the Individual PMS to employees below senior managers by June 2025	Cascade IPMDS from level 2 to 5	Individual PMS not cascaded to employees below senior managers	Performance agreement/ commitments were developed and signed up to level 5	Number of performance agreement/ commitments developed & signed to employees below senior managers	1153 performance agreement/ commitments developed & signed to employees below senior managers	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To facilitate training, development and learning through Workplace Skills Plan by June 2025	Development of WSP (Workplace Skills Plan)	Inadequate technical skills	Workplace Skills Plan in place	Review of Workplace Skills Plan	Workplace Skills Plan reviewed	R0.00	<del>R0.00</del> R92,250.00	<del>R0.00</del> R1,862.50	SDM
	Internal Bursary Award	Inadequate technical skills	22 Internal Bursaries awarded	Number of Internal Bursaries awarded	10 Internal Bursaries awarded	R758 732.83	R795 910.74	R833 318.55	SDM
To develop new corporate services related policies by June 2025	Policy Development	Inadequate corporate services related policies	Collective Agreements	Number of new corporate services related policies developed	3 corporate services related policies developed:  *Danger Allowance Policy  *Homeowners Allowance Policy  *Bereavement Policy	R55 000.00	R50 000.00	R50 000.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To review corporate services related policies by June 2025	Policy Review	Changes in legislation, public police & practice	Collective Agreements	Number of new corporate services related policies reviewed	5 corporate services related policies reviewed:  *Motor Vehicle Subsidy Policy  *Training & Development Policy  *Bursary Policy  *IT Security Policy  *Internet & Email Policy	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To implement employment equity imperatives by June 2025	Employment Equity Plan	Non-Compliance	2023/2024 Employment Equity Plan Submitted	Number of Employment Equity Plans submitted.	1 Employment Equity Plan submitted.	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
<b>AUXILIARY SERVICES</b>									
<b>Records Management: Strategic Objective 4: To ensure sound management of records by June 2024</b>									
To provide sound records management by June 2025	Records Management	None	Approved File Plan	Number of records management projects implemented	3 records management projects implemented. (File Plan awareness	R1 900 000.00	R1 900 000. 00	R1 900 000. 00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
					campaign conducted, records disposal reports compiled and submitted to Provincial Achieved. Review of policy and procedure manual)				
To implement Electronic Filling System by June 2025	Electronic Filling System	Lack of Electronic Filling System	Manual filing system	Procurement & installation of Electronic Filling Systems	Electronic Filling System procured & installed	R1 000 000.00	R1 500 000. 00	R1 500 000. 00	SDM
<b>Fleet and Facility Management - Strategic objective 5: To establish and maintain municipal fleet and facilities by June 2025</b>									
To maintenance, repairs & licensing of vehicles by June 2025	Fleet management	Non-compliance	88 vehicles maintained, repaired & licenced	Number of vehicles maintained, repaired & licenced	88 vehicles maintained, repaired & licenced	R12 000 000. 00	R13 000 000 .00	R15 00 000. 00	SDM
To facilitate purchase of IWS machinery (yellow vehicles) by June 2025	Procurement of IWS machinery (yellow vehicles)	None	16 Vehicles	Number of Vehicles and machinery acquired and delivered through RT57	5 Vehicles and machinery acquired and delivered through RT57	R6 750 000.00	R6,910,000	R7 300 000. 00	SDM
To ensure efficient fuel management system by June 2025	Procurement of fuel management system	New	None	Number of fuel management systems procured	1 Fuel management system procured	R1 500 000.00	R1 900 000. 00	R2 000 000. 00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
<b>PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS)</b>									
<b>Strategic Objective 1: Institutionalise regular monitoring of implementation of performance management by June 2026</b>									
To facilitate Performance Makgotla Sessions by June 2025	Performance Makgotla	None	4 Performance Makgotla Sessions held	Number of Performance Makgotla Sessions held	4 Performance Makgotla Sessions facilitated	R250 000.00	R280 000.00	R310 000.00	SDM
To develop Institutional SDBIP by June 2025	2024/2025 Institutional SDBIP	None	1 2023/2024 Institutional SDBIP in place	Number of institutional SDBIP developed	1 2024/2025 Institutional SDBIP developed	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To compile Institutional Annual Report and oversight report by January 2025	2023/2024 Annual Report. Oversight report compiled	None	1 2022/2023 Institutional Annual Report in place and 01 oversight report compiled	Number of Institutional Annual Report and Number of oversight report compiled	1 2023/2024 Institutional Annual Report and 01 oversight report compiled	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To facilitate Individual Performance assessments for Senior Managers (2023/2024 Annual and 2024/2025 Midterm) by June 2025	Individual Performance assessments for Senior Managers	None	6 Signed Performance agreement for senior managers in place	Number of Individual Performance assessments for Senior Managers (2023/2024 Annual and 2024/2025 Midterm) facilitated	2 Individual Performance assessments for Senior Managers (2023/2024 Annual and 2024/2025 Midterm) facilitated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To review PMS Policy and Framework reviewed by June 2025	PMS Policy and Framework	None	2023/2024 PMS Policy and Framework in place	Number of PMS Policy and Framework reviewed	1 2024/2025 PMS Policy and Framework reviewed	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To coordinate Back to Basics (B2B) quarterly reports by June 2025	Back to Basics (B2B) reports	None	2023/2024 B2B reports in place	Number of B2B quarterly reports coordinated	4 2024/2025 B2B Quarterly reports coordinated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To Implement Performance Management System by June 2025	Implementation of Performance Management System	None	Performance Management System in place	Percentage implementation of Performance Management System	100% implementation of Performance Management System	R1 530 310.88	R1 530 310. 88	R1 530 310.88	SDM
<b>LEGAL SERVICES</b>									
<b>Strategic Objective: To protect the financial interests of the municipality by June 2026</b>									
To Manage litigations instituted by or against SDM by June 2025	Litigations	None	30 Litigations attended to	Percentage of litigations attended to.	100% litigations attended to	R6 883 629.00	R16 000 000 .00	R16 000 000 .00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
To vet and or draft service level agreements and other forms of agreements by June 2023.	Service level agreements and other forms of Agreements.	None	200 service level agreements and other forms of agreements drafted and or. Vetted,	Percentage of service level agreements and other forms of agreements drafted and or vetted.	100% service level agreements and other forms of agreements drafted and or vetted.				
To provide sound legal opinion to SDM by June 2025.	Legal opinions	None	10 legal opinions	Percentage of legal opinions drafted.	100% legal opinions drafted.				
<b>Strategic Objective 1: To ensure integrated development planning by 2025</b>									
By developing IDP Framework/ Process Plan by August 2023	Develop 2024/2025 IDP Framework/ Process Plan	None	2023/2024 IDP Framework/ Process Plan in place	Number of IDP Frameworks/ Process Plans developed	01 IDP Framework/ Process Plan developed for 2024/2025	R20 000.00	R10 000.00	R10 000.00	SDM
Review Integrated Development Plan (IDP) by June 2024	Integrated Development Plan (IDP) Review	None	2023/2024 Integrated Development Plan (IDP) developed	Number of Integrated Development Plans (IDP) reviewed	01 Integrated Development Plan (IDP) reviewed for 2024/2025 developed	R100 000.00	R90 000.00	R100 000.00	SDM
Facilitate the IDP Rep Forums by June 2024	IDP Rep Forums	None	2 IDP Rep Forums Facilitated	Number of IDP Rep Forums facilitated.	02 IDP Rep Forums facilitated	R100 000.00	R100 000.00	R100 000.00	SDM



STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDE R/ FUND NAME
By facilitating review District Development Plan	District Development Plan Review	None	District Development Plan in place	Number of District Development Plan in place	01 District Development Plan in reviewed	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A

#### 4.1.5. FINANCIAL VIABILITY

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
<b>FINANCIAL VIABILITY</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To ensure sound financial management and practices</b>									
To improve audit opinion by June 2024	Unqualified Audit Opinion with no matters of emphasis	Unresolved recurring audit findings	Qualified Audit opinion 2022/23	Percentage of finance related audit findings resolved	100% of Finance related Audit findings resolved	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To ensure compliance with MFMA on annual financial and performance reporting	Submission of AFS and AR to the AG within the legislated time frame	None	Submitted AFS and AR to AG within legislated timeframe	Number of Submission of AFS and AR by 31st August and consolidated AFS by 30 September	02 Submissions of AFS's and AR by 31st August and consolidated AFS by 30 September	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/fund name
To ensure compliance with MFMA on annual budgets.	Fully funded annual and adjusted budget for the 2023/24	None	1 Annual Budget and 1 Adjusted Budget adopted	Number of Approved (Annual and adjusted) Budget prepared and implemented	2 Approved (Annual and Adjusted Budget) prepared, approved and implemented	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
Enhanced revenue base and collection	Revenue Enhancement Strategy	None	60% of collected own revenue	Percentage of revenue collected against the billing	75% revenue collected against the billing	R1 600 000.00	R1 672 000.00	R1 875 040.00	SDM
Maintain Credible Billing Data.	Billing Data Cleansing	The current billing data isn't credible since the migration process	% of Cleansed Client Accounts	Percentage of Cleansed Client Accounts	100% of Client Accounts Cleansed	R4 500 000.00	R3 000 000.00	R1 700 000.00	SDM
Improve Collection on Own Revenue	Pre-paid meter installations with vending and customer query management	None	0 pre-paid meters installed	Appointment of a service provider for pre-paid water installations, maintenance and vending system.	Appointed service provider for pre-paid water meter installations, maintenance and vending system.	R14 000 000.00	R8 000 000.00	R6 000 000.00	SDM
Maintenance of the meter book	Conventional Meter Reading	None	7500 meters read on average	Percentage of water meters read	80% water meters read	R5 000 000.00	R5 500 000.00	R6 000 000.00	SDM

Strategy (approach to achieve objective)	Project	Backlog	Baseline 2023/2024	Indicators	Annual target 2024/2025	Budget 2024-2025	Budget 2025-2026	Budget 2026-2027	Funder/ fund name
Continuous maintenance of the indigent register	Indigent Register	The register was not updated in the past few years	Outdated Indigent Register	Percentage Indigent registered and verified	100% verification of verified indigents	R7 000 000.00	R7 315 000.00	R7 827 050.00	SDM
Continuous maintenance of the Fixed Asset Registers	Movable and Immovable Fixed Assed Registers	None	Updated 2023/24 Fixed Asset Registers	Number of updated Asset Registers	1 Updated Movable Asset Register and 1 Immovable Fixed Register	R6 000 000.00	R6 270 000.00	R6 208 900.00	SDM
Adherence to procurement schedule for budget and treasury projects	Procurement Plan	None	% of the 2023/24 completed SCM processes as per the plan	Percentage of procurement plan implemented	100% of procurement plan implemented	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM

#### 4.1.6. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
<b>INTERNAL AUDIT</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To ensure improved internal controls and clean governance in the municipality by June 2025</b>									
By ensuring improved internal controls and clean governance in the municipality by June 2024	Three (3) Years rolling Plan	NONE	2 (SDM & SDA) 3 years rolling plans developed and approved	Number of (SDM & SDA) 3 years rolling plans developed and approved	2 (1 for SDM & 1 for SDA) 3 years rolling plans developed and approved	R 14 480 200.00	R15 480 200.00	R16 480 200.00	SDM
By conducting quarterly regularity audits by June 2025	Regularity Audit	None	20 Regularity audits conducted and issued	Number of regularity audit conducted and issued	24 Regularity Audits conducted and issued (16 SDM & 4 SDA)				
By executing Ad hoc audits by June 2025	Ad Hoc Audits	None	Percentage of Ad Hoc audits executed and issued	100% Ad hoc Audit executed, and reports issued	100% Ad hoc Audit executed, and reports issued				
By conducting information and technology (ICT) audits by June 2025	ICT Audits	None	3 ICT Audit conducted, and reports issued	Number of ICT Audits conducted and issued	4 ICT Audit conducted, and reports issued				
By conducting audit of performance management system by June 2025	Audits of Performance Information	None	8 Audit of Performance information conducted and issued	Number of Audit of Performance Information conducted and issued	8 Audit of Performance Information conducted, and reports Issued (4 SDM & 4 SDA)				

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
	Financial Misconduct Disciplinary Board	None	6 Financial Disciplinary Board meetings coordinated	Number of Financial Disciplinary Board meetings coordinated	8 Financial Disciplinary Board meetings coordinated	R400 000.00	R420 000.00	R440 000.00	SDM
By quarterly reviewing the auditor general activities by June 2025	Auditor General Activities	None	100% monitoring of implementation of AG activities	Percentage monitoring of implementation of AG activities	100% monitoring of implementation of AG activities	R11 000 000 .00	R12 000 000. 00	R12 648 000. 00	SDM
By quarterly reviewing the Internal Audit Implementation plan to improve the internal controls by June 2025	Internal Audit Implementation plan	None	100% monitoring of Internal Audit Implementation plan	Percentage monitoring of Internal Audit implementation plan	100% monitoring of Internal Audit Implementation plan (SDM, SDA & PAC)	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By conducting administrative activities for the audit and performance committees by June 2025	Audit Committee and Performance Audit Committee meetings	None	9 (4 ordinary and 5 special) meetings of audit and performance committees coordinated	Number of meetings of audit and performance committees coordinated	17 (12 ordinary and 5 special) meetings of audit and performance committees coordinated	R2 000 000. 00	R2 100 000.00	R2 200 000.00	SDM
By reviewing the five-year audit work to ensure that are in line with International Internal Audit standard by June 2025	External Assessment Review	External quality assessment not performed since the inception of the Internal Audit unit	None	Number of external quality assessment performed	1 external quality assessment performed	R400 000.00	NA	N/A	
<b>RISK MANAGEMENT</b>									

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
<b>Strategic objective 2: To assess, identify, and manage risks and uncertainty in order to safeguards assets, enhance productivity, and build resilience into operations</b>									
Conduct 1 x Strategic Risk Assessment and review Risk Registers	Strategic Risk assessment and risk register review	None	Strategic Risk Register in place	Number of Strategic Risk Assessment conducted, and Strategic Risk Registers reviewed	*1 Strategic Risk Assessment conducted * 4 Strategic Risk Registers reviewed	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
	Operational Risk Assessment and risk register review	None	Operational Risk Registers in place	Number of Operational Risk Assessment Conducted and Operational Risk Registers reviewed	*1 Operational Risk Assessment Conducted *4 Operational Risk Registers reviewed	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
	Processes Risk Assessments	5 x Processes risk assessments	2 X Processes Risk registers in place	Number of Processes risk assessments conducted	5 x Processes risk assessments conducted	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
Draft a Tender specification and Source the services of an insurance broker by Tender to place SDM insurance with underwriters	Insurance coverage for municipal assets	None	Assets Insurance Policy contract in place	Percentage of insurance coverage for municipal assets facilitated	100% insurance coverage for municipal assets facilitated	R9 100 000. 00	R9 691 500.00	R10 322 000. 00	SDM
Conduct Strategic Assets re-evaluation	Re-evaluation of Under-insured municipal Assets	None	Strategic Assets Re-evaluation report in place	Percentage of under- insurance municipal assets reevaluated	100% under-insured municipal assets reevaluated	R600 000.00	R639 000.00	R680 000.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
File in insurance claims with brokers & do Request for payment	Assets Insurance Claims and Excess payments	None	Insurance claims report in place	Percentage insurance claims processed, and payments of losses and excess facilitated	100% of insurance claims processed, and payments of losses and excess facilitated.	R1 000 000. 00	R1 000 000.00	R1 000 000.00	SDM
Oversee Security Operations	Security Management	None	Security incidents report in place	Percentage Security incidents managed	100% Security incidents managed	R79 000 000 .00	R93 193 000. 00	R95 000 000. 00	SDM
Conduct Security sites assessments.	Security Operational Sites Assessments	None	Security operational Sites assessments report in place	Number of Security Operational sites assessments conducted	Forty (40) Security Operational sites assessed	R0,00	R0,00	R0,00	N/A
Draft Tender Specification and Source the services of a Service Provider through a tender	Security Safeguards/ Fencing Improvement	All Operational sites security safeguards dilapidated	Draft Security Improvement plan in place	Number of Operational sites Safeguards improved	Four (04) Operational sites Safeguard improvement completed	<b>INCLUDED IN THE SECURITY MANAGEMENT PROJECT BUDGET @ R5 000 000.00</b>			SDM
Draft Tender specification and Source the services of a Service Provider through a tender to establish a Disclosure Hotline	Anti-Fraud & Corruption awareness and Disclosure Hotline	No existence of Disclosure Hotline	Approved Anti-Fraud and Corruption strategy in place	Number of Anti-fraud and corruption awareness workshop conducted, and	2 x Anti-fraud and corruption awareness workshop conducted.	R600 000.00	R639 000.00	R680 000.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
				Disclosure Hotline established	Disclosure Hotline established				
Source the services of a Service Provider through a tender to develop a Business Continuity Management plan	Business Continuity Management plan	No existence of Business Continuity Management plan	Approved Business Continuity Management strategy	Number of phases of the Business Continuity Management (BCM) plan completed	Business Continuity Management (BCM) plan developed	R5 000 000.00	R300 000.00	R300 000.00	SDM
Conduct quarterly compliance review	Compliance Management	None	Compliance Management report in place	Number of compliance management report compiled	4 x Compliance management report compiled	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
Compile a Risk /Management report and Coordinate the Risk Management Committee (RMC) meeting	Risk Management Committee (RMC)	None	RMC reports in place	Number of RMC meetings coordinated	Four (04) RMC meetings coordinated	R184 000.00	R196 000.00	R208 740.00	SDM
<b>PUBLIC PARTICIPATION, MPAC SUPPORT; SECRETARIAT AND SUPPORT</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: Provide secretarial support to 10 council structures to ensure accountability by June 2027</b>									
By booking venue, prepare agenda, issue invites and record proceedings	FORA	None	16 Fora facilitated	Number of fora facilitated	14 Fora facilitated	R40 000.00	R44 000.00	R44 400.00	SDM
By securing venues, issuing of notices, transport logistic and record proceedings	Support to Ward Committees	None	2 ward committees support facilitated	Number of ward committees support facilitated	2 capacity building programmes for ward committees facilitated	R500 000.00	R700 000.00	R800 000.00	SDM



STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
By securing venues, issuing of notices, transport logistic and record proceedings	Public participation sessions	None	14 public participation sessions facilitated	Number of public consultation meetings facilitated	14 public participation sessions facilitated	R1 036 500.00	R1 105 742.70	R1 190 682.76	SDM
By securing venues, issuing of notices, transport logistic and record proceedings	Speakers' outreach programmes	None	NEW	Number of Speakers' outreach programmes facilitated	2 Speakers' outreach programmes facilitated	R300 000.00	R350 000.00	R400 000.00	SDM
By preparing the agenda, and invites for Extra Special council meeting	SODA & Budget Day	None	1 SODA, 1 Budget Day facilitated	Number of SODA and Budget days facilitated	1 SODA, 1 Budget Day facilitated	R661 500.00	R727 650.00	R791 415.00	SDM
By booking venues, developing council agendas, facilitating council meetings	Council meetings	None	4 council meetings facilitated	Percentage facilitation of schedule of council activities	4 council meetings facilitated	R850 000.00	R885 000.00	R888 500.00	SDM
By booking venues, developing portfolio committee agendas, facilitating portfolio committee	Portfolio committee meetings	None	20 portfolio committee meetings facilitated	Percentage facilitation of scheduled portfolio committee meetings	20 portfolio committee meetings facilitated				
By conducting pre-visits to the projects, brief portfolio committee, conduct actual oversight visit and compile a report	Oversight visits	None	4 Oversight visits facilitated	Number of oversight visits facilitated	4 Oversight visits facilitated				
By booking venue, prepare agenda, issues	Council whippersy	None	4 meetings facilitated	Number of meetings facilitated	4 meetings facilitated	R30 000.00	R33 000.00	R36 300.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
invites and record proceedings	meetings facilitated								
Facilitation through location of venues, issuing invites, recording of proceedings and advice on specific items	Study group	None	4 study groups facilitated	Number of study groups facilitated	4 study groups facilitated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By booking venue, issue invites & record proceedings	Public hearings	None	2 public hearings facilitated	Number of public hearings facilitated	2 public hearings facilitated	R700 000.00	R700 000.00	R807 000.00	SDM
By booking venue, issue invites, prepare documents & presentations and record proceedings	MPAC Working sessions	None	8 MPAC working sessions facilitated	Number of MPAC working sessions facilitated	8 MPAC working sessions facilitated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
By booking venue, issue invites & record proceedings	Strategic planning session for Section 79 Portfolio Committees & MPAC	None	2 strategic planning sessions facilitated	Number of strategic planning sessions facilitated	1 strategic planning session facilitated	R350 000.00	R400 000.00	R450 000.00	SDM
By preparing strategic planning material, book venue, invite councillors and officials to attend the strategic planning.	Capacity building workshops	None	2x workshops facilitated	Number of workshops facilitated	2x workshops facilitated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
Facilitate the enrolment of Cllrs for training and development	Training and development of Cllrs	None	2x councillors trained	Number of councillors trained	Number of Cllrs trained	R1 150 000. 00	R1 200 000.00	R1 300 000.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
By compiling resolutions taken by council	Resolution action plan coordinated	None	4 Council Resolution action plan compiled and coordinated	Number of Council Resolution action plan compiled and coordinated	4 Council Resolution action plan compiled and coordinated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	N/A
<b>COMMUNICATIONS; ADVOCACY; SOCIAL FACILITATION; SPECIAL PROGRAMMES AND ARTS &amp; CULTURE</b>									
<b>Strategic objective 1: To provide communications, stakeholder relations and strategic partnerships by June 2027</b>									
To facilitate stakeholder & sectorial engagement by June 2025	Mayoral Outreaches and Sectorial Engagements	None	12 Programmes facilitated	Number of community & sectorial engagements held	8 stakeholder & sectorial engagements facilitated	R2 000 000. 00	R2 100 000.00	R2 300 000.00	SDM
To provide support to Mayoral Committee by June 2025	Executive Support to Mayoral Committee	None	12 Mayoral Committee meetings supported	Number of Mayoral Committee meetings supported	12 Mayoral Committee meetings supported	R150 000.00	R200 000.00	R300 000.00	SDN
To produce newsletters by June 2025	Newsletter& Publications	None	16 Programmes produced	Number of newsletters produced	8 newsletters produced.	R3 200 000. 00	R3 300 000.00	R3 400 000.00	SDM
To market and brand events by June 2025	Media Relations and Marketing	None	12 Events Branded	Number of events Marketed and branded	12 Events marketed and branded	R6 000 000. 00	R7 000 000.00	R8 000 000.00	SDM
To facilitate meetings for Traditional Leaders by June 2025	Executive Support and Traditional Leadership Affairs	None	4 Traditional leadership meetings supported	Number of Traditional Leadership meetings facilitated	4 meetings facilitated	R400 000.00	R500 000.00	R600 000.00	SDM
To facilitate strategic events by June 2025	Special Mayoral strategic Events	None	5 strategic events Facilitated	Number of Strategic Events facilitated	5 strategic events facilitated	R3 400 000. 00	R3 500 000.00	R4 000 000.00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
To facilitate Moral Regeneration Movement committee programmes by June 2025	Strengthening of Moral Regeneration Movement Committee	None	MRM committee established	Number of programmes for MRM committee facilitated	4 MRM committee programme facilitated	R150 000.00	R200 000.00	R300 000.00	SDM
To generate Customer Care reports by June 2025	Customer Care Services	None	24 reports generated	Number of reports generated	24 queries/ complains reports on customer care generated	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	SDM
To revamp the Call Centre by June 2025	Call Centre Revamping & Maintenance	None	24-hour outdated call centre system	Number of call centre revamped	1 call centre revamped	R1 100 000. 00	R1 200 00.00	R1 300 000.00	SDM
To conduct Batho Pele programmes by June 2025	Batho Pele	None	6 Programmes conducted	Number of Batho Pele Programmes conducted	4 Batho Pele Programmes conducted	R300 000.00	R500 000.00	R700 000.00	SDM
To co-ordinate SODA by June 2025	SODA	None	2022/2023 SODA held	Number of SODA coordinated	1 SODA coordinated	R3 000 000. 00	R3 500 000.00	R4 000 000. 00	SDM
To facilitate campaigns for the elderly by June 2025	Aged care	None	2 aged programmes facilitated	Number of Aged Care campaigns facilitated	3 Aged Care campaigns facilitated	R2 200 000. 00	R2 300 000.00	R2 400 000. 00	SDM
To facilitate campaigns for the children by June 2025	Children's Care	None	2 children's activities facilitated	Number of children's campaigns facilitated	3 children's campaigns facilitated	R500 000.00	R700 000.00	R900 000.00	SDM
To facilitate campaigns for women by June 2025	Woman Development Initiative	None	4 Women Programmes facilitated	Number of woman development initiatives facilitated	3-woman development initiatives facilitated	R2 500 000. 00	R2 200 000.00	R2 500 000. 00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
To facilitate Awareness campaigns for people with disability by June 2025	People with disability	None	3 Programmes facilitated	Number of awareness campaigns for people with disability facilitated	2 awareness campaigns for people with disability facilitated	R500 000.00	R700 000.00	R900 000.00	SDM
To facilitate art and culture programmes by June 2025	Cultural Heritage Celebrations and Language Promotions	None	2 Programmes facilitated	Number of Heritage and promotions of indigenous languages and theatre workshop facilitated	Heritage Day and 2 promotions of indigenous languages and Theatre workshop facilitated	R1 700 000. 00	R1 900 000.00	R2 000 000. 00	SDM
To coordinate health calendar days activities by June 2025	Coordination of health calendar days activities	None	3 health calendar days activities conducted	Number of health calendar days activities coordinated	3 Health calendar days activities coordinated	R500 000.00	R700 000.00	R900 000.00	SDM
To coordinate Mayor's Forum activities by June 2025	Coordination of Mayor's Forum activities	None	4 Mayor's Forum activities coordinated	Number of Mayor's Forum activities coordinated	4 Mayor's Forum activities coordinated	R200 000.00	R300 000.00	R400 000.00	SDM
To coordinate Mayoral IMBIZO activities by June 2025	Coordination of Mayoral IMBIZO activities	None	4 Mayoral IMBIZO activities coordinated	Number of Mayoral IMBIZO activities coordinated	4 Mayoral IMBIZO activities coordinated	R1 700 000. 00	R1 900 000.00	R12 000 000. 00	SDM
To facilitate Youth development programmes by June 2025	Facilitation of youth development programmes	None	3 youth development Programmes facilitated	Number of Youth development programmes facilitated	3 Youth development programmes facilitated	R3 000 000. 00	R3 200 000.00	R3 300 000. 00	SDM

STRATEGY (APPROACH TO ACHIEVE OBJECTIVE)	PROJECT	BACKLOG	BASELINE 2023/2024	INDICATORS	ANNUAL TARGET 2024/2025	BUDGET 2024-2025	BUDGET 2025-2026	BUDGET 2026-2027	FUNDER / FUND NAME
To facilitate Mayoral sports activities by June 2025	Facilitation of Mayoral Sports activities	None	2 Mayoral Sport activities facilitated	Number of Mayoral Sport activities facilitated	2 Mayoral Sport activities facilitated	R1 500 000. 00	R1 700 000.00	R1 900 000.00	SDM

# **CHAPTER 5**

## **INTEGRATION**

### **PHASE**

## 5. SECTOR PLANS

Section 26 of Municipal Systems Act (32 of 2000) requires municipalities to develop plans to address specific sectors of development within their jurisdiction. These plans are supposed to be developed every five years in a cycle congruent with that of IDP, in which context any sector plan older than five years is deemed outdated to its context of implementation. The following table reflects the status of Sector Plans in the SDM:

**Table 135 - Policies/Strategies**

PLAN	AVAILABLE / NOT AVAILABLE	FINANCIAL YEAR	STATUS
<b>KPA: Spatial Rationale</b>			
Spatial Development Framework	Approved	Reviewed - 2018/2019	2019-2024
<b>KPA: Institutional Development and Organizational Transformation</b>			
Human Resource Management Development Strategy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Workplace Skills Plan	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Performance Management Framework	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
<b>KPA: Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development</b>			
Water Services Master Plan	Review in process	2014/15	Due for review
WSDP	Approved	2016/17	Due for review
Sanitation Master Plan	Review in process	2016/17	Due for review
Bulk Contribution Policy	Review in process	2016/17	Due for review
Water Safety Plan	Review in process	2016/17	Due for review
Integrated Waste Management Plan	Review in process	2005/06	Due for review
HIV/AIDS Operational Plan	Approved	2012/13	Due for review
District Integrated Environmental Management Plan (DIEMP)	Approved	2015/16	Due for review
Air Quality Management Plan	Review in process	2010/11	Due for review
Disaster Management Plan	Approved	2021/2022	2021/2022
<b>KPA: Local Economic Development</b>			
LED Strategy	Approved	2018/19	2019-2024
<b>KPA: Financial Viability</b>			
Water and Sanitation Tariff policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Supply chain Management Policies	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually



PLAN	AVAILABLE / NOT AVAILABLE	FINANCIAL YEAR	STATUS
Indigent Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Free Basic Water Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Investment and Cash Management Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Asset Management Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Funding and Reserves Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Virement Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Budget Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Blacklisting Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Petty Cash Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Cost Containment Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Secondment Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Overtime Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Relocation Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Service Standards	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Political Support Staff Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Recruitment, Selection and Appointment Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Contract Management Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Leave Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Subsistence and Travelling Allowance Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Individual Performance Management and Development System Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Subsidized Motor Transport Scheme Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
Bursary Policy	Approved	2023/2024	Reviewed Annually
<b>KPA: Good Governance and Public Participation</b>			
Communication Strategy	Approved	2014/15	Due for review
Risk Management Plan (implementation plan)	Approved	2017/18	Due for review
Public Participation Policy Framework	Approved	2017/18	Due for review

PLAN	AVAILABLE / NOT AVAILABLE	FINANCIAL YEAR	STATUS
Anti- fraud and corruption strategy and whistle blowing policy	Approved	2011/12	Due for review

## 5.1. SPATIAL RATIONALE

### SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (SDF)

The Sekhukhune District Municipality Spatial Development Framework was adopted in 2004, first reviewed in 2008 and was again reviewed in 2018 to align with SPLUMA. In terms of the Municipal Systems Act, an SDF is a component of an IDP. The act requires that it be compiled to give effect to the IDP. It is a legal framework that is desired to implement an IDP. It sets out objectives that reflect the desired spatial form of the district.

The spatial development framework guides and informs all decision of the municipality relating to land use development and land planning. It guides and informs the direction of growth, major movement routes, special development areas and conservation of areas by:

- Indicating desired pattern of land use
- Addressing the spatial reconstruction of the location and nature of development in the district.
- Providing strategic guidance in respect of the location and nature of development in the district.
- Indicating where public and private land development and infrastructure development should take place.
- Indicating desired or undesired utilization of space in a particular area within the district.
- Delineating urban edge.
- Identifying areas where strategic intervention is required.
- Indicating where priority spending is required from a district point of view/scale for municipal but for district wide projects.
- SDM has recently compiled a review of the SDF. The reviewed SDF is in place and has identified the following spatial development objectives and principles:
  - To actively protect, enhance and manage the natural environmental resources in the municipality in order to ensure a sustainable equilibrium between the mining, tourism and agricultural industries in the area.
  - To optimally capitalize on the strategic location of the district by way of strengthening internal and external linkages within provincial and regional context.
  - To utilize the natural environmental and cultural historic features in the district as anchors from which to promote ecotourism and conservation.
  - To maximally utilize the mining potential in the district by way of the development of the Dilokong Corridor.

- To promote commercial farming and food production along the Olifants River and Steelpoort River drainage systems in the district.
  - To facilitate small scale and subsistence farming activities throughout the remainder part of the municipal area.
  - To promote industrial/commercial development in the district with specific emphasis on agro-processing in the agricultural belt (Groblersdal), and mining/ore-processing in the mining belt (Tubatse).
  - To create a strong east-west movement/development corridor in the district functionally linking the tourism precincts, mining belt and agricultural belt to one another, and to the markets of Gauteng Province along the Moloto Corridor.
  - To supplement the district east-west corridor by way of three functional north-south corridors:
    - N11: Agriculture, Commerce
    - R583: Institutional, Residential
    - R33: Mining
- To ensure equitable access to social infrastructure and to promote Local Economic Development by way of an evenly distributed range of Multi-Purpose Community Centres to be established throughout the district.
  - To consolidate the urban structure of the district around the highest order centres by way of infill development and densification in Strategic Development Areas.
  - To establish a functional hierarchy of towns and settlements in the district based on the regional function and spatial distribution of these centres.

## **LAND USE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (LUMS)**

Land use management system is a permutation of tools and mechanisms developed together in order to manage, control, influence and regulate the use of land. This system includes the IDP with spatial development framework as its component that scales down to a land use scheme and ultimately to the building plans. LUMS are put in place to effect a uniform system and procedures for land development and land use management and address the plethora and imbalances of the past.

The adopted LUMS are in place in all four local Municipalities in the district and they are aligned with SPLUMA.

## **5.2. INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND ORGANISATIONAL TRANSFORMATION**

### **PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT POLICY AND FRAMEWORK**

- Developed: 2013/2014 (Council Resolution No: OC27/08/13)
- Reviewed: 2018/2019 (Council Resolution No: OC 001/07/19)
- Reviewed: 2019/2020 (Council Resolution No: OC 15/07/20)
- Reviewed: 2020/2021 (Council Resolution No: SC 03/06/21)

- Reviewed: 2021/2022 (Council Resolution No: SC 23/04/2022)
- Reviewed: 2022/2023 (Council Resolution No: SC 13/04/2023)
- Reviewed: 2023/2024 (Under review)

## Introduction

The Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) accepts that performance management is central to building a developmental local government geared to meet the needs of communities in a sustainable and accountable manner.

As part of meeting its legislative requirements and policy provisions, the SDM has developed a performance management system (PMS) that provides a platform for communities to hold it accountable but also facilitates for effective management and cultivation of a result-based management culture and ethos amongst its political office bearers and employees. The performance management system of the SDM is development oriented and provides the framework to manage and review employee performance and foster employee development.

## Purpose of the policy

The purpose of institutionalizing a PMFP is to serve as a primary mechanism to:

- Enable SDM to Plan, Monitor, Measure Report, and Review and Improve Organizational, Departmental and Individual Performance.
- Facilitate the creation of a performance culture and improve service delivery through the successful implementation of PMS.
- Improve the implementation of the IDP.
- Ensure integration and alignment of programmes across municipalities, departments and other sphere of Government.
- Promote accountability between various stakeholders.
- Help the municipality to improve Service delivery through the development of effective PMS.
- Alert the organization of failure to achieve the objectives of the IDP and government commitments.
- Develop meaningful interventions mechanisms to address failure.
- Create a culture of best practice and encourage shared learning among stakeholders.

The following principles have successfully been the core foundation of PMS processes:

Table 136: Principles of PMS

Principle	Intervention
Ownership and Support	The PMS should be owned by the municipality and supported by other spheres of government
Participatory	The system must place the SDM community at the centre of local government processes

Principle	Intervention
Linkage/Integration	The Performance Management System must be linked to the IDP Framework. PMS and IDP complement each other, therefore PMS planning phase must occur within the IDP/Budget planning phase
Compatibility	The PMS must be developed and implemented within available capacity and resources. It must be user-friendly enabling the municipality to manage it within its existing institutional and financial resources
Alignment	The system must align to other municipal activities and allow for joint responsibility and accountability
Fair and objective	Performance management will be founded on fairness and objectivity in the recognition of poor or good performance
Decision making	PMS decision making processes will not be used to victimize or give an unfair advantage to an individual or group of people
Politically Driven	The political principals must buy in and participate and take a lead in development and implementation of the system

## Roles and Responsibilities

The SDM performance management framework assigns roles and responsibilities to various political structures, political office bearers and municipal administration:

Table 137: Roles and responsibilities of various stakeholders in PMS

MUNICIPAL STRUCTURES	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
The Council of SDM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set vision, mission and strategic direction of the municipality;</li> <li>• Approve the Performance Management Framework and Policy;</li> <li>• Submit annual report to Auditor General/ MEC;</li> <li>• Receive reports from performance audit committee;</li> <li>• Monitor Municipal Performance;</li> <li>• Receive performance reports from the Executive Mayor;</li> <li>• Appoint Audit Committee;</li> <li>• Approve the Remuneration Policy for section 56 employees and Incentive Scheme for all employees; and</li> <li>• Approve budget for rewarding and recognising good performance.</li> </ul>
The Executive Mayor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Facilitate development of IDP and PMS;</li> <li>• Receive monthly reports on implementation of PMS;</li> <li>• Review performance of the municipal manager;</li> <li>• Report on organizational performance to the Council quarterly;</li> <li>• Recommend the allocation of performance scores of Section 56 employees to Council and;</li> </ul>

MUNICIPAL STRUCTURES	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Receives performance reports from the Performance Audit Committee.</li> </ul>
Municipal Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure alignment of PMS with other systems;</li> <li>• Oversee the implementation of the PMS and submitting the required performance reports on regular basis to Council and other structures;</li> <li>• Ensure that the system is implemented in line with legislative and policy frameworks;</li> <li>• Mediate over disagreements between supervisors and employees; and</li> <li>• Assigned the responsibility of developing the PMS.</li> </ul>
The Members of the Mayoral Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oversee the implementation of PMS in their departments as per the Executive Mayor's sub-delegation of his roles and responsibilities and the new governance model.</li> </ul>
Section 79 Committees	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Play oversight role on implementation of PMS</li> </ul>
Senior Manager delegated by Municipal Manager to implement PMS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Communicating the vision, mission and strategic direction;</li> <li>• Overseeing the process of design and implementation of scorecards and commitment plans;</li> <li>• Communicating the strategic and operational plans;</li> <li>• Communicate their performance agreements/commitments to staff;</li> <li>• Facilitating on-going review of performance against set targets;</li> <li>• Ensuring that the system is implemented in line with legislative and policy frameworks; and</li> <li>• Mediating over disagreements between supervisors and employees (if delegated by the municipal manager).</li> </ul>
Chief Financial Officer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decentralise budget regarding performance management to the respective responsible managers (Directors);</li> <li>• Ensure that all Directors have budgeted for performance management linked expenditure; and</li> <li>• Ensure that allocated financial resources reflect the strategic priorities of the district municipality.</li> </ul>
Director: Corporate Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Is custodian of the individual PMS;</li> <li>• Ensures implementation of Council decisions on rewards and recognition of good performance;</li> <li>• Engages organised labour on the implementation of PMS in the District municipality and other related issues;</li> <li>• Provides training on the system; and</li> <li>• Advice on HR systems and practices that are integrated to the Performance Management System.</li> </ul>
Every Director and supervisors	<p>Performance management is a line function responsibility. Every director and supervisor is primarily responsible for the implementation of SDM's PMS in his/her department or area of responsibility. Each director and supervisor is responsible to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jointly, with an employee, develop performance scorecards and other performance instruments that will help achieve the Department's objectives;</li> <li>• Conduct regular monitoring and coaching sessions on performance;</li> <li>• Collate the required evidence to support achievement against performance measures and targets;</li> <li>• Timely identify areas requiring performance improvement and develop and implement performance improvement plans for unsatisfactory performers;</li> <li>• Conduct mid-year and annual performance reviews;</li> </ul>

MUNICIPAL STRUCTURES	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop and implement, jointly with employees, personal development plans; and</li> <li>• Speedily address grievances in terms of the grievance procedure.</li> </ul>
Employees	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Equal participation with supervisors in developing performance plans/scorecard and other performance instruments;</li> <li>• Take responsibility for her or his own personal development;</li> <li>• Understanding of the Department's strategic objectives and how he/she can contribute to achieve these objectives; and</li> <li>• Provide feedback to supervisor on obstacles to achieving agreed objectives/standards.</li> </ul>
Internal Audit Committee	<p>Internal Audit Committee is required to develop and implement mechanisms, systems and processes for auditing the results of performance measurements as part of its internal auditing processes. This legislative requirement entails an assessment of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) The functionality of the municipality's performance management system;</li> <li>(ii) whether the municipality's performance management system complies with the Act; and</li> <li>(iii) The extent to which the municipality's Performance measurements are reliable in measuring performance of municipalities on indicators referred to in regulation 9 and 10.</li> </ul> <p>Internal Audit is further required to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Audit the performance measurements of the municipality on a continuous basis; and</li> <li>(b) Submit quarterly reports on their audits to the municipal manager and the performance audit committee.</li> </ul>
Performance Audit Committee	<p>As permitted by legislation (MPPMR, 2001) the Performance Audit Committee may determine its own procedures after consultation with the Executive Mayor of SDM.</p> <p>The Performance Audit Committee shall be established for the purposes of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reviewing the quarterly performance reports;</li> <li>• Reviewing the municipality's performance management system and make recommendations in this regard to the Council; and</li> <li>• At least twice during a financial year submit an audit report to the SDM Council.</li> </ul>

### Accountability structure during the review process

Table 138: Accountability structure during the review process

Lines of Accountability	Review Role/Input
Supervisor and Municipal Manager	Review performance of employees reporting directly to them (quarterly)
Line/Functional Managers	Review performance of their respective functional areas (Monthly)
Standing/Portfolio Committees	Manage and review performance of sectors and function respective to their portfolios.

Lines of Accountability	Review Role/Input
Executive Management (Section 57) Teams	Review performance of the organization constantly (monthly)
Executive or Mayoral	Review performance of the administration
Council	Review the performance of the Municipal Council, Its Committees and the Administration.
The Public	Review the performance of the Municipality and Public representatives (Councilors).

It is critical to note that Organizational Performance is integrally linked to that of the staff and Council performance. The two cannot exist independently without concerted and aligned PMS processes. The relationship between staff performance and Council performance starts from the planning, implementation, monitoring up to review of PMS.

### 5.3. BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY

#### INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (ITP)

The Sekhukhune District Municipality undertook a project to update the Integrated Transport Plan (ITP) for its area of jurisdiction, whereby the final draft report was completed in March 2007. The report is still pending the Council approval. The ITP was prepared, as required in terms of section 27 of the National Land Transport Transition Act, No.22 of 2000 (NLTTA), as amended. The ITP attends to the public and private modes of transport, infrastructure, facilities and services. The Integrated Transport Plan constitutes a transport sector input into the IDP process.

For implementing the NLTTA, the Minister of Transport published the minimum requirements for the preparation of the ITP (Government Gazette No. R25245 dated 1 August 2003). This publication provides for the minimum requirements for the structure and contents of the ITP document.

A data collection process preceded the ITP. The aim of that process was to gain an idea of the current situation in the Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) in terms of transportation utility. One of the data collection processes is called the Current Public Transport Record (CPTR). The final updated CPTR report was completed in November 2006. This included a survey of taxi operations at taxi ranks.

Subsequently, the Operating Licensing Strategy, Rationalization Plan and Public Transport Plan for the SDM were updated and are components of the Integrated Transport Plan.

Further research was done into road infrastructure development plans and operational plans, such as Road Safety, Travel Demand Management, freight and commodity flow data collection and demographic data. The ITP and Land Development Objectives should be complementary.

The ITP indicates that SDM should focus its efforts and resources on the following strategic components of transportation:



**a) Capacity and Skills Development**

- Training of officials in integrated transportation planning and land-use planning
- Recruitment of transport planners and engineers
- Procurement of consulting engineering services for consistent and continuous advice and for undertaking ad hoc projects

**b) Addressing the Service Backlog**

- Motivate subsidized public transport coverage in the SDM with the objective of reducing the cost of travel
- Install public transport infrastructure such as shelters, lay-bys and inter-modal facilities
- Upgrade the road infrastructure and the streets between residential and business nodes, giving special attention to the Greater Tubatse Area.

**c) Travel Demand Management (TDM)**

- Manage congestion through TDM measures such as signalization, bus lanes, reversible lanes in urban areas and the upgrading of intersections
- Develop a non-motorized transport plan and implement projects.

**d) Road Safety**

- Develop a Central Communications Centre for incident management
- Perform road safety audits
- Address hazardous locations
- Motivate law enforcement at strategic locations

**e) Conduct Education and Communication Campaigns**

The way forward is to submit motivations for the prioritized projects in the Integrated Transport Plan (ITP) and the Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The construction and maintenance of public transport facilities and roads are in most cases labour-intensive and are appropriate mechanisms to promote job creation.

## **INTEGRATED WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN (IWMP)**

The Sekhukhune District Municipality has developed the integrated Waste Management Plan that is waiting for approval by council. The purpose of this Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) is to enable Sekhukhune to progressively develop an Integrated Waste Management System (IWMS) capable of delivering waste management services to all households and businesses.

Implementation requires that Sekhukhune move away from traditional “end of pipe” solutions (the dominant practice in South Africa) that focus on waste after it has been generated: Collection – Transport – Landfilling.

National policy requires municipalities to implement an IWMS where the focus is on prevention and minimization of waste, recycling of waste and treatment that is able to reduce the potential harmful impacts of waste. Only after these efforts, should remaining waste be disposed of at a landfill.

Integrated Waste Management is based upon waste generators acting responsibly by separating their waste at source (the point of generation) and then properly recycling, storing and disposing of the different parts of the waste. The government must ensure that there is waste management service delivery system providing a network of collection and disposal options so that generators can effectively exercise their responsibilities. Thus, Integrated Waste Management combines personal responsibility with government service delivery. Appropriate education and training are required for everyone.

A key element of the IWMS is home use of organic waste (composting or animal feed) as this eliminates the need for collection, transport, treatment and disposal of as much as 50% of the waste stream.

Non-organic recyclable material, when separated at source has higher value, is more easily routed to end users and can be recovered at a far higher efficiency rate than when it is salvaged at a landfill site. In the IWMS will create new forms of safe employment with better remuneration while education and training enable salvagers to take advantage of new career path.

### **Alternative solutions**

The Feasibility Study describes two options for the waste management system in Sekhukhune. Only option 2 contains key elements for an IWMS. Option 1 presents a strategic with “end of pipe” services and shows the potential costs of waste management in Sekhukhune without incorporating integrated strategies.

An overview of all options is shown in the table 138 below:

Table 139: Strategy Options

	<b>Core elements Waste Management Strategy</b>			<b>Integrated strategies</b>	
	<b>Collection</b>	<b>Transport</b>	<b>Disposal</b>	<b>Recycling</b>	<b>Treatment</b>

Option 1	House to house service provided by the Municipality	Operation of collecting points and transport with trucks and donkey cards (rural areas) provided by the Municipality	Rehabilitation and/or operation of 7 landfill sites according to DWAF's MR  Rehabilitation and closure of 15 dumpsite	On the landfills by private contractors	No composting  MBWT may be considered
----------	---	--	---	---	---

### Overview of feasibility options

These projects have two fundamental economic flaws:

Income is derived from the sale of salvaged recyclables only. The value gained by the municipality in reduced land fill costs is not seen as linked to the project and the salvagers do not receive any portion of this value.

In end of pipe salvaging, waste is first mixed at source and then transported by the municipality to the land fill where it then has to be separated and transported once again.

The added costs significantly reduce the revenue available to the salvagers.

### INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN (IEMP)

The Sekhukhune District Municipality has drafted the Integrated Environmental Management Plan that is waiting to be approved by Council. The Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) is a plan with a holistic framework that can be embraced by all sectors of society for the assessment and management of environmental impacts and aspects associated with an activity for each stage of the active life cycle, taking into consideration a broad definition of environment and with the overall aim of promoting sustainable development.

The founding principles of the IEMP are the following:

- Integrated approach.
- Informed decision making.
- Holistic decision making
- Alternative options.
- Continual improvement.
- Community empowerment.
- Equity.
- Accountability and responsibility.

- Adaptation.
- Dispute Resolution.
- Global Responsibilities.
- Environmental Justice.
- Institutional Co-ordination.
- Polluter Pays.

This document is not yet approved by Council. To avoid long term accumulated negative effect, the district has started implementing some of the recommendations mentioned in the document. The plan is developed from the involvement of interested and affected parties as well as the responsible authority in ensuring the protection of its citizens while taking forward economic development. It should be emphasized that consultation with the other regulatory authority and sectors is pivotal in ensuring association with the plan for proper integration.

The SDM IDP, Limpopo State of the Environment Report, Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan (LEGDP) and the IDPs of the five Local municipalities (which are under the direct control of the district) provided the framework for the development of this three-year (2001-2010) Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP).

The development of this plan was based on the following protocol:

- Identification of the environmental activities and priorities performed by sectors of the municipality and its five local municipalities.
- Clustering of common functions.
- Setting of goals and objectives.
- Documentation of strategies.
- Identification and development of the environmental programmes.
- Development of projects.
- Development of the management strategy for all the levels of the projects.
- Identification of role players.

This IEMP has set the basis upon which the development of the SDM environmental policy and the SDM State of Environmental Report is formulated. This policy will be important in guiding the other ecosystems plans.

### **AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN (AQMP)**

The Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) in line with the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism in the Limpopo Province (LEDET) has developed a Draft Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) for the SDM.

The overall goal with the Plan is to manage, reduce and/or eliminate the generation and significant negative environmental impact(s) of all known air pollutants in their area of jurisdiction.

The AQMP will be used to reform the by-laws regulating air quality in order to protect the quality of the air in the SDM and to minimize the impact of air pollution emissions on neighboring districts yet allowing ecologically sustainable and justifiable economic and social development. By compiling an AQMP, the SDM will comply with the relevant requirements of the National Environmental Management Air Quality Act 39 of 2004.

The object of the National Environmental Management Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 is;

- (A) To protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for –
  - (i) The protection and enhancement of the quality of air in the Republic;
  - (ii) The prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation; and
  - (iii) Securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development; and
- (B) Generally, to give effect to Section 24(b) of the Constitution in order to enhance the quality of ambient air for the sake of securing an environment that is not harmful to the health and well-being of people.

The specific objectives of generating this Plan are to:

- Ensure the identification of significant air pollutants;
- Control the emission of air pollutants;
- Implement planned Air Quality Management strategies;
- Achieve acceptable air quality levels throughout SDM;
- Promote a clean and healthy environment for all citizens within SDM;
- Minimize the negative impacts of air pollution on health and the environment; and
- Promote the reduction of greenhouse gases so as to support the district's climate change protection programme.

## **WATER SERVICES DEVELOPMENT PLAN (WSDP)**

### **Residential consumers of water:**

- 42% of Rural consumer units are below the RDP standard;
- 100% of Rural farmland units are estimated to be below the RDP standard;
- Although no reliable information is available it is estimated that 90% of rural scattered and 20% of rural dense consumer units are below the RDP standard.
- Residential consumers of sanitation

### **The following situation exists within rural areas:**

- Rural Dense: 40% below the RDP standard;
- Rural Village: 75% below the RDP standard;
- Rural Scattered: 90% below the RDP standard;
- Rural Farmland: 95% below the RDP standard.

### **Strategic Gap Analysis**

- Monitoring of water supply quality is to be introduced on all schemes. Data to be collected on a Sub-Scheme basis. Little or no data is currently available.
- Ground water quality is to be implemented on all groundwater schemes where there is on-site sanitation (dry or wet). No data is currently available.
- Lack of a single database for water schemes.
- Groundwater data being held up due to non – submission of GRIP database.
- Transfer of Schemes and ex. DWAF staff to WSA and local Wasps is proving to be problematic, due in part to an oversupply of unskilled operational personnel on the one hand and a shortage of skilled personnel, engineers, technicians and scientists on the other.
- Shortage of engineers and technicians to design, implement, manage, monitor and evaluate schemes.

### **Implementation Strategy**

- An O and M budget allocation for on-going refurbishment and defective and badly maintained infrastructure has been allowed.
- Focus will be placed on labour-intensive construction methods for refurbishment, maintenance and water supply projects.
- A water demand management programme is to be initiated.
- The sanitation programme to be increased to meet the sanitation targets of 13 068 units per year.
- Abstraction rates and water quality to be monitored for all groundwater resources.
- Effective control of discharges from all WWTW within SDM to be developed and initiated.
- A management model to be developed for the 605 villages, over 40 sub-water scheme areas and thousands of boreholes within the SDM. The fundamental approach for SDM must be decided within the Section 78 process.

## **DISASTER MANAGEMENT PLAN (DMP)**

The Sekhukhune District Municipality has adopted the Disaster Management Plan in 2007 and reviewed it in 2021. The main purpose of the Disaster Management Plan (DMP) is *inter alia* to implement appropriate disaster risk reduction measures to reduce the vulnerability of communities and infrastructure at risk. The DMP is in line with national policy (National Disaster Management Framework), which requires the following:

- The compilation of a Disaster Management Framework (policy).

- The execution of detailed disaster hazard, vulnerability and risk assessment.
- The compilation of disaster risk reduction measures.
- The compilation of appropriate Standing Operating Procedures (SOP's).
- Establishment of a District Disaster Management Centre (DDMC).
- Establishment of a Disaster Management Advisory Forum.
- Capacity Building, training and awareness programmes.

Hence, to accommodate the above-mentioned requirements, the DMP for Sekhukhune District Municipality (SDM) comprises various plans, namely;

- District Disaster Management Framework (policy).
- Disaster Hazard, Vulnerability and Risk Plan.
- Disaster Risk Reduction Plan.
- Disaster Response and Recovery Plan (SOP's and checklists).
- District Disaster Management Centre Plan.
- Guidelines to establish the Disaster Management Advisory Forum and Volunteer Contingent

#### **5.4. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT**

##### **LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY**

The Sekhukhune District Municipality adopted its first strategy in 2004 and was first reviewed in 2007 and recently reviewed in the 2018/19 financial year. The LED Strategy intends to create an enabling environment for economic development and investment to take place, thereby tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality which is in alignment with the National Development Plan (NDP).

The LED Strategy facilitates the establishment of channels and mechanism to ensure the economic development reaches the true beneficiaries. Moreover, the Strategy focuses on SDM's development needs and opportunities, as well as its competitive and comparative advantages, which will help to facilitate economic development and job creation, thereby encouraging private sector investment.

The SDM LED Strategy is contextualised through the review of the policy environment, reviewing policies from all spheres of government that affect the compilation of the LED. The study conducted a situational analysis to assess the current realities of the area, making use of a competitor analysis with other District Municipalities bordering SDM. A comprehensive overview of the local economy was undertaken, providing a synopsis of the key economic sectors, potential linkages, and key growth points within the District Municipality. The overview of the situational analysis identified the high potential for economic development which entails:

- Sourcing skills needed in agriculture and other sectors from local communities
- Promoting self-reliance of households
- Coordinating availability of accurate data for forwarding planning

- Supporting the development of agriculture and Agro-processing through the Agri Park program
- Encouraging enterprise development through the Enterprise and Supplier Development Programme
- Supporting the establishment of Tubatse Special Economic Zone
- Developing marketing and investment attraction initiatives and plans

The strategic interventions identified resulted in programmes and projects being identified through the use of a project prioritisation matrix and stakeholder consultation process. Projects identified in the study were based on the creation of job creation opportunities, promotion of value chain integration resulting in stimulation of other development initiatives and SMME growth in the District Municipality.

The findings of the study identify potential sectors for economic development in the district which include agriculture, tourism and mining. For instance, the Tubatse SEZ and AGRI-PARK initiative structures an economic foundation for development throughout the district. In addition, the District Municipality is a host to the Flag Boshielo and the De Hoop Dam which are key essential highlights within the district.

The strategic framework for the LED is anchored on existing development initiatives and potential linkages that targets the following strategic interventions which include:

- Institutional Development
- Improving the Enabling Environment
- Agriculture & Agro-processing
- Mining & Mineral Beneficiation
- Tourism Development
- Sustainable SMME Development
- Infrastructure Development & Support Structures
- Marketing Interventions

The study also concluded with an implementation guideline and a monitoring and evaluation framework which aids to enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of the strategy. In addition, the monitoring and evaluation strategy determines the contribution and effectiveness of each strategy as projects, thereby enabling KPI's to be linked to specific strategies.

## **5.5. FINANCIAL VIABILITY**

**The following budget related policies were also reviewed alongside the budget:**

1. Tariff policy and structure
2. Indigent policy
3. Free Basic Water policy



4. Credit control and debt collection policy
5. Investment and cash management policy
6. Asset management policy
7. Funding and reserve policy

### **Water and Sanitation Tariff Policy**

#### Purpose:

- To set clear guidelines in the identification of responsibility for the setting and implementation of a tariff policy for the Municipality;
- To set guidelines for the identification of different categories of users;
- To set guidelines for the determination of tariffs for the different categories of users and services rendered;
- The policy will further lay down the broad principles, which will result in the adoption of a by-law for the implementation and enforcement of the Tariff Policy. Service tariffs imposed by the municipality shall be viewed as user charges and shall not be viewed as taxes.

#### Scope of the policy

- The policy is applicable to water and sanitation services provided by Sekhukhune District Municipality
- This policy is also applicable to all sundry tariffs as provided for in the Schedule of Tariffs of the Municipality.

### **Free Basic Water Policy**

The purpose of the policy is to outline the Free Basic Water Policy for SDM area of jurisdiction.

As part of government strategy to alleviate poverty in South Africa a policy for the provision of a free basic level of services has been introduced. In response to this commitment, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWA) commenced the implementation of phase 1 of a national free basic water strategy in February 2001. The free basic water policy is not new to the South African water sector. Indeed, in terms of the Water Services Act 108 of 1997, provision was made for those people who cannot afford to pay for a basic water supply.

The primary intention of the policy is to ensure that no one is completely denied access to a water supply because they are unable to pay for the water service. Underlying this policy is recognition that the supply of water at a 'basic' level assists in alleviating poverty, improves community health and frees women from time wasted on carrying water.

### **Indigent Policy**

#### Objective

Because of the level of unemployment and subsequent poverty in the municipal area, there are households which are unable to pay for normal municipal services. The municipality therefore adopts this indigence management policy to ensure that these households have access to at least basic municipal services and is guided in the formulation of this policy by the national government's policy in this regard.

Criteria for identification as indigent:

- Households were verified total gross monthly income of all occupants over 18 years of age does not exceed the pension grant as determined by the government.
- The threshold for qualifying as an indigent in a single household where more than two occupants receive old age pension grants shall be the twice old age grant determined by the government.
- Any occupant or resident of the single household referred to above does not own any property in addition to the property in respect of which indigent support is provided
- The account of a deceased estate may be subsidised if the surviving spouse or dependents of the deceased who occupy the property, also apply and qualify for indigent support.
- For a household to qualify for subsidies or rebates on the major service charges (see part 3 below), the registered indigent must be the fulltime occupant of the property concerned, may not own any other property, whether in or out of the municipal area.
- Child welfare grants are exempted as part of total income per household as the child is under 18 years of age.

Application of the policy

- The subsidies on the specified service charges will be determined as part of each annual budget and in terms of the municipality's policies on tariffs
- In respect of water, a 100% subsidy up to 6kl per household per month including basic charge will apply, however, if consumption exceeds 6kl per metering period (month) the consumer will be charged at normal tariffs for actual consumption on the quantity exceeding 6kl plus basic charge.
- In respect of sewerage charges, the relief granted shall not be less than a rebate of 50% on the monthly amount billed for the service concerned.

### **Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy**

Objectives:

- The Council of SDM, in adopting this policy on credit control and debt collection, recognises its constitutional obligations to develop the local economy and to provide acceptable services to its residents.
- It simultaneously acknowledges that it cannot fulfil these constitutional obligations unless it exacts payment for the services which it provides and for the taxes which it legitimately levies – in full of those residents who can afford to pay, and in accordance with its indigence relief

measures for those who have registered as indigents in terms of the council's approved indigence management policy.

- Ensure that all money due and payable to SDM in respect of fees for services, surcharges on such fees, charges, tariffs, interest which had accrued on any amounts due and payable in respect of the foregoing and any collection charges are collected efficiently and promptly.

### **Funding and Reserve Policy**

The funding and reserve policy is aimed at ensuring that the municipality has the sufficient and cost-effective funding in order to achieve its objectives through the implementation of its operating and capital budgets. This policy aims to set guidelines towards ensuring financial viability over both the short and long term which includes reserves requirements.

The policy shall apply to the Council and all officials who have formal, administrative duty to prepare manage and control the municipality's budget and expenditure.

### **Asset Management Policy**

The objectives of Asset Management Policy can be summarised as follows:

- To ensure effective and efficient control, utilization, safeguarding and management of SDM's property, plant and equipment
- To ensure that asset managers are aware of their responsibilities in regard to property, plant and equipment
- To set out the standards of physical management, recording and internal controls to ensure property, plant and equipment are safeguarded against loss or utilization
- To specify the process required before expenditure on property, plant, and equipment in SDM including:
  - The criteria to be met before expenditure can be capitalised as an item of property, plants and equipment
  - The criteria for determining initial costs of different items of property, plant, and equipment
  - Classification of property, plant, and equipment

The utilization and management of property, plant and equipment is the prime mechanism by which a municipality can fulfil its constitutional mandates for: delivery of sustainable services, social and economic development, promoting safe and healthy environment, providing the basic needs to the community.

### **Investment and cash management policy**

The Council of SDM is the trustee of public revenues, which it collects, and it therefore has an obligation to the community to ensure that the municipality's cash resources are managed effectively

and efficiently. Therefore, the council must invest the revenues knowledgeably and judiciously. The aim of the policy is therefore to gain an optimal return on investment, without incurring undue risks, during those periods when cash revenues are not needed for capital or operational purposes. The effectiveness of the policy is dependent on the SDM's cash management program which must identify the amounts surplus to the municipality's needs. All monies due to SDM must be collected as soon as possible, either on or immediately after the due date and banked on a daily basis.

### **Supply Chain Management Policy**

All procurement policies (including those addressing preferential procurement), procedures and practices must be consistent with legislative requirements, in particular part 1 of chapter 11 and other provision of the MFMA. The SCM policy is implemented in the context of the MFMA of 2003 and SCM regulations, read together with the Constitution, preferential procurement policy framework Act of 2000, and the BBBE Act of 2003. The principal objective of the policy is to provide guidelines, governing processes and procedures within the supply chain management:

- Procuring goods and services
- Disposing goods, assets and immovable property no longer needed
- Selecting contractors to provide assistance in the provision of municipal services other than that where Chapter 8 of the Municipal Systems Act applies

## **5.6. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION**

### **PUBLIC PARTICIPATION FRAMEWORK**

The public participation policy framework has been adopted by Council and is reviewed annually. The objectives of the policy are as follows;

- Meet the legal requirements around community participation that are spelled out in the Municipal systems Act No. 32 of 2000.
- Build an open, transparent and accountable system of governance.
- Develop a culture of community participation through creating conditions for local communities to participate in the affairs of the municipality.
- Assist vulnerable groups to participate effectively in the system of local government.
- Provide clear, sufficient and timeous information concerning community participation to communities.
- Communicate decisions of Council.
- Communicate public notices of meetings for communities in a manner that promotes optimal public participation.
- Set up systems and mechanisms that will ensure compliance with regulations and guidelines that may be issued from National or Provincial Government.

The Public Participation policy framework spells out the roles and responsibilities of;

- Council,
- Executive Mayor,
- The Speaker,
- Portfolio and Standing Committees,
- Ward Councilors,
- Management and Administration,
- The Public (Ward Committees) and
- Community Development Workers